



User Documentation

Nuxeo Platform 5.6

LTS Version

Table of Contents

1. Nuxeo Platform User Documentation	4
1.1 Nuxeo Platform modules overview	5
1.2 User home	8
1.2.1 User preferences	10
1.3 Document Management	12
1.3.1 Document Management concepts	12
1.3.2 Browsing content in Document Management	15
1.3.2.1 Dashboard	15
1.3.2.2 Navigation trees	19
1.3.2.3 Tag cloud	20
1.3.2.4 Searching the Nuxeo Platform	21
1.3.2.5 Browsing tips	33
1.3.2.6 Using Nuxeo gadgets from other applications	34
1.3.3 Working in workspaces	35
1.3.3.1 Working with workspaces	35
1.3.3.1.1 Creating a workspace	35
1.3.3.1.2 Editing a workspace	36
1.3.3.1.3 Changing workspace content presentation	38
1.3.3.1.4 Deleting a workspace	39
1.3.3.1.5 Managing a workspace	39
1.3.3.2 Working with documents	47
1.3.3.2.1 Creating content	48
1.3.3.2.2 Editing content	49
1.3.3.2.3 Deleting content	52
1.3.3.3 Notes	53
1.3.3.4 Files	55
1.3.3.5 Folders	56
1.3.3.6 Working using drag and drop	58
1.3.3.6.1 Importing content using Drag and Drop	58
1.3.3.6.2 Installing Drag and Drop extensions	61
1.3.3.6.3 Drag and drop compatibility table	62
1.3.3.7 Desktop & Office Suites Integration	63
1.3.3.7.1 Working with Live Edit	63
1.3.3.7.2 Working with WebDAV and WSS	74
1.3.3.8 Relations	76
1.3.3.9 Comments	78
1.3.3.10 Annotations	79
1.3.3.11 Tags	80
1.3.3.12 Document's history	82
1.3.3.13 Alerts	83
1.3.3.14 Workflows	85
1.3.3.14.1 Starting a workflow	86
1.3.3.14.2 Participating to a workflow	89
1.3.3.14.3 Abandoning a workflow	90
1.3.3.15 Forums	91
1.3.3.15.1 Managing topics	93
1.3.3.15.2 Participating to a topic	95
1.3.3.16 Pictures	97
1.3.3.17 Websites and blogs	100
1.3.3.17.1 Websites	101
1.3.3.17.2 Blogs	104
1.3.3.18 Email folders	106
1.3.3.19 Using Workspace Templates	108
1.3.3.20 Exporting documents	109
1.3.3.21 Copying and moving documents	115
1.3.4 Working in sections	119
1.3.4.1 Publishing documents	120
1.4 Social Collaboration	124
1.4.1 Social workspaces overview	126
1.4.1.1 Creating a new social workspace	128
1.4.1.2 Editing a social workspace	129
1.4.1.3 Adding content to a social workspace	130
1.4.1.4 Editing content in a social workspace	132
1.4.1.5 Managing a social workspace	134
1.4.1.5.1 Managing the workspace users	135
1.4.1.5.2 Setting the workspace's dashboards	137
1.4.1.5.3 Working with News	137

1.4.2 Rich user profile overview	139
1.4.3 Network overview	140
1.4.4 Mini messages overview	141
1.4.5 Activity stream overview	142
1.4.6 Agenda overview	145
1.4.7 Like overview	148
1.4.8 Wall overview	148
1.5 Digital Asset Management	150
1.5.1 Digital Asset Management Concepts	151
1.5.2 Importing assets in DAM	154
1.5.3 Browsing and searching assets	156
1.5.4 Consulting and editing assets	159
1.5.5 Annotating assets	164
1.5.6 Commenting assets	167
1.5.7 Exporting assets	169
1.5.8 Managing access rights in DAM	170
1.5.9 Supported File Formats	170
1.6 Managing your Nuxeo application	172
1.6.1 Managing access rights	172
1.6.2 Managing users and groups	176
1.6.3 Managing vocabularies	183
1.6.4 Managing dashboards	186
1.6.5 Managing authentication with other applications	189
1.7 Case Management with the Nuxeo Platform	191
1.8 Marketplace addons	192
1.8.1 Multi-tenant	193
1.8.2 Nuxeo - BIRT Integration	197
1.8.3 Nuxeo Diff	204
1.8.4 Nuxeo Drive	206
1.8.4.1 Installing / Uninstalling Nuxeo Drive	221
1.8.4.2 Nuxeo Drive 1.x	222
1.8.5 Nuxeo jBPM	223
1.8.5.1 Starting a jBPM workflow	223
1.8.5.2 Managing the jBPM workflow participants	224
1.8.5.3 Participating to a jBPM workflow	227
1.8.5.4 Abandoning a jBPM workflow	229
1.8.6 Nuxeo Platform User Registration	229
1.8.7 Smart Search	229
1.8.7.1 Smart search operators	233
1.8.8 Template Rendering Addon	234
1.8.9 Unicolor Flavors Set	239
1.8.10 Document access tracking	239
1.8.11 Digital Signature	239
1.8.12 Bulk document importer	249
1.8.13 Nuxeo Quota	251
1.8.14 Display email in user suggestions	255

Nuxeo Platform User Documentation

User Guide for the Nuxeo Platform 5.6

The Nuxeo Platform is a modular content management platform that enables developers to create business applications to manage specific types of content. Several tools are available to develop business applications on top of the Platform, like [Nuxeo Online Services](#) for the customization and configuration of the Platform, or [Nuxeo IDE](#) to help developers design new features. The Nuxeo Platform itself comes with several modules, dedicated to a generic content management use case and help manage and track the flow of content through the business cycle, from capture and creation, to sharing, to approval and publishing. These modules can be used out-of-the-box or as a basis for customization.

The naked Platform provides a default set of document management features and can be enriched by the [modules](#) below:

- Document Management, which provides additional document management features,
- Social Collaboration, which provides project and user-centrics views of content,
- Digital Asset Management, which provides browsing and edition features adapted to multimedia content.

Addons are also available from the [Nuxeo Marketplace](#), from which you can download and install optional product plugins.

You will find in this documentation all the guides to help you work with the different modules and addons of the Nuxeo Platform. For installation and administration of the Platform and its [modules](#) and [addons](#), you can refer to the [Installation and Administration Guide](#).



License

This documentation is copyrighted by Nuxeo and published under the Creative Common BY-SA license. More details on the [Nuxeo documentation license](#) page.

The Nuxeo Platform user documentation available:

- [Nuxeo Platform modules overview](#)
- [User home](#)
 - [User preferences](#)
- [Document Management](#)
 - [Document Management concepts](#)
 - [Browsing content in Document Management](#)
 - [Working in workspaces](#)
 - [Working in sections](#)
- [Social Collaboration](#)
 - [Social workspaces overview](#)
 - [Rich user profile overview](#)
 - [Network overview](#)
 - [Mini messages overview](#)
 - [Activity stream overview](#)
 - [Agenda overview](#)
 - [Like overview](#)
 - [Wall overview](#)
- [Digital Asset Management](#)
 - [Digital Asset Management Concepts](#)
 - [Importing assets in DAM](#)
 - [Browsing and searching assets](#)
 - [Consulting and editing assets](#)
 - [Annotating assets](#)
 - [Commenting assets](#)
 - [Exporting assets](#)
 - [Managing access rights in DAM](#)
 - [Supported File Formats](#)
- [Managing your Nuxeo application](#)
 - [Managing access rights](#)
 - [Managing users and groups](#)
 - [Managing vocabularies](#)
 - [Managing dashboards](#)
 - [Managing authentication with other applications](#)
- [Case Management with the Nuxeo Platform](#)
- [Marketplace addons](#)
 - [Multi-tenant](#)
 - [Nuxeo - BIRT Integration](#)

- Nuxeo Diff
- Nuxeo Drive
- Nuxeo jBPM
- Nuxeo Platform User Registration
- Smart Search
- Template Rendering Addon
- Unicolor Flavors Set
- Document access tracking
- Digital Signature
- Bulk document importer
- Nuxeo Quota
- Display email in user suggestions

Download



Download this documentation in PDF.

Recently updated

Recently Updated

- Nuxeo Platform User Documentation
 - updated about 6 hours ago • [view change](#)
- Relations
 - updated Aug 31, 2015 • [view change](#)
- Managing a workspace
 - updated Aug 31, 2015 • [view change](#)
- Defining the authorized document types
 - updated Aug 28, 2015 • [view change](#)
- Local search configurations
 - updated Aug 28, 2015 • [view change](#)
- Changing the presentation of document lists
 - updated Aug 28, 2015 • [view change](#)
- Applying a preset look to a space
 - updated Aug 28, 2015 • [view change](#)
- Nuxeo Quota
 - updated Aug 28, 2015 • [view change](#)
- Bulk document importer
 - updated Aug 28, 2015 • [view change](#)
- Template Rendering Addon
 - updated Aug 28, 2015 • [view change](#)

Nuxeo Platform modules overview

The Nuxeo Platform has three modules available that enable you to easily add sets of features to the default content management functionalities, to adapt it to a specific content type management:

- the Document Management (DM) module adds richer document management features to the default features;
- the Social Collaboration module adds to social and user-centric features to the DM module, such as mini-messages and networking;
- the Digital Asset Management (DAM) module provides import and browsing features adapted to multimedia content.



This page explains the main features of each module. For the detailed list of features, you can refer to the [attached table](#).

[Additional features](#) are available on the Marketplace, as ready-to-install packages.

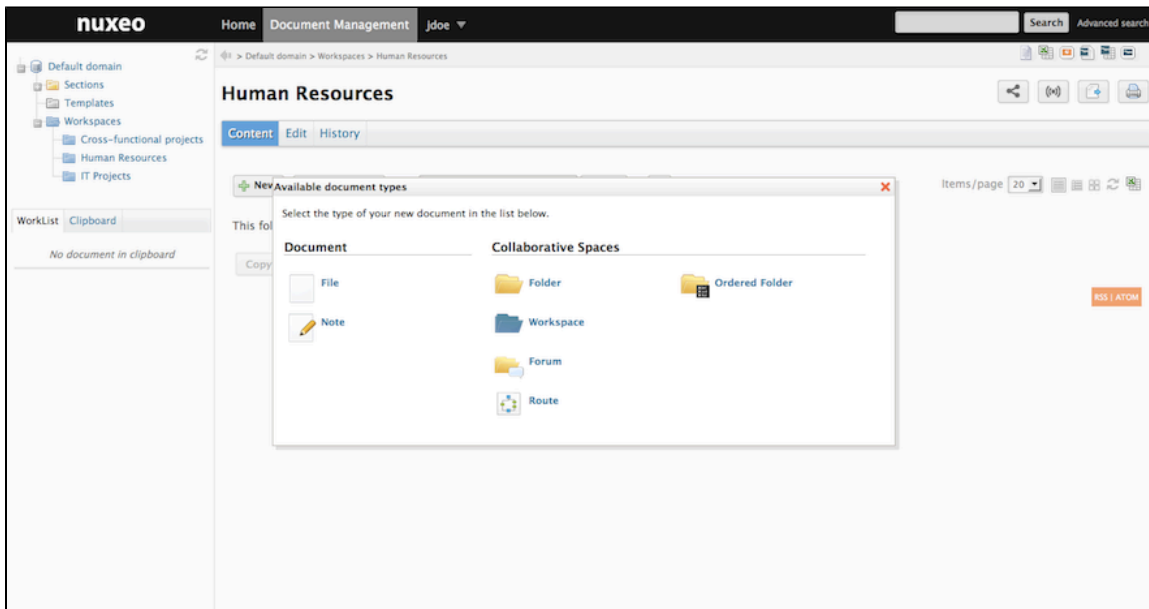
On this page

- Content Application Platform
- Document Management module
- Social Collaboration module
- Digital Asset Management module

Content Application Platform

The Nuxeo Platform includes a set of document management features by default, that are available even if you do not install any module. The naked Platform is called "Content Application Platform". The naked Platform includes core content management features such as fundamental document types ([file](#) and [note](#) for instance), with a set of metadata, their lifecycle, and most common document management features. The Content Application Platform also defines a tree structure that is very often required for document management projects, with spaces dedicated to the collaborative work and document edition ([workspaces](#)) and spaces dedicated to the distribution of documents ([sections](#)).

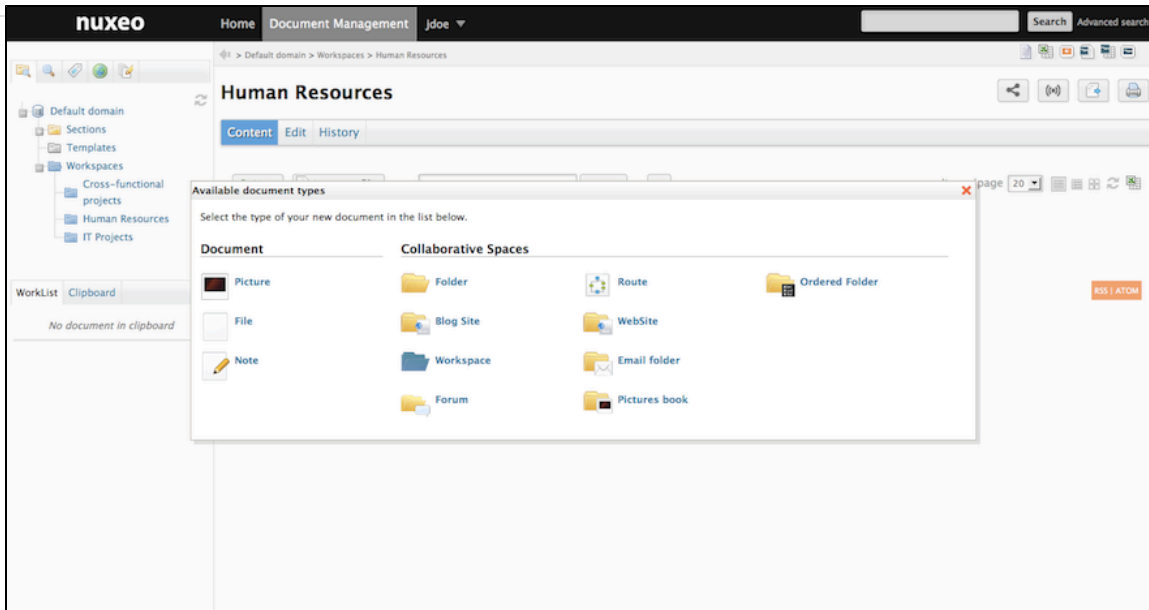
The naked Platform can be extended easily by one of the modules below or a package available from the [Marketplace](#).



Document Management module

The [Document Management module](#), also known as DM, brings more advanced and richer document management features to the Platform. Among these, of course, it adds new document types, like pictures. It also provides new ways to enrich and access documents. Users can tag documents with their own key words and find documents using these key words using the [tag cloud](#). The [virtual navigation](#) also allows them to browse documents from their metadata and the [faceted search](#) form enables them to save and share their searches to easily reuse them. The [OpenSocial dashboard](#) also facilitates the access to documents by providing more gadgets and enabling users to customize their dashboard, choosing which gadgets are displayed and where. The Document Management module also comes with a document preview and the possibility to [annotate the document](#) from the preview.

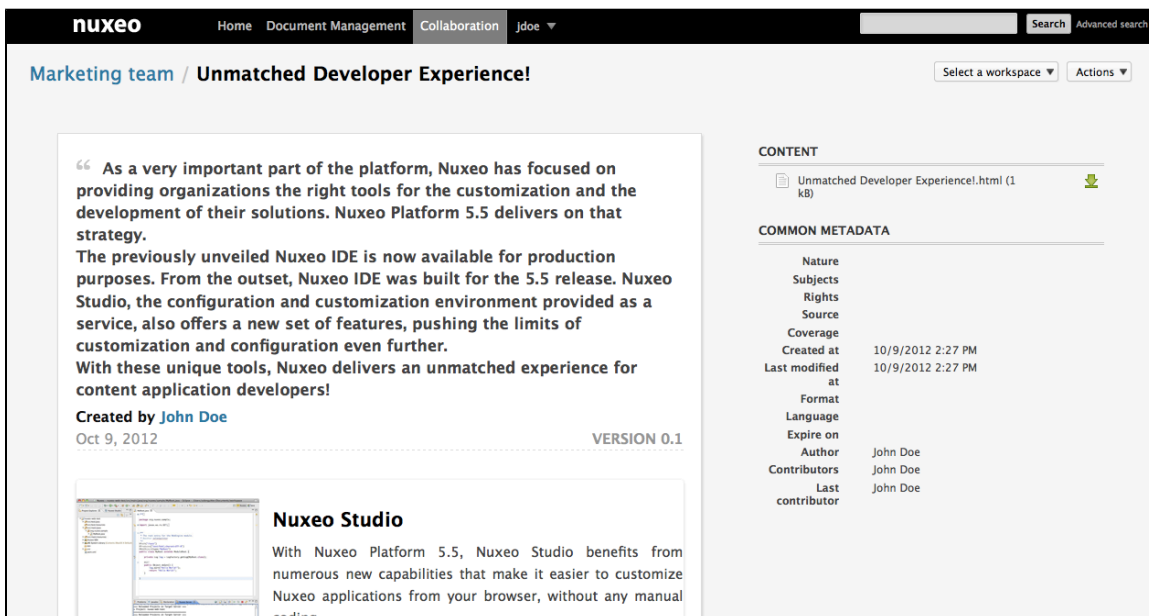
Document Management doesn't required any other module, and can be installed along side Social Collaboration and Digital Asset Management.



Social Collaboration module

The [Social Collaboration module](#) is a user-centric module that adds social and extended collaborative features to the Document Management module. Content is created in social workspaces, which provide new user-friendly access to documents using dashboards and new gadgets. Users can share documents easily using only the notion of public and private documents, which enables them to create user communities on a project, an event, a theme. To make collaboration even easier, Social Collaboration enables users to create their [social network](#). They can then see the [activity stream](#) and [mini messages](#) of users in their network, having a quick view from their dashboard of what people are working on.

Social Collaboration can only be installed on top of Document Management.

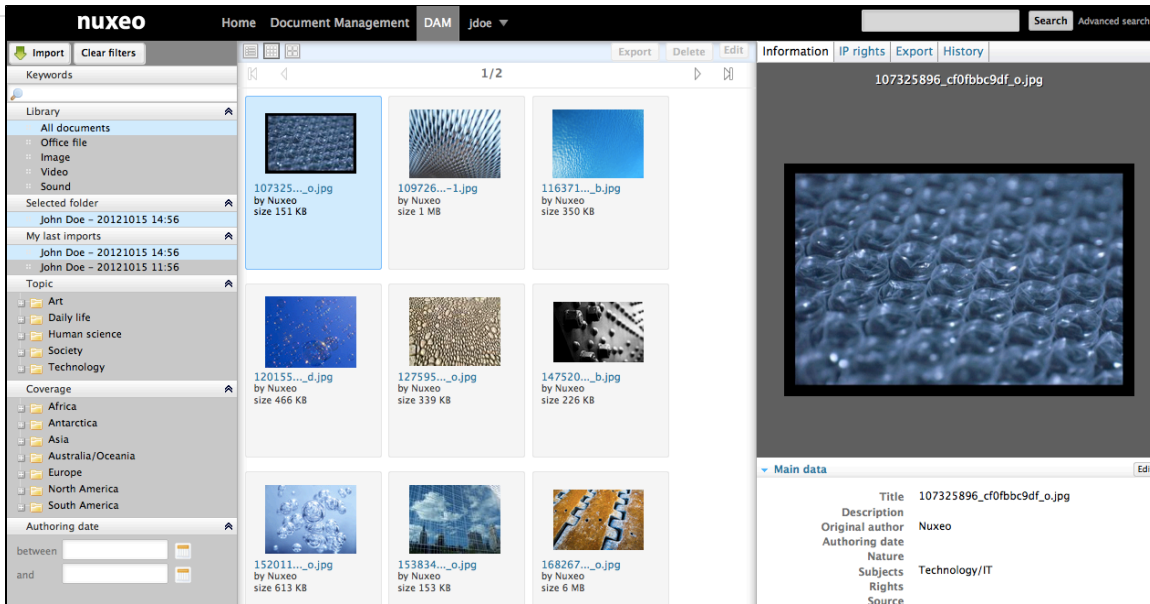


Digital Asset Management module

The [Digital Asset Management module](#), also known as DAM, adds an environment dedicated to multimedia content to the Platform, while benefiting from the features provided by the naked Platform and possible other modules installed. Pictures, Videos and Sound documents are supported, with their specific metadata, and automated processes are run upon import. EXIF and IPTC metadata are extracted and a series of thumbnails that segment the contents of video is generated.

Browsing is adapted to the assets, the content of the Asset Library being available in a dedicated environment that displays the documents as thumbnails by default. Features available by default on the Platform or from other modules are also available to manage assets.

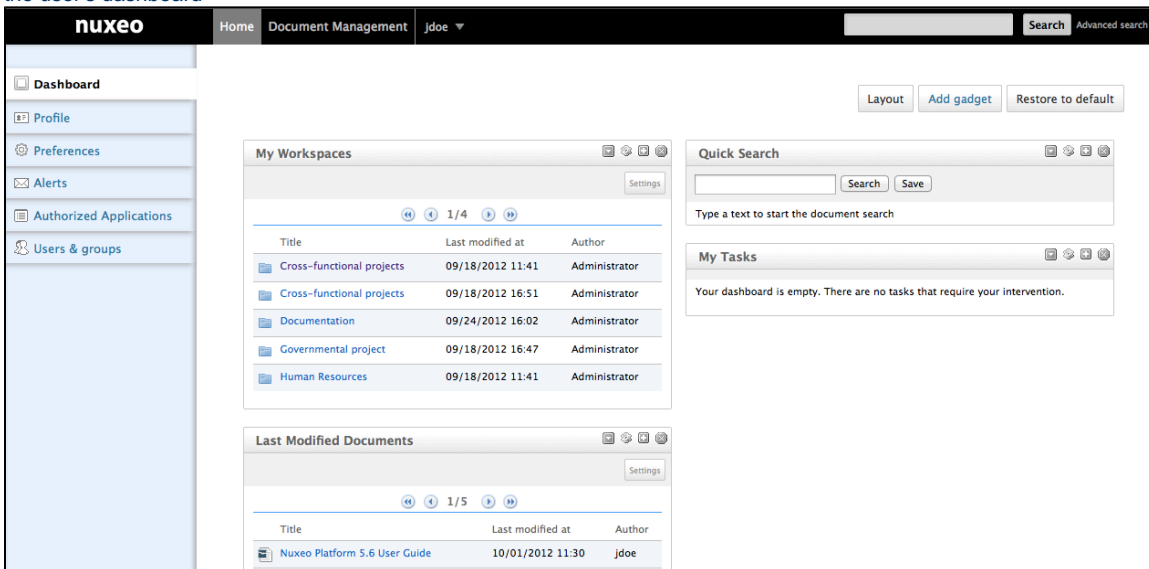
Digital Asset Management doesn't require any other module, and can be installed along side Document Management and Social Collaboration.



User home

Users have a **Home** tab, that offers user-centric tabs. Depending on the modules used, the user has access to different tabs. The basic tabs provide access to:

- the user's dashboard



- the user's profile

The screenshot shows the Nuxeo user profile page for John Doe. The left sidebar contains navigation links: Dashboard, Profile, Preferences, Alerts, Authorized Applications, and Users & groups. The main content area displays the user's profile information:

- John Doe** (Actions)
- Username: jdoe
- First name: John
- Last name: Doe
- Company: My company
- Email: jdoe@mycompany.com
- Groups for this user: Members group
- Virtual groups for this user: (empty)
- Avatar: (placeholder image)
- Birth date: (empty)
- Phone number: (empty)
- Gender: Male

- his preferences

The screenshot shows the Nuxeo user preferences page for John Doe. The left sidebar contains navigation links: Dashboard, Profile, Preferences, Alerts, Authorized Applications, and Users & groups. The main content area displays the user's preferences:

- John Doe** (Actions)
- Locale settings: English (United States)
- Time Zone: Europe/Paris - Central European Time

- a summary of the alerts he's subscribed to,

The screenshot shows the Nuxeo alerts page for John Doe. The left sidebar contains navigation links: Dashboard, Profile, Preferences, Alerts, Authorized Applications, and Users & groups. The main content area displays a table of alerts:

Alert	Subscribed to	On document	
Comments	user:jdoe	Marketing / default-domain/workspaces/Marketing	Unsubscribe
Subscriptions Updated	user:jdoe	Marketing / default-domain/workspaces/Marketing	Unsubscribe
Modification	user:jdoe	Marketing / default-domain/workspaces/Marketing	Unsubscribe
Creation	user:jdoe	Marketing / default-domain/workspaces/Marketing	Unsubscribe
Publish	user:jdoe	Marketing / default-domain/workspaces/Marketing	Unsubscribe
Publish	user:jdoe	Marketing / default-domain/workspaces/Marketing	Unsubscribe
Workflow changed	user:jdoe	Marketing / default-domain/workspaces/Marketing	Unsubscribe
Approval workflow started	user:jdoe	Marketing / default-domain/workspaces/Marketing	Unsubscribe
Document transmit by mail	user:jdoe	Marketing / default-domain/workspaces/Marketing	Unsubscribe
Approval workflow started	user:jdoe	Marketing / default-domain/workspaces/Marketing	Unsubscribe

- the list of external applications that can access Nuxeo data, using Nuxeo gadgets for instance (on Document Management module),
- the users and groups directory.

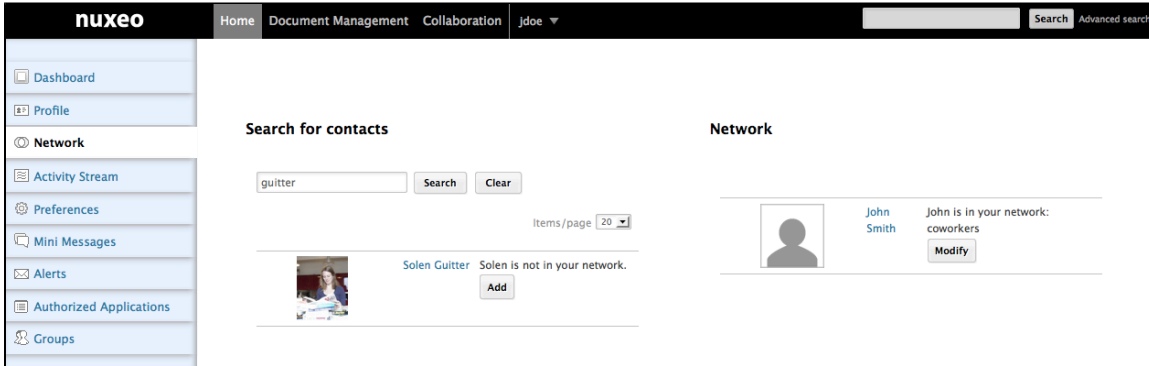
The screenshot shows the Nuxeo Users and Groups directory page. The left sidebar contains navigation links: Dashboard, Profile, Preferences, Alerts, Authorized Applications, and Users & groups. The main content area displays the Users and Groups directory:

- Users** **Groups**
- Search: john Search Clear
- Items/page: 20

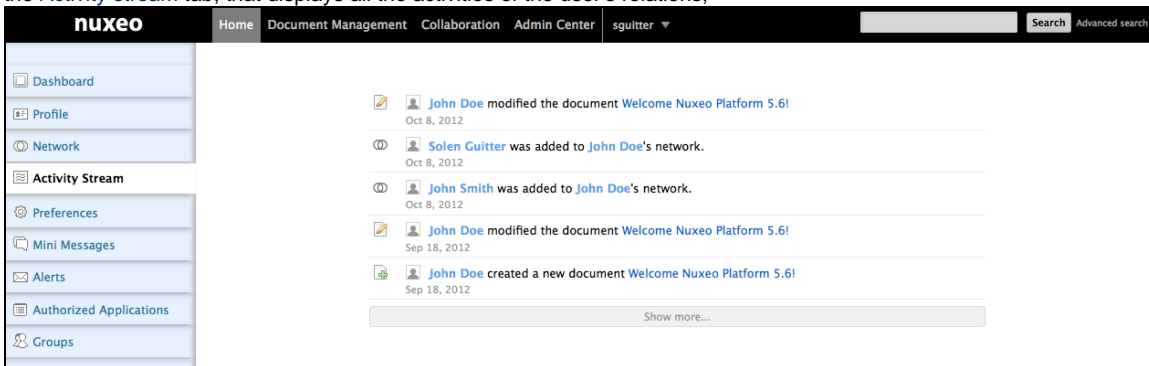
User	First name	Last name
jdoe	John	Doe
jsmith	John	Smith

The Social Collaboration module adds three tabs:

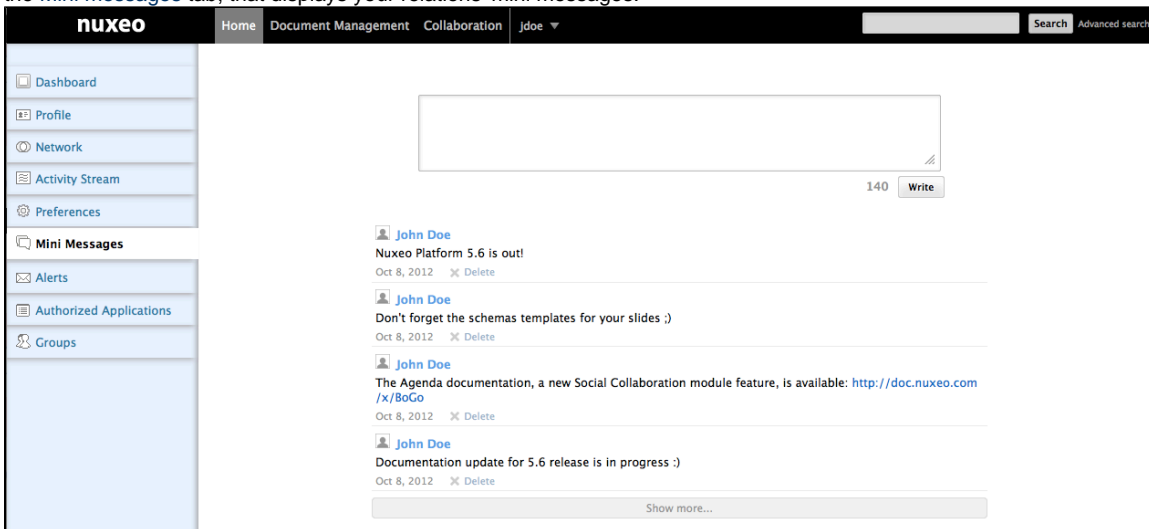
- the **Network** tab,



- the **Activity stream** tab, that displays all the activities of the user's relations,



- the **Mini messages** tab, that displays your relations' mini messages.



Related pages

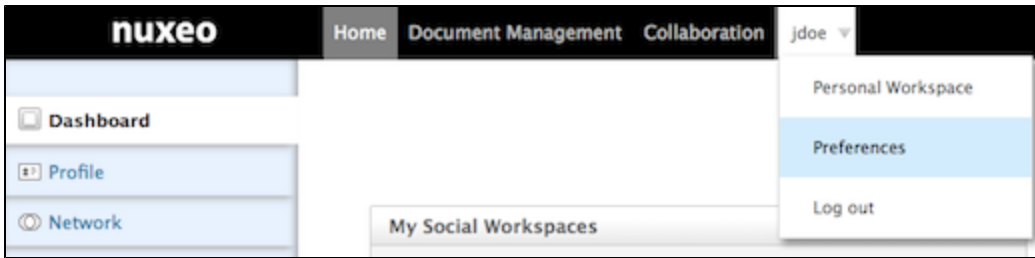
- Alerts
- Managing dashboards
- Social workspaces overview
- User home

User preferences

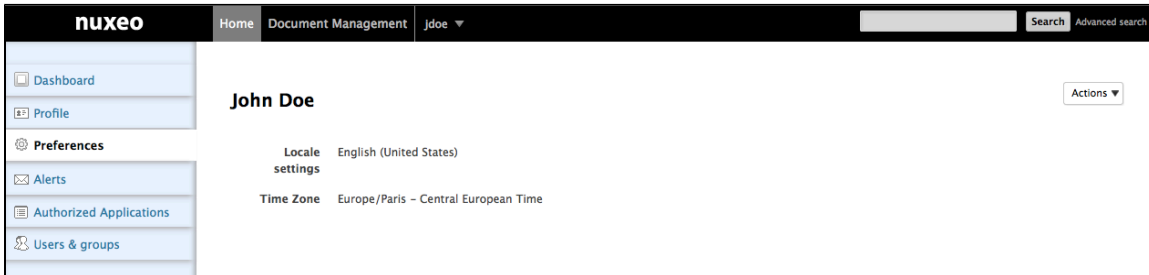
Users can set some preferences that will be used instead of the default browser's default language and the server's time.

User preferences are easily accessible:

- from the user menu:



- from the [Home tab](#).



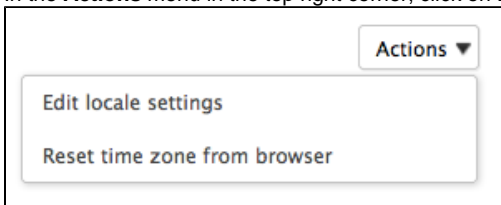
Setting the language of the application

By default, when the user browses a web page, the language selected is the browser's default language. However, users may want to browse the content of the Nuxeo Platform in another language without having to select a language every time they log in (which was what they had to do until the version 5.6). The language also determines the formatting of dates (in the history for instance), since dates are not always formatted the same way. For instance, in English dates are written MM/dd/yyyy while in French the format is dd/MM/yyyy.

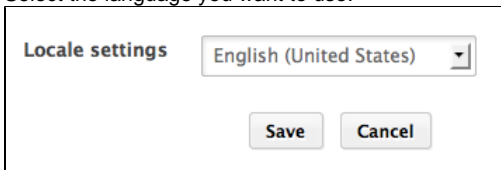
The Nuxeo Platform user interface is available in several languages. However, only English and French translations are provided by Nuxeo. Other languages are contributions from the community. If some labels are not available in the wished language, the English label is automatically displayed.

To change the language of the Nuxeo Platform interface:

1. Click on the **Preferences** tab in the Home or on the **Preferences** item in the user menu.
2. In the **Actions** menu in the top right corner, click on **Edit locale settings**.



3. Select the language you want to use.



4. Click on **Save**.
The user interface is immediately displayed in the selected language.

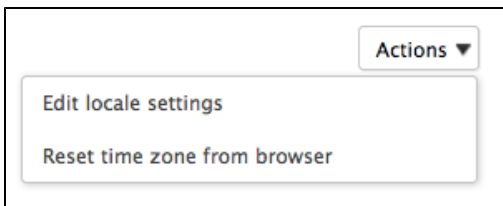
Setting the time zone

The actions done by users on documents are tracked in the document's history, so it's easy to find who did what on a document, and when. Users can be distributed in different places and possibly in countries in different time zone. But they need to be displayed a time that is relevant to them.

By default, the user's time zone is set from the browser's time, which is the same as the computer's, the first time he logs on to Nuxeo. Should the user change his computer's time zone, the time zone used by Nuxeo is not updated automatically, because the user might want to keep the previous time zone. If not, he can reset it to use the same as the browser's.

To reset the time zone:

1. Click on the **Preferences** tab in the Home or on the **Preferences** item in the user menu.
2. In the **Actions** menu in the top right corner, click on **Reset time zone from browser**.



The time zone used on your user interface is immediately changed and all the times displayed are updated accordingly.

Document Management

The Nuxeo Platform offers a set of default content management features to provide organizations with the features they need to enable their teams to manage their documents more efficiently either on a project-basis or on longer term business processes. The [Document Management](#) module brings additional features to this default set of features.

This user guide provides information and step-by-step instructions to help you use the default and Document Management features of the Nuxeo Platform. Collaborative work takes place in [workspaces](#), where you can create documents, share and edit them. When documents are ready for distribution, you can publish them in [sections](#), which are the spaces devoted to content distribution.

For administrators, the integrated Admin Center provides tools to manage, monitor and extend the application with plugins and customizations.

Document Management
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Document Management concepts • Browsing content in Document Management <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Dashboard • Navigation trees • Tag cloud • Searching the Nuxeo Platform • Browsing tips • Using Nuxeo gadgets from other applications • Working in workspaces <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Working with workspaces • Working with documents • Notes • Files • Folders • Working using drag and drop • Desktop & Office Suites Integration • Relations • Comments • Annotations • Tags • Document's history • Alerts • Workflows • Forums • Pictures • Websites and blogs • Email folders • Using Workspace Templates • Exporting documents • Copying and moving documents • Working in sections <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Publishing documents

Document Management concepts

The Nuxeo Platform and its Document Management module distinguish collaborative work and content distribution.

The general concept is this: documents are created, edited, possibly approved in workspaces. When finished, they are published in sections. When obsolete, they're unpublished from sections. Actions users can perform on documents are determined by access rights given by spaces managers. To encourage collaborative work and information sharing, the Document Management module proposes several collaborative services, such as forums, blogs and websites.

Available spaces

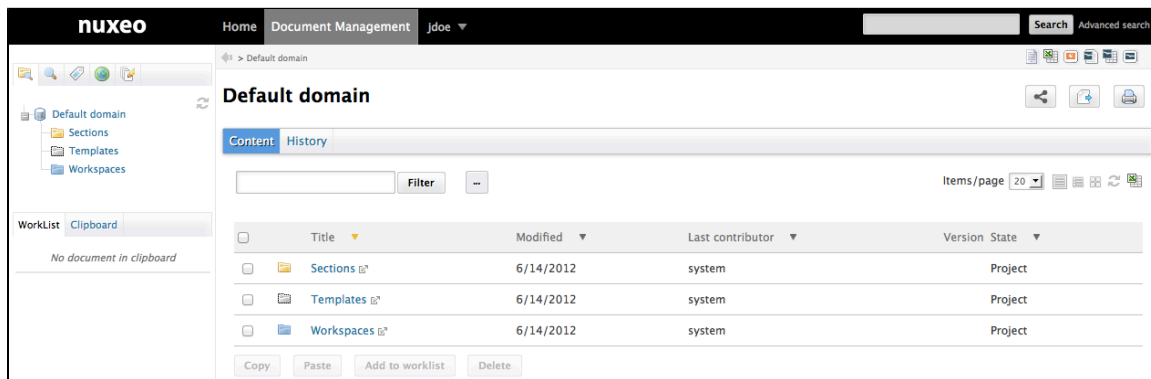
Tabs

Tabs are available on top of the page, that give access to different environments.

- The **Home** tab is where the user can find all the information that concern him: his dashboard to get a quick access to documents, and that he can customize with internal and external gadgets, the summary of his notification subscriptions, see his profile, etc.
- The **Document Management** tab is the main tab. This is where the majority of user's activity within Nuxeo will occur since it's where users can work on documents and browse your application domains, workspace, sections, etc.

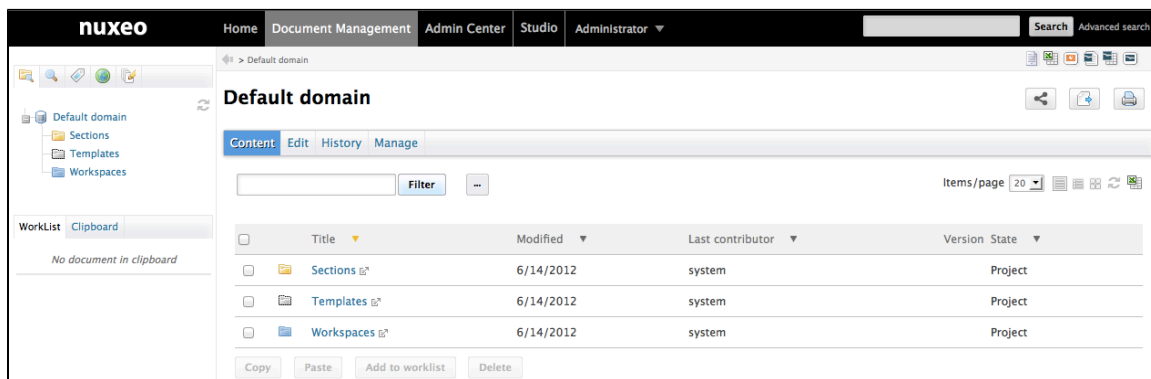
On this page

- Available spaces
 - Tabs
 - Workspaces
 - Templates
 - Sections
 - Domains
- Access rights
- Groups of users
 - Related pages



Administrators have two extra tabs:

- The **Admin Center** tab, from which they can manage the application.
- The **Studio** tab, which provides access to [Nuxeo Studio](#), the online customization and configuration environment.



Workspaces

Collaborative work takes place in **workspaces**, where users can [create](#) and [edit documents](#). **Workspaces** are designed to make capture, sharing and editing of documents easier using desktop integration features, [comments](#), [annotations](#). In the mean time, [documents history](#) and [versioning](#), [relations](#), [workflows](#) and [alerts](#) enable you to build a coherent and controlled documents structure.

Templates

To help users create the workspaces in which they work, you can create workspaces **templates** and prepare the structure that will be applied to workspaces used in [template-based workspaces](#).

Sections

When documents are finished and ready, they are published in **sections**. Traditionally opened to a wider audience than workspaces, sections are dedicated to content distribution and communication and are designed for content consultation. That is why users cannot change documents (edit or move them) in sections : documents published in sections are frozen versions of workspace documents. **Publishing** is controlled using a workflow, that requires publishing requests to be **approved** so documents can be seen in sections.




Domains

Sections, workspaces and templates are grouped in **domains**. A domain can be considered as a mini-application in Nuxeo or a root in the application. Typically, you can use domains to open the application to two or more very different populations of users. For instance, you can have an "intranet" domain and an "extranet" domain. Domains can be totally independent or not, depending on the access rights you set on each domain.

Access rights


Access to documents and the actions allowed are determined by access rights. Some users will then be allowed to only read documents, when others will be able to edit documents or to manage spaces and documents.

The available access rights are:

Right	Actions in workspaces	Actions in sections
Read	Consult content Comment documents Annotate documents Tag documents	Consult content Comment documents Annotate documents Tag documents + Can ask for publishing actions
Version	Manage the archived versions of a document (view, restore, delete) + Read actions	
Write	Create documents Edit documents Add / remove relations Start a workflow + Remove actions + Version actions + Read actions	Create sections Approve document publishing Unpublish documents + Read actions + Remove actions
Manage	Manage access rights Set alerts to other users Apply a preset look on documents Manage deleted documents + Write actions + Read actions	Manage access rights Set alerts to other users Apply a preset look on documents Manage deleted documents + Write actions + Read actions
Remove	Delete documents (this permission is included in Write right)  The Remove permission is most intended to be denied, so as to restrict the actions available to users with "Write" permission.	Delete sub-sections (this permission is included in Write right)  The "Remove" permission is intended to be denied, so as to restrict the actions available to users with "Write" permission.
Can ask for publishing		Submit documents for publishing (this permission is included in Read right)  The "Can ask for publishing" permission is intended to be denied, so as to restrict the actions available to users with "Read" permission, typically to enable users to see the content of a section without being able to publish in the section.
Comment	Add comments on websites	

Moderate	Moderate comments on websites and blogs if moderation is set to "Beforehand".	
----------	---	--

Access rights are given on folderish spaces (workspaces, sections, templates, domains, but also folders, blogs, websites etc) and are inherited in the sub-spaces.


 On a standard Nuxeo application, members are all granted "read" right at the application's root by default.

Groups of users

To make access rights management easier, you can [create groups of users](#). Instead of giving (or denying) access rights to single users and repeat the same operations several times, you can give several users the same right in one single manipulation by using a group.










Default groups are:

- **members**: users in this group are the end-users users of the application.
- **powerusers**: users in this group are the functional administrators of the application. They have a restricted access to the Admin Center, the administration user interface of the Nuxeo Platform, from which they can manage users and groups, edit the vocabularies and define the default dashboard of users.
- **administrators**: users in this group are the technical administrators of the application. They have access to all the Admin Center features and are in charge of managing the application. Beside the functional administration features, they can edit the application configuration, install packages on the application, consult the application's statistics, restart the server, etc.

 **Default groups**
Users must be in one of the groups "members" or "administrators" to be able to access content. Power users must be in both the "powerusers" and "members" groups.

You can [create](#) as many groups as needed.

Related pages

-  [Document Management concepts](#)
-  [Working in sections](#)
-  [Managing access rights in DAM](#)
-  [Managing access rights](#)
-  [Managing a workspace](#)
-  [Creating a workspace](#)
-  [Managing users and groups](#)
-  [Deleting a workspace](#)
-  [Editing a workspace](#)

Browsing content in Document Management

To help you find accurate documents, the Nuxeo Platform features several different ways to access documents, that can be completed by additional means provided by the Document Management module:

- [the different navigation trees](#),
- [the tag cloud](#),
- [the dashboard](#),
- [the simple, faceted or advanced search](#).

Dashboard

Every user has a personal dashboard that displays information he finds relevant and help him have a global view of the application's activity.

The dashboard is composed of a set of boxes that display either a list of documents matching a criteria (all the workspaces the user can access, the last documents he modified, the last documents that have been published...), or possibly a piece of information either from the Platform or from external websites.

Depending on the modules installed on the Platform, you may have a different dashboard:

- the naked Platform offers a static dashboard,
- the Document Management Platform offers a dashboard that users can [customize](#) to display only the information they want.

On this page

- Dashboard access
- Customizing your dashboard
 - Changing the dashboard layout
 - Organizing your widgets
 - Adding and removing widgets
 - Editing widgets
 - Related pages



Internet Explorer and customizable dashboard

The customizable dashboard, based on the OpenSocial standard, is not compatible with Internet Explorer versions 7 and 8. To enable users to benefit from this feature, we recommend to install Google Chrome Frame on the user's desktop. A link is provided in the Platform's user interface for relevant Internet Explorer versions.

Installing Google Chrome Frame also enables users to enjoy the [HTML5 Drag and Drop](#).

Dashboard access

To access your dashboard, click on the **Home** main tab. Your dashboard is the default tab of your Home.

Naked Nuxeo Platform dashboard:

Document Management module dashboard:

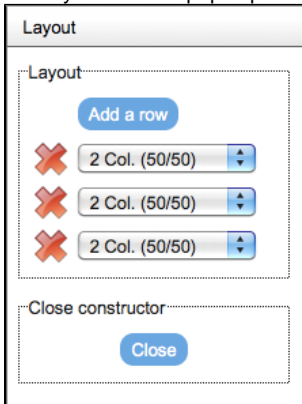
Customizing your dashboard

When you customize your dashboard, you can change the layout of the page, but you can also add, remove and edit the widgets displayed.

Changing the dashboard layout

To change your dashboard's layout:

1. From your dashboard, click on **Layout**.
The layout window pops up.

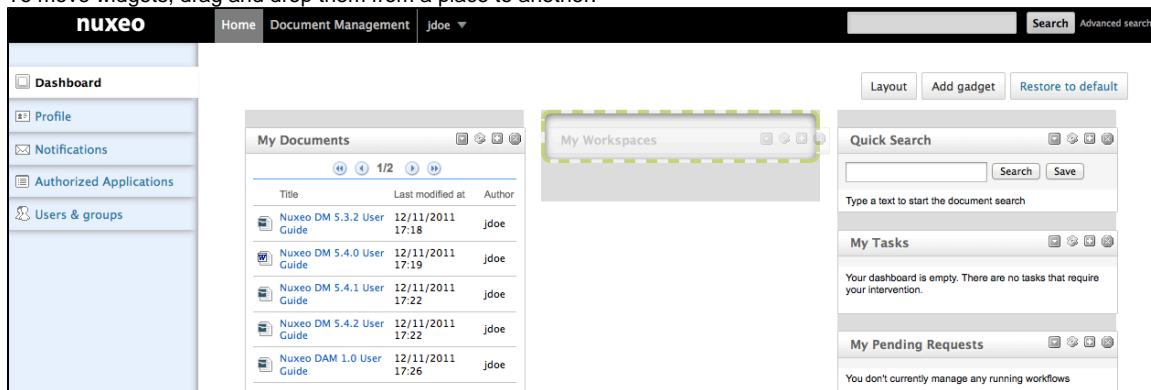


2. Determine the layout of your dashboard by adding or removing rows and selecting the columns proportions inside each row.
3. Click on **Close**.
The chosen layout is immediately applied.
Now you can reorganize your widgets in this layout.

Organizing your widgets

You can organize widgets the way you want in the applied layout. You can thus move widgets from a place to another (in another column, at the bottom or the top of the page, etc).

To move widgets, drag and drop them from a place to another.



Drag and Drop extension

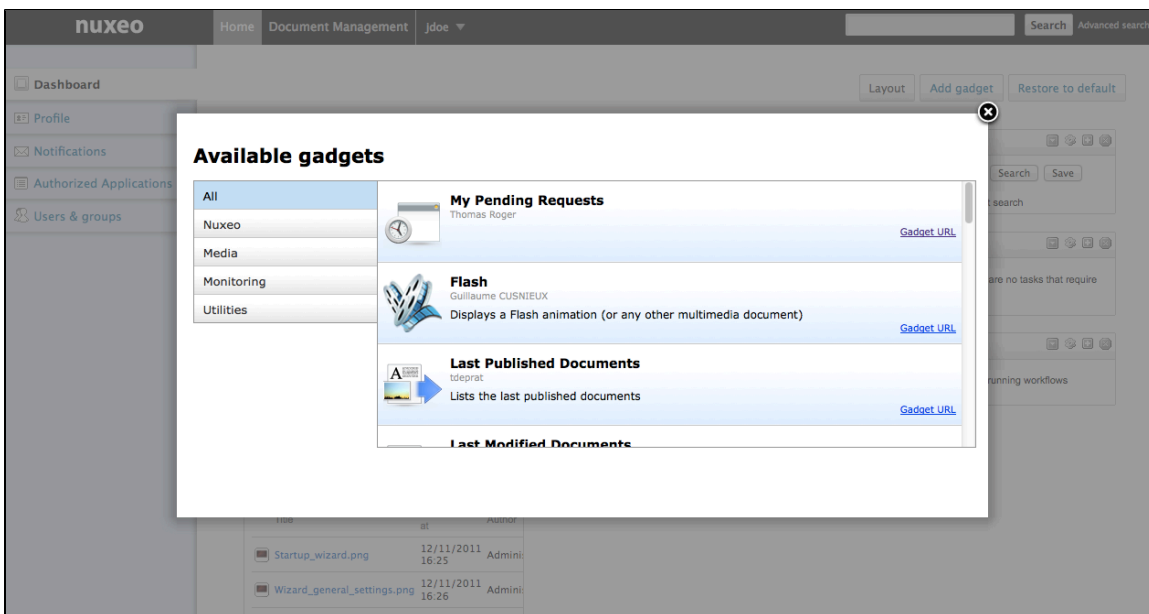
You don't need to install Nuxeo's [Drag and Drop extension](#) to move widgets.

Adding and removing widgets

You can choose the widgets that are displayed on your dashboard.

To add a widget:

1. Click on the **Add gadget** button.
The "Available gadgets" window pops up.



- Click on the gadget you want to display on your dashboard.
The gadget is immediately added on the first available slot of your dashboard.
- Move the widget in the dashboard at the place you want it to be displayed.

To remove a widget from your dashboard:

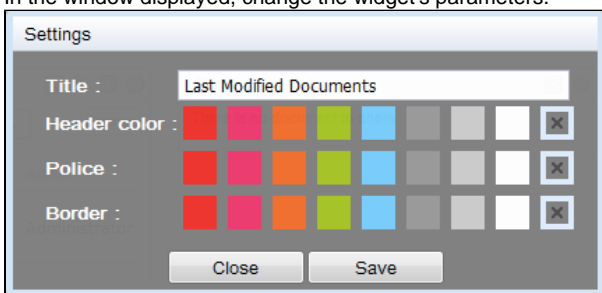
- Click on the icon of the widget you want to delete from your dashboard.
- On the window that pops up, click **OK** to delete the widget.
The widget is removed from your dashboard.

Editing widgets

At any time, you can edit widgets. You can change their title or colors to change the look of your dashboard.

To edit a widget:

- Click on the icon .
- In the window displayed, change the widget's parameters.



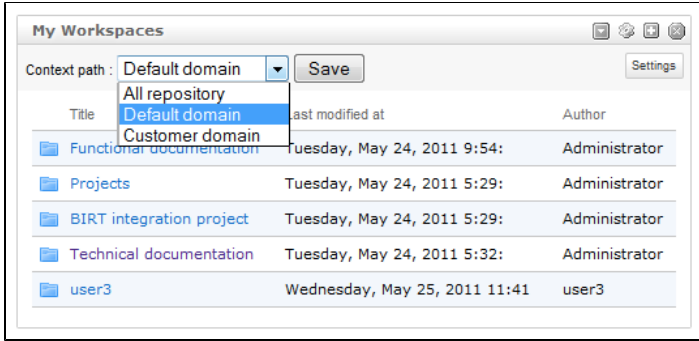
- Click on **Save**.

You can also edit the settings of some Nuxeo's gadgets to indicate if the gadget should display documents from a specific domain of the application. By default, the search is done on the default domain. This setting is available on the following gadgets:

- My workspaces,
- Last modified documents,
- last published documents,
- my deleted documents.

To change the domain setting:

- On the gadget, click on the **Settings** button displayed on the top right corner of the gadget.
A "Content path" drop down list is displayed on the left of the "Setting" button.
- Select the domain to which you want to restrain the search.



Display content from all domains
Select "All repository" to search on all domains.

- Click on the **Save** button.
The content of your gadget is refreshed according to your selection.

Related pages



Managing dashboards



Social workspaces overview



User home

• Navigation trees

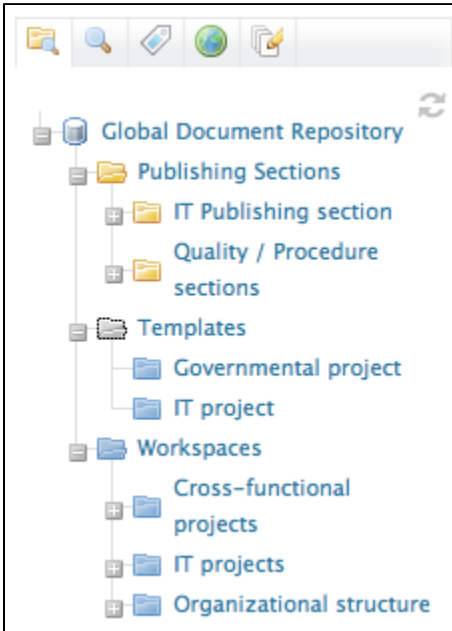
There are different navigation trees to access content in the Nuxeo Platform, so that users can access your documents either by going through folders (physical navigation) or using virtual navigation.

On this page

- Navigation through folders
- Virtual navigation
 - Related pages
 - Want to customize navigation trees?

Navigation through folders

The default navigation tree displayed on the left hand side of the pages is the folders navigation tree. It displays all the domain structure from the root. It enables you to easily access any space in the application structure.



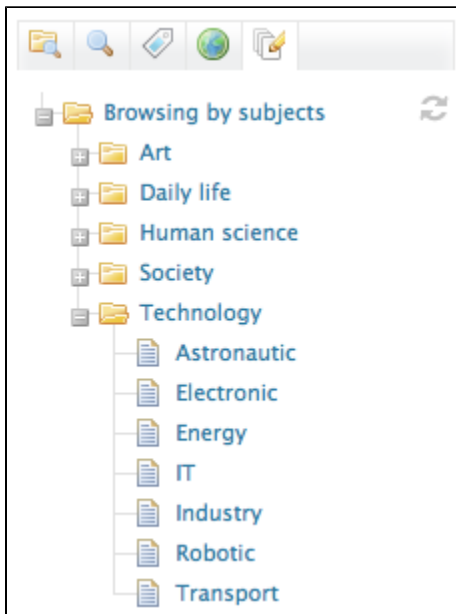
Virtual navigation



Virtual navigation availability
Virtual navigation is available on the Document Management module.

Another way to access documents is using virtual navigation. Virtual navigation consists in using a navigation tree based on metadata to access documents. Metadata are informations about the documents, like the document's theme for instance, or its last modification date.

By default, two virtual navigation trees are available in Nuxeo : geographical cover navigation tree and subject navigation tree. You can use them for instance to access all the documents about the IT subject.



You can replace or edit existing virtual navigation trees with you organization's own vocabularies. Thus, you'll be able to adapt Nuxeo to your organization's structure and way of working.

See also pages [Editing the document's content and metadata](#) and [managing vocabularies](#).

Related pages

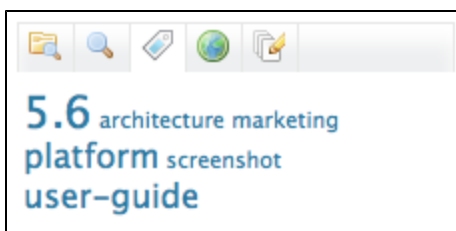
- [Consulting and editing assets](#)
- [Navigation trees](#)
- [Editing a workspace](#)
- [Managing vocabularies](#)
- [Editing content](#)

Want to customize navigation trees?

- [Nuxeo Virtual Navigation \(Nuxeo Platform Developer Documentation\)](#)
- [How to Add a New Virtual Navigation Entry \(Nuxeo Platform Developer Documentation\)](#)
- [How to Disable by Coverage and by Subjects Virtual Navigations \(Nuxeo Platform Developer Documentation\)](#)



Tag cloud

The Document Management module includes [tagging of documents](#), which enables users to apply their own labels on documents. The tag cloud lists all tags on documents, with their size growing as the tag is applied on several documents.



To see all documents tagged with the same label, click on the tag in the tag cloud.

Related topics

-  [Tags](#)
-  [Navigation trees](#)

Want to customize tags?

-  [Tagging](#) (Nuxeo Platform Developer Documentation - 5.6)

Searching the Nuxeo Platform

The Nuxeo Platform provides several ways to search the content of the application, which can be used differently:

- [suggestion search](#) and [simple search](#) are usually used to find content quickly using only keywords. These types of search can generate a lot of noise if you search for very generic keywords;
- [faceted search](#) enables you to search on keywords and additional criteria, such as the location in the application or the author. Faceted search comes with the Document Management module;
- [advanced search](#) is the most complete search: it enables to search on all the metadata of the documents and also allows to [customize the way search results are presented](#).

Documents are indexed using their title, description, content (note field, attached files), and metadata. But these different search forms don't have the same behaviors and may not give you the same results. They can provide text fields in which you can type keywords, date fields in which you can select a date to define a period, lists from which you can select values. Text fields can be full-text search fields or exact match fields.

General principles

Stemming

Full-text search uses stemming. Stemming is a process that reduces words to their uninflected root, which is not necessarily a word. This means that full-text search will return documents containing words that have the same stem as the word you entered into the search field. For instance, if you type "arguing" in a full-text search field, search results will return documents with "argue", "argued", "argues". In that case, the stem is "argu". But "argument" and "arguments" reduce to the stem "argument".

Operators and wildcards

The application's search engine uses boolean operators and wildcards, to enable you to define your search on text fields. The Boolean operators and wildcards can be used on full-text search and exact match fields:

- Full-text search fields:
 - AND: all the words separated by the operator must be in the found documents. This is the default operator of all full-text search fields, so you actually just need your keywords and the AND operator is implied.
Example: you are looking for documents about Nuxeo and marketing. Type *Nuxeo marketing*.
 - -: The keyword after this symbol must not be in the found documents.
Example: you are looking for all the documents referring to the Nuxeo but not about meetings. Type *Nuxeo -meeting*.



You need to keep the - stuck to the word to be excluded. If you put a space between the - and the word after it, the - is ignored.

On this page

- General principles
 - Stemming
 - Operators and wildcards
 - Ignored words and characters
 - Case-sensitivity
- Simple search
- Suggestion search
 - Search on keywords
 - Search on dates
 - Search on users and groups
- Faceted search
 - Searching documents using faceted search
 - Saving your faceted searches
 - Saving a search
 - Sharing a saved search
- Advanced search
 - Searching documents using advanced search
 - Customizing search results
 - Adding new search results columns
 - Removing search result columns
 - Changing search result sorting
- Exporting search results
 - Related pages
 - Want to customize search?

- OR: any of the word before "OR" or the word after it must be in the found documents.
Example: you are looking for documents that talk either about marketing or about sales. Type *marketing OR sales*.



The operator is capitalized in the example above to make it easier to see how the search is built, but it doesn't require to be capitalized. The same principle is applied in the rest of this page.

- double quotes (""): the exact expression between quotes must be in the found documents.
Example: you are looking for documents that have the sentence "copyright Nuxeo". Type *"copyright Nuxeo"*.



The behavior of the search on a sentence between quotes depends on the database that you are using. But in general, stemming is still applied on a sentence search.

- Exact match fields:
 - %: this symbol replaces zero or more characters. It works like the more commonly used * (asterisk).
Example: you are looking for documents having wiki- sites as a source (such as wikipedia, wikimapia, wiktionary, etc). Type *wik %* in the Source field of the advanced search form.

Ignored words and characters

To avoid noise in the search results, some words are ignored. Typically, words like "the" or "no" are not taken into account. This is configured at the database level. For PostgreSQL, you may want to take a look at the [Text Search Functions and Operators](#) page for more details on how search works on the database.

Some characters, that can often be used as wildward, are configured to be ignored if they are used in the search forms : !#\$%&'()*+,-./\:\\:~@{ } ^ _ .

You can configure escaped characters in the `nuxeo.conf` file using the `org.nuxeo.query.builder.ignored.chars` parameter.

Case-sensitivity

Full-text search is case insensitive. You can search for "news", "News" or "NEWS", you will get the same results: all documents with the word news, whether it's capitalized or not.

On the other hand, exact match text fields are case-sensitive. You must type the word with exactly the same letter case as it is set on the documents to get a result: typing "copyright" in the Rights field of the advanced search form won't return documents with "Copyright" in their Rights field.

Simple search

Simple search can be accessed from any site page. At any time, you can search a document by typing keywords in the search box located at the upper right corner of the page.

Typing keywords in the search field and clicking on the **Search** button or pressing the "Enter" key triggers a full-text search:

- based on stemming,
- with AND operator (all words must be in the document),
- searching on the title, the description and the content (text of a note, content of the main attachment of a file).

i If you're using the Document Management module, typing in the quick search field will trigger the [suggestion search](#). See below for more information on the suggestion search specific behavior.

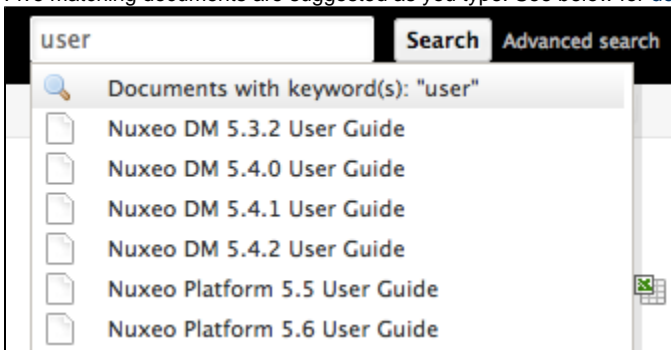
If you're using the naked Nuxeo Platform:

1. Type your keywords in the simple search field.
2. Click on the **Search** button to display all matching documents.
Search results are displayed in a table.
3. Click on the document's name to open it.

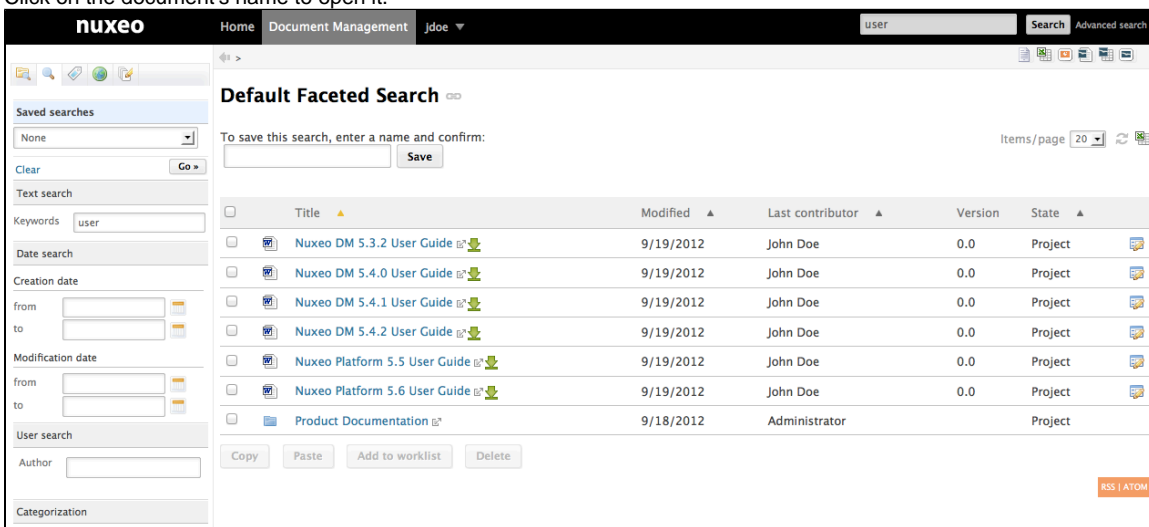
If you're using the Document Management module:

On the Document Management module, the simple search is actually a [faceted search](#) on full text. The faceted search tab is automatically selected to enable you to refine your search, and you can save your search.

1. Type your keywords in the quick search field.
Five matching documents are suggested as you type. See below for [details on suggestion search](#).



2. If the searched document is not suggested, click on the **Search** button to display all matching documents.
Search results are displayed in a table.
3. Click on the document's name to open it.



Suggestion search





Requirement

Suggestion search comes with the Document Management module.

When you start typing words in the simple search field, in the top right corner of the page, you are displayed some results as you type. This is a the suggestion search. You can type words or dates in this field. Results includes three types of items:

- documents (10),
- users (5),
- suggested faceted search (5).

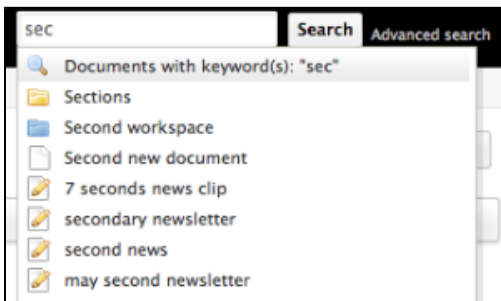
Search on keywords

Search on documents is done on the document's title only. The query mixes prefix-based search and stemming search and uses the AND operator:

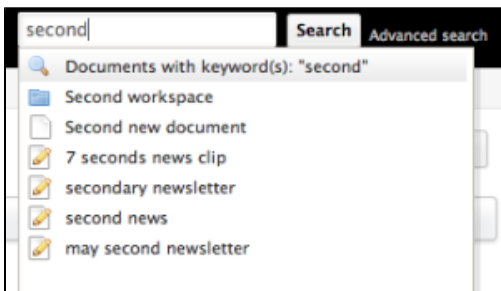
1. the word that you are typing is searched for using a prefix-based search (for instance "sec" will return documents having this string in the title, like "second", "section").
2. As soon as you type another word, stemming is used on the completed word(s) and prefix-based search is done the last word of the list, the one you are typing.

For instance:

1. In the quick search field, type "second".
As soon as you type "sec", the system will suggest documents with titles like "sections", "second workspace", "second news", "7 seconds news clip", i.e. documents with the string "sec" somewhere in their title.



As you type, the list of suggested document is narrowed to match the typed characters. You end up with documents like "second workspace", "second news", "7 seconds news clip", "secondary newsletter".



Click to see the executed NXQL query...

The query that is done is:

```
SELECT * FROM Document WHERE ecm:fulltext_title = "second*"
```

2. Add a second word in the search field, for instance "news".

As you type, the system will suggest documents with title holding words whose stem is "second" and words starting with "news". From the list above, only the documents above are left: "second news", "7 seconds news clip". "second workspace" doesn't match any more because it doesn't hold a word with "news", and "secondary newsletter" is not suggested anymore because the stem for "secondary" is "secondar" and not "second".



Click to see the executed NXQL query...

The query that is done is:

```
SELECT * FROM Document WHERE ecm:fulltext_title = "second news"
```

You can use the [operators](#) - and OR in the suggestion search.

Search on dates

On the same principle, you can type a date in the simple search field. The system searches for documents that hold the numbers in their title.

It also suggests several faceted searches:

- documents with the date as a keyword,
- documents created before the date,
- documents created after the date,
- documents modified before the date,
- document modified after the date.

To be recognized as such in the search field, dates must be formatted with a 4-digits year. To search for a date, you can use space, dash or slash as a separator between the year, month and day.

Depending on your country usage, you may be used to format dates like DD-MM-YYYY or MM-DD-YYYY. The way the Platform expects a date to be formatted depends on the server locale. For So, if your server is configured in French for instance, dates will be expected and interpreted as DD-MM-YYYY. In the UK or the US, they will be MM-DD-YYYY. So if you type "04 08 2013", the suggestion will display search based on the April 8th 2013 for an English server and on the August 4th 2013 for a French server. The date being a 4-digits number, it can actually be either at the beginning or the end of the date (2013 04 08 or 04 08 2013).

Search on users and groups


You can also use the simple search box to search users and groups. If you type a user's first name, last name or username, or a group's ID or label, the system searches for documents that have the typed name in their title, but also for users and groups.

When the system finds a user, it suggests a faceted search with the user as the creator of the document.

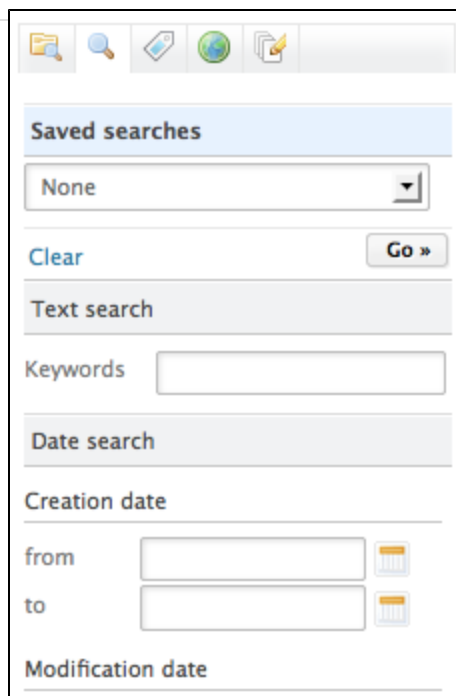
Faceted search

Faceted search is an easy way to browse the content of your application, by creating filters on the content of the application. You can filter content using:

- keywords (full text search based on stemming, see [the General principles section](#) for more details on full text search),
- dates (creation and last modification dates),
- author,
- documents categorization (nature, coverage, subjects of documents),
- location of the documents in the folders.

Faceted search is available on the Document Management module of the Platform, in the  tab of the left hand side of the page.

Faceted search also enables you to save searches to easily perform recurrent searches and find documents.



The screenshot shows the Nuxeo search interface. At the top, there is a toolbar with icons for folder, search, document, globe, and a pencil. Below this is a 'Saved searches' section with a dropdown menu currently set to 'None', a 'Clear' button, and a 'Go »' button. The 'Text search' section contains a 'Keywords' text input field. The 'Date search' section includes 'Creation date' with 'from' and 'to' date pickers, and a 'Modification date' section below it.

Searching documents using faceted search

The faceted search tab offers several criteria to filter the content of the application.

Keywords

The keywords field behaves like the simple search field. It makes a full-text search. You can use full-text operators in this field to refine your search.

Dates

The creation date and modification date criteria have the same behavior. The system will just respectively query the "Created at" and "Last modified at" fields.

These fields enable you to select a time period (from Apr. 19th 2013 to Apr. 23rd 2013 for instance) or just a limit date (from Apr. 19th 2013 or until Apr. 19th 2013 for instance).



Time

Date-based search includes the time of the selected day(s). By default, 12:00 pm is selected. This may impact search results, since documents created before or after that time will not be included in the search results. You need to manually change the time to cover a full day.

Author

You can select one or several users of the application using the user suggestion field: type at least three characters to make the user search start. If you select several users, the system will search for documents created by any of the selected users.

Nature

You can search for documents that have a specific value in the Nature metadata. You can select one or several values in this search field. To select several nature values, click on each of them with the CTRL key pressed. Click again on a value to unselect it.

Coverage

You can search documents on their coverage value. You can search on several coverage values. You can also select a 1st level value to search the document that cover Europe, for instance.

Subjects


The Subjects field behaves like the Coverage field.

Path

You can limit the search to a specific workspaces / section / folder by selecting it in the Folder popup window.



Multi-domain Nuxeo instance

If you have several domains (for instance if you use the Social Collaboration or Digital Asset Management modules), note that the Folder popup window will display the tree structure of the domain you are currently browsing. To select folders in several domains, go on the application's root (using the icon ) before filling in the faceted search form.

To browse the content of the application using faceted search:

1. In the Faceted Search tab, fill in the form with the properties of the documents you want to browse.
For instance, we only want the documents created by user John Doe.

2. Click on the **Go** button.
The documents that were created by John Doe are displayed in the content part of the page.

3. If needed, edit your filter criteria in the faceted search form that is still available.
For instance, let's say we only want the documents created by John Doe that are "booklets".

None [Go] Clear

Text search

Keywords

Date search

Creation date

from to

Modification date

from to

User search

Author John Doe

Categorization

Nature

Assessment
Bank account details
Booklet
Card
CD Rom

Coverage

Subjects

To save this search, enter a name and confirm:

Save

Items/page 20

	Title	Modified	Last contributor	Version	State
<input type="checkbox"/>	Architecture.odt	9/19/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	John Doe	9/10/2012	John Doe		Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo DM 5.3.2 User Guide	9/19/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo DM 5.4.0 User Guide	9/19/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo DM 5.4.1 User Guide	9/19/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo DM 5.4.2 User Guide	9/19/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo Platform 5.5 User Guide	9/19/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo Platform 5.6 User Guide	9/19/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo Studio Brochure	9/19/2012	John Doe	0.1	Project

Copy Paste Add to wishlist Delete

RSS | ATOM

- Click on the **Go** button again.
The list of documents that answer to the two criteria filled in is refreshed.

Default domain > Workspaces > Marketing > Nuxeo Studio Brochure

Default Faceted Search

To save this search, enter a name and confirm:

Save

Items/page 20

	Title	Modified	Last contributor	Version	State
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo Studio Brochure	9/19/2012	John Doe	0.1	Project

Copy Paste Add to wishlist Delete

RSS | ATOM

Saved searches

None [Go] Clear

Text search

Keywords

Date search

Creation date

from to

Modification date

from to

User search

Author John Doe

Categorization

Nature

Application
Article

Saving your faceted searches

With faceted search comes the possibility to save your searches, so you can reuse them at anytime. You can also share these saved searched to make them available for other users.



Saving searches limitations

Only faceted searches can be saved.

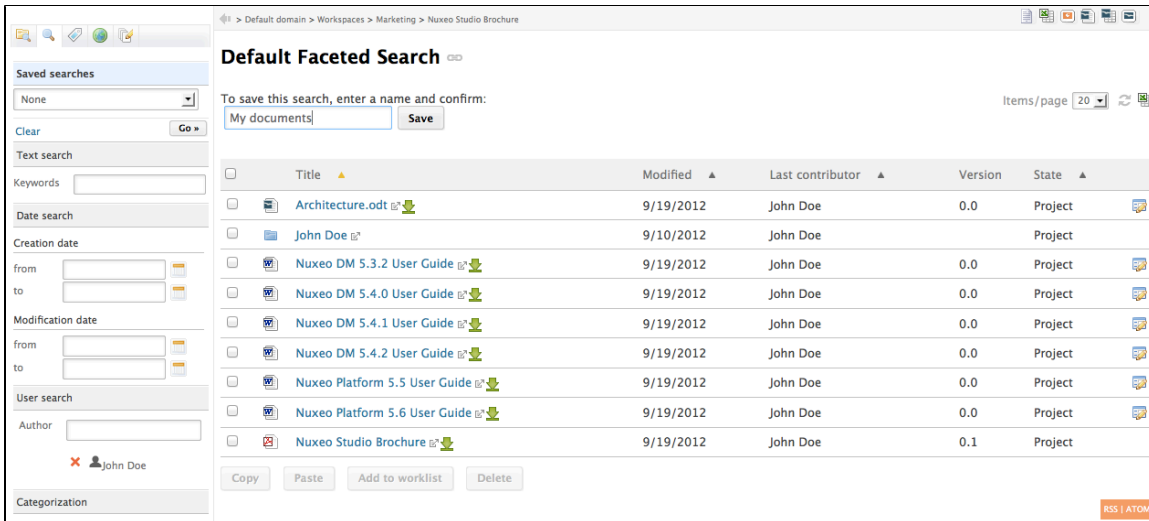
Saving a search

When you save a search, you save the criteria of the search. This means that the results displayed when you reuse the search may be different from the results at the time you saved the search, as the content of the application may (and probably will) have changed.

You can save as many searches you need. Saved searches are available in the faceted search tab, in the "Saved searches" drop down list. To load a search, just click on it in the list. It is automatically executed.

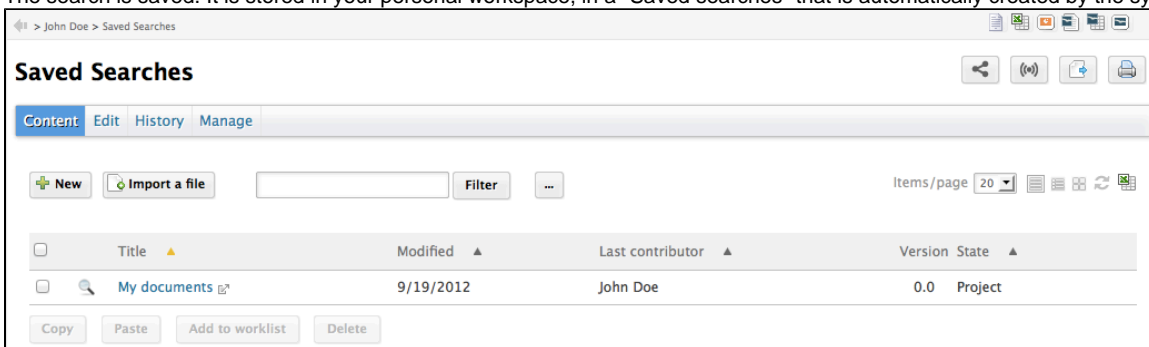
To save a search:

- Start a search using the faceted search form.
- When you are satisfied with the filter you have done, in the search results page, type a name for your search.

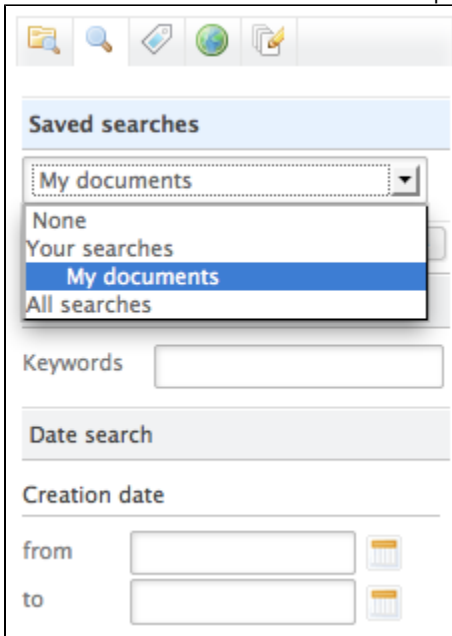


3. Click on the **Save** button.

The search is saved. It is stored in your personal workspace, in a "Saved searches" that is automatically created by the system.



It is now available in the **Saved searches** drop down list, in the "Your searches" part.



Sharing a saved search

Saved searches are stored in your personal workspace, in a Saved Searches folder that is created automatically by the system the first time you save a search. This folder is a regular folder, in which you can perform the same actions as in a folder created manually. This enables you to organize your saved searched the way you want, and to share them.

To share a search:

1. [Create a folder](#) in the "Saved searches" folder of your personal workspace.

2. **Move** the saved search you want to share in this new folder, using the clipboard or drag and drop.
3. Give the users you want to share the search with [access to the folder](#). They just need Read right to use the search.

Advanced search

Advanced search enables you to search a document using all the documents metadata. You can for instance select metadata of the searched document or the date of specific events such as publication, creation. You can also [customize what information is displayed in the search results](#).

Searching documents using advanced search

The advanced search form offers several search criteria, that you can associate to define your search and find documents. Available search criteria are:

Required words

This field is equivalent to the simple search field: keywords are searched for in the title, description and content, using stemming. You can use operators to refine your search.

Title

This field is a full-text search field. The keywords typed in this fields are searched for in the document title only, using stemming. You can use operators to refine your search.

Description

This full-text search field enables you to search for keywords in the description of documents only. You can use operators to make your search more precise.

Nature

You can search for documents that have a specific value in the Nature metadata. You can select one or several values in this search field. To select several nature values, click on each of them with the CTRL key pressed. Click again on a value to unselect it.

Subjects

You can search documents on their Subject value. You can search on several coverage values, but, unlike the faceted search, it is not possible to search on the first level of subject only (Art for instance).

Rights

This is an exact match search field. This means that you must type exactly the value that has been filled in on the document to find it, including the letter case. You can use the % character to replace one or several letters.

Source

The Source field has the same behavior as the Rights field.

Coverage

Just like you can search document on their subject, you can also make use of their coverage value. You can search on several coverage values, but you must select both the continent and the country. It is not possible to search only on the continent like on the faceted search form.

Creation date / Modification date / Issue date / Validation date / Expiration date

All the dates fields have the same behavior. The system will respectively query the "Created at", "Last modified at", publication date and "Expires at" fields. These fields enable you to select a time period (from Apr. 19th 2013 to Apr. 23rd 2013 for instance) or just a limit date (from Apr. 19th 2013 or until Apr. 19th 2013 for instance). Date-based search includes the time of the selected day(s). By default, 12:00 am is selected for "from" field and 11:59pm for "to" fields. You can manually change the time if you want only documents created from a certain time, for instance.

Format

This exact match field behaves like the Rights field.

Path

You can limit the search to a specific workspaces / section / folder by selecting it in the Folder popup window.

Language

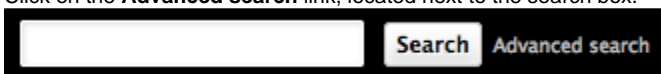
This is an exact search field. It behaves like the Rights field.

Search also for deleted documents?

Select "Yes" if you want deleted documents to be included in search results.

To search documents using detailed criteria:

1. Click on the **Advanced search** link, located next to the search box.



The image shows a dark-themed search bar with a white input field. To the right of the input field are two buttons: a white button with the text 'Search' and a dark button with the text 'Advanced search' in white.

2. Type your criteria in the **Search criteria** form.
3. Possibly, [change the search results columns](#).
4. Click on the **Search** button.

Search results are displayed in a table.

- Click on the document's name to open it.

You can edit advanced search results directly from the search results page, using a filter displayed on top of the search results.

- Click on the **Filter** link displayed on top of search results to unfold it.
The advanced search form is displayed, filled in with your criteria.

Items/page 20

Filter

Clear filter

<input type="checkbox"/>	Title ▼	Modified ▼	Last contributor ▼	Version	State ▼
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo World ↗	12/11/2011	Administrator		Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo Platform 5.5 ↗	12/11/2011	Administrator		Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo DM 5.3.2 User Guide ↗	12/11/2011	John Doe	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo DM 5.4.0 User Guide ↗	12/11/2011	John Doe	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo DM 5.4.1 User Guide ↗	12/11/2011	John Doe	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo DM 5.4.2 User Guide ↗	12/11/2011	John Doe	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo DAM 1.0 User Guide ↗	12/11/2011	John Doe	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo DAM 1.1 User Guide ↗	12/11/2011	John Doe	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo Platform 5.5 User Guide ↗	12/11/2011	John Doe	0.0	Project

Paste

Add to worklist

Copy

Delete

- Edit your criteria and click on the **Filter** button to run the search with your new criteria.

Items/page 20

Filter

Clear filter

Required words

Title Nuxeo Platform

Description

Nature

Select a value

Accommodation application form

Acknowledgement of receipt

Application

Article

Subjects

Select a value

Art

Daily life

Human science

Select a value

Add

Search results are updated below the filter form.

Format

Path Path

Language

Search also for deleted documents? No

Filter

Clear

<input type="checkbox"/>	Title ▼	Modified ▼	Last contributor ▼	Version	State ▼
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo Platform 5.5 ↗	12/11/2011	Administrator		Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo Platform 5.5 User Guide ↗	12/11/2011	John Doe	0.0	Project

Paste

Add to worklist

Copy

Delete



Searching for all documents

Click on the **Clear filter** link on the left of the filter to empty the filter form and search for all documents.

Customizing search results


You can choose which informations are displayed on the results page. The default informations are the document's title, its creation date and its modification date. You can add or remove fields from search results display.

All users can customize search results columns.

Adding new search results columns


To add a new search results column:

1. Click on the **Advanced search** link in the top rights corner of the page.
The **Search results columns** form is displayed below the **Search criteria** form.

2. Select the column you want to add and click on the  arrow.
The new field is added in the selected columns.

3. Use the up and down arrows to reorder the columns.

Removing search result columns

To remove a column, select the column to be removed and click on the  arrow.

Changing search result sorting

You can sort the results on any of the search results column. You can also change the order direction.


To change the sort criteria of search results:

1. On the **Search results columns** form, in the **Order by** field, click on **Add** and select the column you want to use to sort the search results.
2. Select if you want to order search results in an increasing or decreasing order.

Exporting search results

You can export the results of your search as a XLS document. This enables you to save the search results to consult them later.

When you export search results, the exported document contains the same informations as the search results table. The default informations are the document's title, and its creation and modification dates.

To export search results, click on the icon  displayed in the top right corner of the main area, next to the refresh icon.

Related pages

 [Local search configurations](#)

Searching the Nuxeo Platform

Want to customize search?

-  [Advanced search](#) (Nuxeo Platform Developer Documentation - 5.6)
-  [Faceted Search](#) (Nuxeo Platform Developer Documentation - 5.6)
-  [Full-text queries](#) (Nuxeo Platform Developer Documentation - 5.6)
-  [Smart search](#) (Nuxeo Platform Developer Documentation - 5.6)
-  [NXQL](#) (Nuxeo Platform Developer Documentation - 5.6)
-  [Search / Advanced Search](#) (Nuxeo Online Services)
-  [Content Views](#) (Nuxeo Online Services)

Browsing tips

The Nuxeo Platform provides several means to browse its content: tags, the breadcrumbs, the different trees... Here are some tips on how to leverage all these means.

Going back to a previous page

Due to [technical reasons](#), it is recommended to NOT use the browser's Back and Next buttons to navigate in the Platform. There are several ways to go back to a previous page.


To go up one level in the platform structure, the easiest way is to click on the icon  in the breadcrumbs.

 > Intranet > Espaces de travail > Marketing > Products

Users can also click on the workspace's title in the breadcrumbs directly or in the navigation tree. They can go up several levels in the document's path in a single click that way.

Working with several documents at the same time

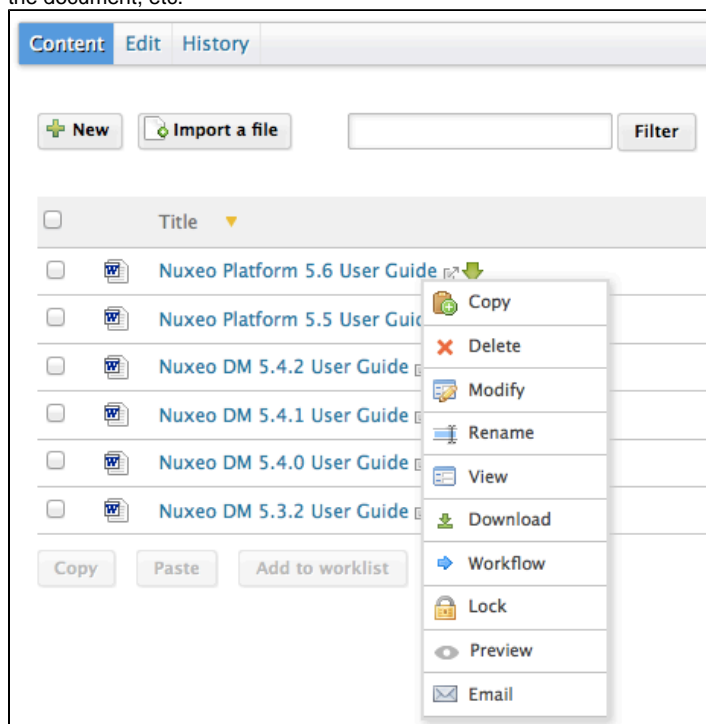
Users may want to have several Nuxeo documents open in different tabs in order to easily consult them at the same time or to work on several documents at the same time. Browsers provide a way to open documents in new tabs, but then some contextual information will be shared by all these tabs (all tabs use the same conversation). This can result in inconsistencies when modification on the documents are saved or when the user wants to navigate to another document. The Platform provides a safe way to open documents in new tabs, which is preferable to the browser's "Open in new tab".

To open documents in new tabs in order to have several Nuxeo tabs, click on the icon  displayed next to the document's title. The document is opened in a new tab and in a context that is independent from the original tab.

Quick access to document's features

The Nuxeo Platform provides a contextual menu that enables users to access to the document's tabs in a single click instead of clicking on the document and then on the tab they want (the **Edit** tab for instance).

Right-clicking on the document displays this contextual menu and enables users to easily rename the document, access to the Workflow tab, lock the document, etc.



Using Nuxeo gadgets from other applications

When the Document Management module is installed on the Nuxeo Platform, it is possible to use Nuxeo gadgets in other applications, such as iGoogle.

This takes 2 steps, to make this work:

1. your administrator must [authorize the external application to access the Nuxeo Platform](#),
2. you can [add the Nuxeo gadget on the external application](#).

In this page, we will take the example of iGoogle, which is a pretty easy example. For more complex use cases, you can report to the page [Using OAuth](#).

Authorizing an external application to access the Nuxeo Platform

Before users can use the Nuxeo Platform gadgets in another application, the administrator must authorize this application to access Nuxeo content.

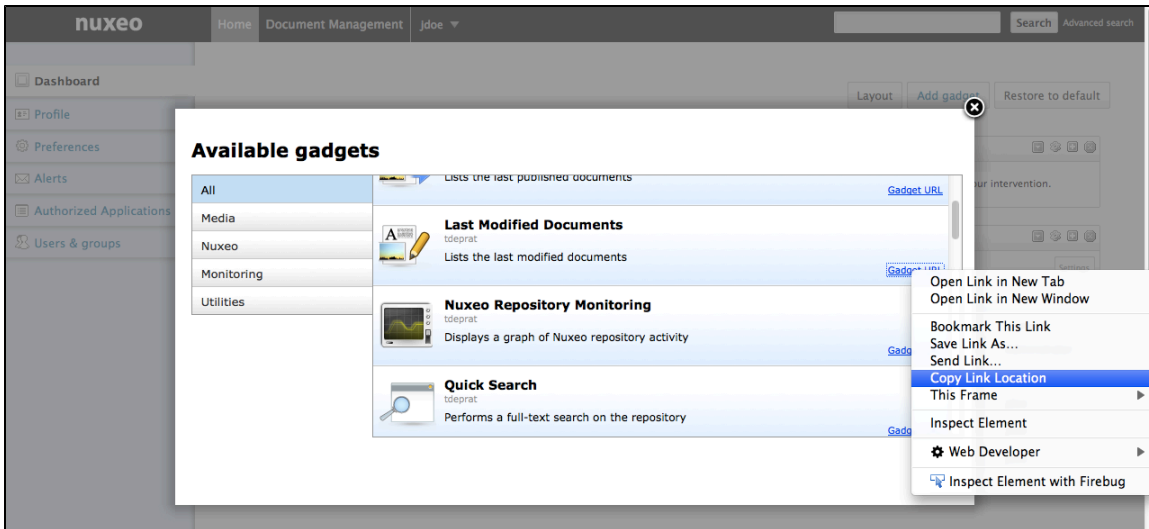
To authorize external application to access Nuxeo DM content:

1. In the Admin Center tab, click on the **OpenSocial / OAuth** tab.
2. Click on the **Consumer** tab.
3. Click on the **Add** link.
The form to add a new consumer is displayed.
4. Fill in the form with the parameters below.
5. Click on the **Create** button.

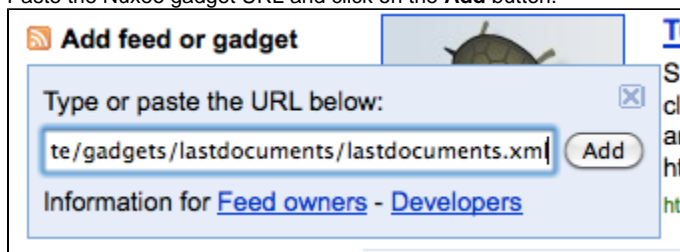
Adding the Nuxeo gadget in the external application

Add a Nuxeo gadget in an external application:

1. In Nuxeo, go on your dashboard, available in the **Home** tab.
2. Click on the **Add gadget** button.
3. Copy the URL of the gadget you want to use in iGoogle.








4. In the external application, add a new gadget that has the Nuxeo Platform gadget URL. On iGoogle:
 - a. On iGoogle home, click on **Add gadgets**.
 - b. On the gadget selection page, click on **Add feed or gadget**.
 - c. Paste the Nuxeo gadget URL and click on the **Add** button.



The Nuxeo gadget is now available from your iGoogle page.

iGoogle is available in the "Authorized Applications" tab of your home, so you can set how long iGoogle can access the Nuxeo Platform content.

Related content

-  [Using OAuth](#) (Nuxeo Installation and Administration - 5.6)
-  [OpenSocial, OAuth and Nuxeo EP](#) (Nuxeo Platform Developer Documentation - 5.6)
-  [Managing dashboards](#) (Nuxeo Platform User Documentation - 5.6)
-  [Social workspaces overview](#) (Nuxeo Platform User Documentation - 5.6)
-  [User home](#) (Nuxeo Platform User Documentation - 5.6)

There are two types of workspaces:

- *shared workspaces* are workspaces meant for collaborative work, that is to say that the workspace's content is meant to be shared and modified by several users. Collaborative workspaces are workspaces created in the root space called **Workspaces** and shared between users. Once documents are ready for distribution, they must be published in a section.
- *personal workspaces* can only be accessed by their owner, by default. You can of course share the access to your personal workspace with other users. Personal workspaces are accessible in the header of the application.



Personal workspaces behaviour

Content creation and edition, as well as management, works the same way in personal workspaces as in collaborative workspaces.

By default, no workspace is available at workspaces root. Thus, you can create the structure you need for your project, edit it if needed. You can also [set the appropriate access right](#) for users to be able to collaborate in the workspaces.

Workspaces management also includes setting [alerts](#) for users to be informed when content is created or edited in workspaces and handling content deletion.

Creating a workspace

• Working in workspaces

Workspaces are spaces dedicated to collaborative work. It is the place where you will be able to create, share and edit documents.

You can also use collaborative services like forums, websites or blogs to communicate and share information with the other users.

Working with workspaces

Workspaces are created in the Workspaces root space, either at the root of Workspaces or in sub-workspaces. By default, no workspace is available in Nuxeo so that you can create the structure needed for your project. You can create as many workspaces and sub-workspaces as you need.

Workspaces can be created from scratch or from a template.

On this page

- [Creating a workspace from scratch](#)
- [Creating a workspace from a template](#)
 - [Related pages](#)
 - [Want to customize workspaces?](#)

Creating a workspace from scratch

To create a new workspace, you need to have at least 'Write' rights in the parent folder.

To create a workspace:

1. Click on the **New Document** button (**New Workspace** if you are the root of workspaces).
2. On the Available document types window, click on **Workspace**.
3. Give the workspace a title and possibly a description.
4. Click on **Create** button.

The workspace's **Content** tab is displayed.



Creating a workspace from a template

Templates are predefined workspaces that you can use to make building your workspace structure easier.

When you create a workspace from a template, the newly created workspace automatically have the same content and description as its template. Access rights however are not inherited from the template but from the parent workspace.

To create a workspace from a template:

1. Click on the **New Document** button (**New Workspace** if you are the root of workspaces).
2. On the Available document types window, click on **Workspace**.
3. Give the workspace a title, possibly a description and select the template to create the workspace from in the drop down list.
4. Click on **Create** button.

The workspace's **Content** tab is displayed.

Related pages

- [Creating a workspace](#)
- [Editing a workspace](#)
- [Deleting a workspace](#)
- [Managing a workspace](#)
- [Document Management concepts](#)
- [Using Workspace Templates](#)

Want to customize workspaces?

No content found for label(s) override-default workspace.

Editing a workspace

To edit a workspace, you need to have Write right on the workspace.

When you edit a workspace, you can edit its properties (title and description) and its metadata. The metadata of workspaces are the same as for all the other documents:

Field	Description
Nature	Nature of the document.
Subjects	Topic(s) of the document.
Rights	Information about the reproduction rights of the document. Rights informations often encompass Intellectual Property Rights and Copyright.
Source	The references of the resource from which the document's content is derived (totally or partially).
Coverage	Information about the geographic reach of the document.
Created at	Date automatically filled in by the system when the document is created.
Last modified at	Date automatically filled in by the system when the document is modified.
Format	Format of the document, if any is preferred.
Language	Language used in the document.
Expire on	Date on which the document stops being valid. Click on the calendar icon to select a date. This date is not indexed in the system. It is just in indication for users but it is not processed by the application.
Author	User who created the document. This field is automatically filled in by the system.
Contributors	Users who modified the document. This field is automatically filled in by the system.
Last contributor	Last user who modified the document. This field is automatically filled in by the system.

To edit a workspace:

1. Click on the **Edit** tab of the workspace.
2. Fill in the edition form's fields.

Documentation

Content Edit History

Title * Documentation

Description

Nature Select a value

Subjects Select a value Select a value Add

Rights










Source

Coverage Select a value Select a value

Created at 9/20/2012 2:34 PM

3. Optionally type a comment to keep track of why you edited the workspace.
4. Click on the **Save** button.
Modifications are saved and the fact that you edited the workspace is tracked in **History** tab.

Related pages;

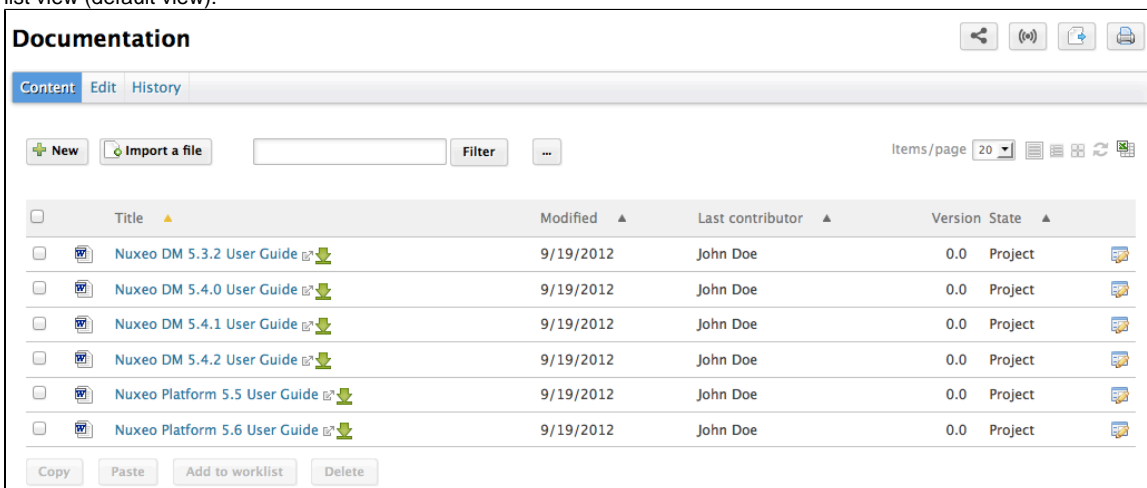
-  [Creating a workspace](#)
-  [Editing a workspace](#)
-  [Deleting a workspace](#)
-  [Navigation trees](#)
-  [Editing content](#)
-  [Managing vocabularies](#)
-  [Managing a workspace](#)
-  [Document Management concepts](#)
-  [Consulting and editing assets](#)

Changing workspace content presentation

Users can change the way content is presented in the folderish repositories (workspaces, folders, sections).

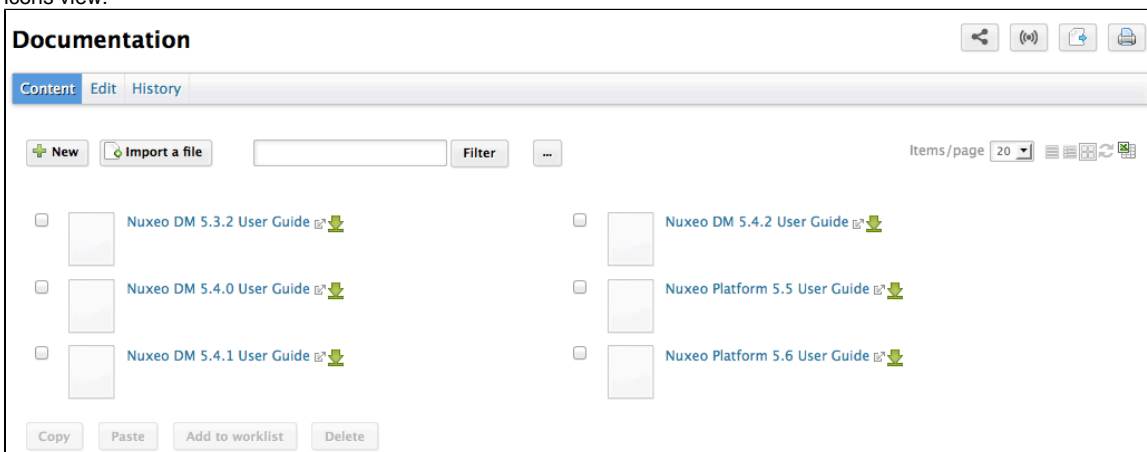
Different views of the content lists are available in workspaces, folders and sections:

- list view (default view):

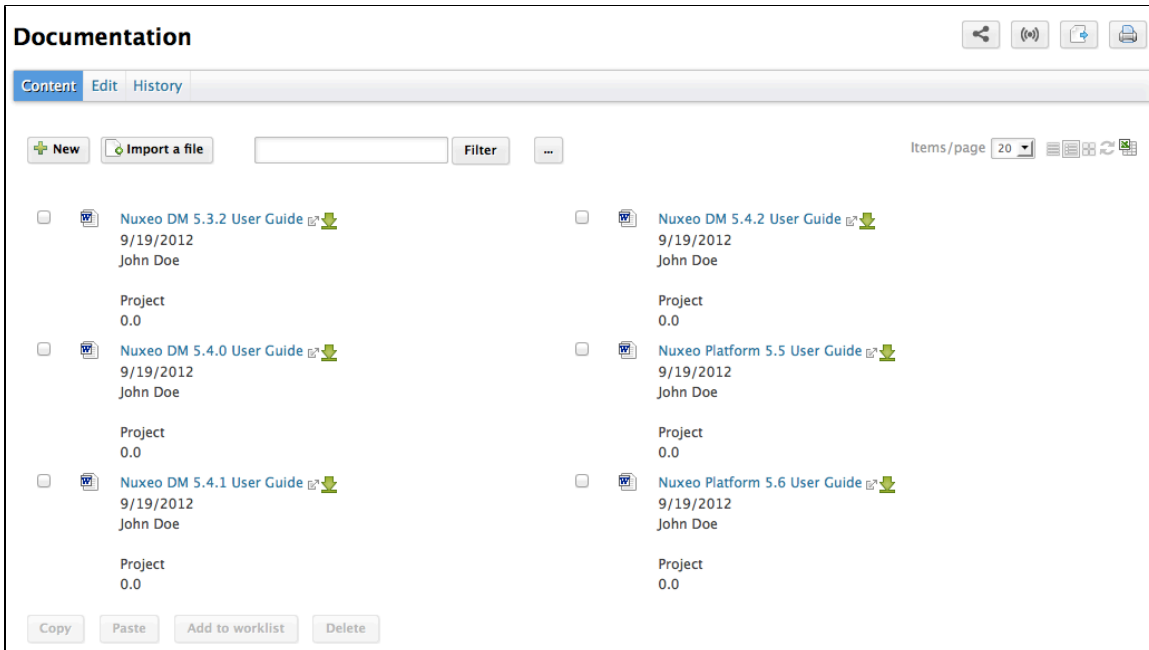


Title	Modified	Last contributor	Version	State
Nuxeo DM 5.3.2 User Guide	9/19/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project
Nuxeo DM 5.4.0 User Guide	9/19/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project
Nuxeo DM 5.4.1 User Guide	9/19/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project
Nuxeo DM 5.4.2 User Guide	9/19/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project
Nuxeo Platform 5.5 User Guide	9/19/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project
Nuxeo Platform 5.6 User Guide	9/19/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project

- icons view:



- compact view:



To change presentation:

Click on one of the icons displayed on the top right corner of **Content** tab:

- list view icon:
- icon view icon:
- compact view icon:

Related topics

- [Unicolor Flavors Set](#)
- [Applying a preset look to a space](#)

Deleting a workspace

Only users with "write" or "manage everything" rights in the parent workspace can delete a workspace.

When you delete a workspace, you also delete its content. This action moves the workspace into the parent's trash, from which users with management rights can [revert deletion](#) or [delete it permanently](#).

To delete a workspace:

1. In the **Content** tab of the parent workspace, check the box corresponding to the workspace to delete.
2. Click on the **Delete** button.
3. In the window that pops up, click on the **OK** button.

The parent workspace's **Content** tab is displayed: the deleted workspace is not displayed anymore.

More in this documentation

- [Managing deleted documents](#)
- [Deleting content](#)
- [Deleting a workspace](#)

Customization

No content found for label(s) delete.

Managing a workspace

Users with management rights can parameter the workspace.

All management actions are available in the **Manage** tab of the workspace.

This is the place where you can:

- set [access rights](#) on the workspace to define who can read the content, edit it or delegate management of the workspace
- set [alerts](#) for other users so they get automatically informed of the content evolution
- [manage deleted documents](#) in the workspace **Trash**,
- change the look of the workspace by [choosing a preset theme](#),
- define the sections in which users will be able to publish from the document (called [publication targets](#)).

Managing deleted documents

When they are deleted by users with "write" rights, documents are moved into the **Trash** tab of the parent folder (domain, workspace, folder, etc). They are not erased from the application. Users with "manage everything" rights can still restore them or delete them permanently.

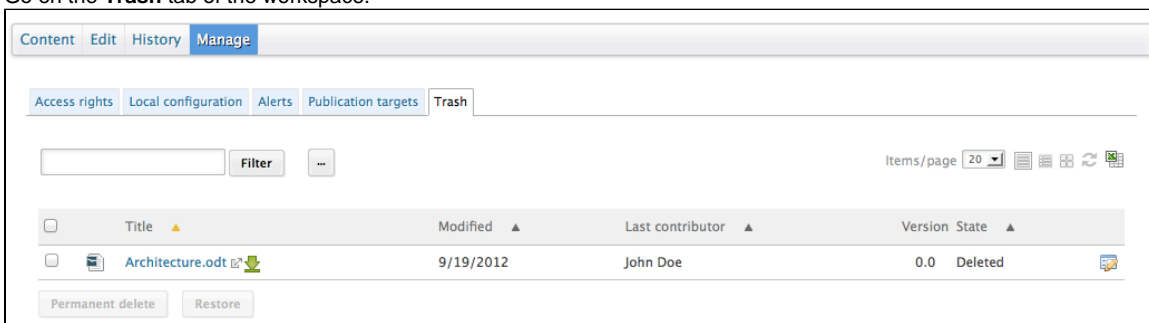
Restoring documents

Only users with management rights can restore documents.

When they are deleted by users with writing rights, documents are moved into the **Trash** tab of workspaces or folders. They are not erased from the application and can still be restored, i.e. moved back into the **Content** tab of the workspace.

To restore a document:

1. Go on the **Trash** tab of the workspace.



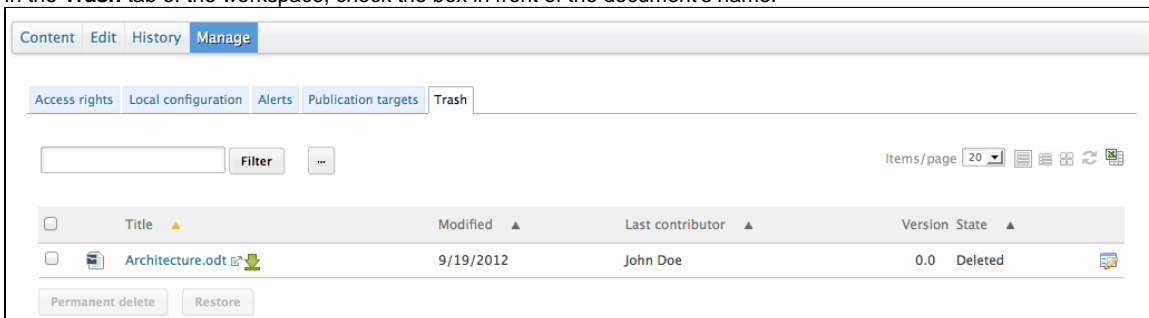
2. Check the box in front of the document's name.
 3. Click on the **Restore** button.
 4. On the window that pops up, click on the **OK** button.
- The document is moved back into the **Content** tab of the workspace.
It takes the 'project' life cycle state, even if its life cycle state before deletion was "approved" or "obsolete".

Permanently deleting documents

Only users with management rights can manage the trash of a space and delete documents permanently.

To delete a document permanently:

1. In the **Trash** tab of the workspace, check the box in front of the document's name.



2. Click on the **Permanent delete** button.
 3. On the window that pops up, click on the **OK** button.
- The document is permanently erased from the application. It cannot be restored.
The [relations](#) to the deleted document are updated and are displayed as a URI relation: the deleted document is displayed as an external document, identified by its reference (URI).

More in this documentation

- [Managing deleted documents](#)
- [Deleting content](#)
- [Deleting a workspace](#)

Customization

No content found for label(s) delete trash.

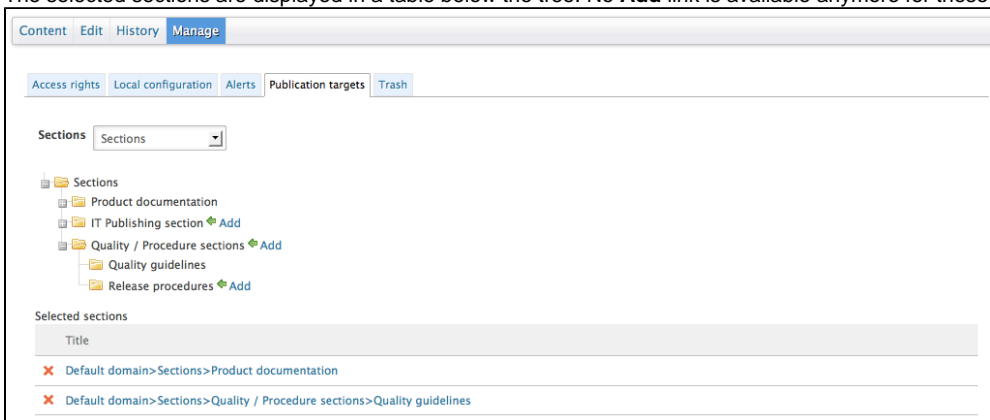
Setting publication targets

In order to guide users when they publish documents and make sure documents are published in the correct sections, you can define publication targets for the workspace's documents. Publishing targets are sections in which the documents from the workspace will be publishable. Users will then be able to publish documents only in the sections you have defined.

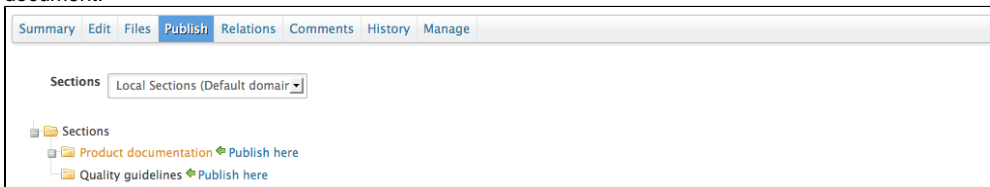
By default, workspaces don't have any targets defined. Users with Manage everything rights can add or remove targets.

To define the publication targets of a workspace:

1. Click on the **Manage** tab of the workspace.
The **Access Rights** tab is displayed by default.
2. Click on the **Publication targets** tab.
If no section has been defined yet, users can submit documents to publishing in any section (providing they have the rights to publish).
3. Unfold the sections tree and click on the **Add** link of the sections to which you want to restrict publishing from this workspace.
The selected sections are displayed in a table below the tree. No **Add** link is available anymore for these sections.





When they click on the **Publish** tab of documents to publish a document, only the selected sections are available to publish the document.



4. Click on the icon to remove a section from the workspace's targets.

Related pages

-  [Setting publication targets](#)
-  [Publishing documents](#)

Applying a preset look to a space

Local administrators, i.e. users with Manage right in the space, can easily apply a preset theme to a workspace, template or section. You can apply a theme to spaces only. For instance, you can change the theme of sections, so that they look different from workspaces, but you cannot change the look of a document.

Two themes, also called flavors, are available by default: the Nuxeo theme and the Rainbow theme. Flavors are sets of colors that determine the look of the space. If you configured other flavors in Nuxeo Studio, they are available here as well.



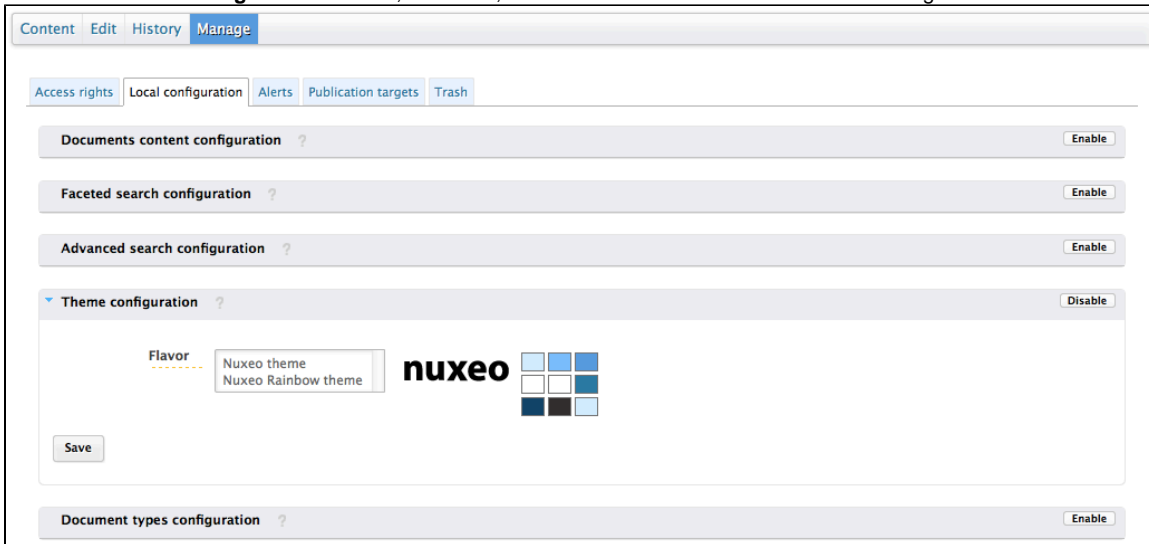
Theme inheritance

The new space's theme is not applied to the sub-spaces, but it is applied to the documents it contains.

When you choose to apply a theme to a workspace, for instance, you can refine what is displayed on the page by applying a perspective on the theme. A perspective is a fragment visualization mask that determines that some parts of the page, like the clipboard and worklist, are not displayed to the user if specified conditions are met. The default application has only one perspective.

To change the theme of a workspace:

1. Click on **Manage** tab of the space.
2. Click on the **Local configuration** tab and, if needed, click on the **Enable** link of the "Theme Configuration" section.



3. Select the flavour you want to apply.
4. Click on the **Save** button.
The page is displayed with the selected look.

Related pages in this documentation

- [Applying a preset look to a space](#)
- [Changing the presentation of document lists](#)
- [Unicolor Flavors Set](#)

Related topics in other documentation

- [Migrating my customized theme](#) (Nuxeo Platform Developer Documentation - 5.6)
- [Theme](#) (Nuxeo Platform Developer Documentation - 5.6)
- [Branding](#) (Nuxeo Online Services)
- [Style howtos](#) (Nuxeo Platform Developer Documentation - 5.6)
- [Specific Upgrade Instructions](#) (Nuxeo Online Services)

Changing the presentation of document lists

From the "Local configuration" sub-tab of the **Manage** tab, you can set preferences on what content can be created in the current space, how the lists of content should be presented, customized search features...

The Nuxeo Platform uses different presentations for the lists of documents: they can have different layouts, display specific informations on the documents, have a different default number of documents on a page, enable some features on the documents, etc. These predefined presentations of lists of documents are called "Content views".

Here are some examples of content views used in Nuxeo:

- Document content (used for workspaces and sections for instance):

New

Import a file

Filter

...

Items/page 20

<input type="checkbox"/>	Title	Modified	Last contributor	Version	State	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo DM 5.3.2 User Guide	9/19/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo DM 5.4.0 User Guide	9/19/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo DM 5.4.1 User Guide	9/19/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo DM 5.4.2 User Guide	9/19/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo Platform 5.5 User Guide	9/19/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo Platform 5.6 User Guide	9/19/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project	

Copy

Paste

Add to wishlist

Delete

- trash content view:

Filter

...

Items/page 20

<input type="checkbox"/>	Title	Modified	Last contributor	Version	State	
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo DAM 1.x User Guide	9/19/2012	John Doe	0.0	Deleted	

Permanent delete

Restore

- Last modified documents:

«

1/2

»

Title	Last modified at	Author
Nuxeo Platform Architecture	09/18/2012 15:23	Administrator
Nuxeo DM 5.3.2 User Guide	09/19/2012 16:47	jdoe
Nuxeo DM 5.4.0 User Guide	09/19/2012 16:50	jdoe
Nuxeo DM 5.4.1 User Guide	09/19/2012 16:50	jdoe
Nuxeo DM 5.4.2 User Guide	09/19/2012 16:51	jdoe

You can define what content view will be used for folderish documents (i.e. documents in which you can create other documents) in the current space. This is inherited in the folderish documents of the space from which you define these preferences.



Customized content views

You can leverage this feature when you customize the Nuxeo Platform and create new content views. Your content view will then be available in the drop down list and you can use locally for documents. You can read [How to define a new view using Nuxeo Online Services](#).

To associate a document type and a content view:

- Click on the **Manage** tab of the current space.
- Click on the **Local configuration** sub-tab.
- If needed, click on the **Enable** link of the "Documents content configuration".
The document content configuration form is displayed.
- Click on the **Add** link to define a new document type - content view association.
- In the first drop down list, select the document type.
- In the second drop down list, select which content view will be used for the selected document type.

Content Edit History **Manage**

Access rights

Local configuration

Alerts

Publication targets

Trash

Documents content configuration ?

Disable

Bind document types and ContentView

Workspace

Trash content


Add

Save



- Click on the **Save** button.

The selected document type now has the presentation defined by the selected content view, in the current space and its sub-spaces.


To remove a document type - Content view association

1. Click on the **Manage** tab of the current space.
2. Click on the **Local configuration** sub-tab.
The available local configurations are displayed.
3. In the Document content configuration, click on the icon  the document type - content view association you want to remove.
4. Click on the **Save** button.
The document type has its default content view.

Related pages in this documentation

-  [Changing the presentation of document lists](#)
-  [Applying a preset look to a space](#)

Related topics in other spaces

-  [Content views](#) (Nuxeo Platform Developer Documentation - 5.6)

Defining the authorized document types

The local configuration enables users to set some document types preferences at the workspace or section level, from Nuxeo's interface. These preferences are inherited in the sub-spaces and all folderish documents (folders, ordered folders, websites, etc).


On this page

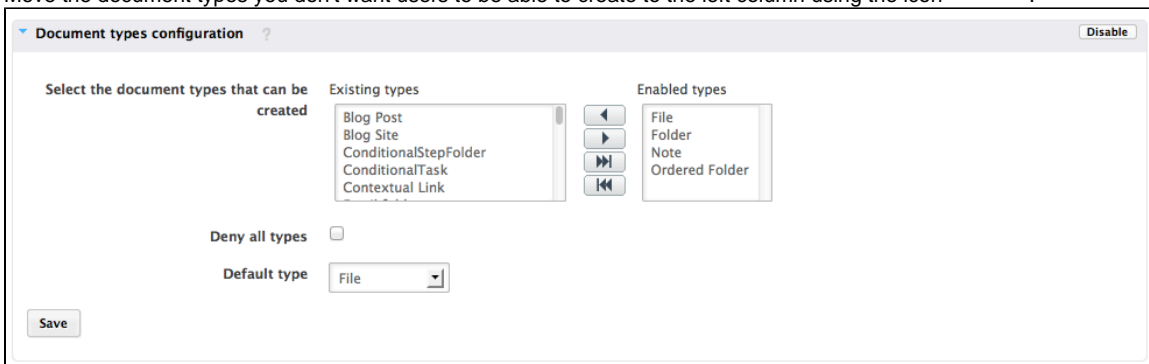
- [Defining what document types can be created](#)
- [Denying the possibility to create documents](#)
- [Selecting the default document type](#)
 - [Related sections in this documentation](#)
 - [Related sections in other documentation spaces](#)

Defining what document types can be created

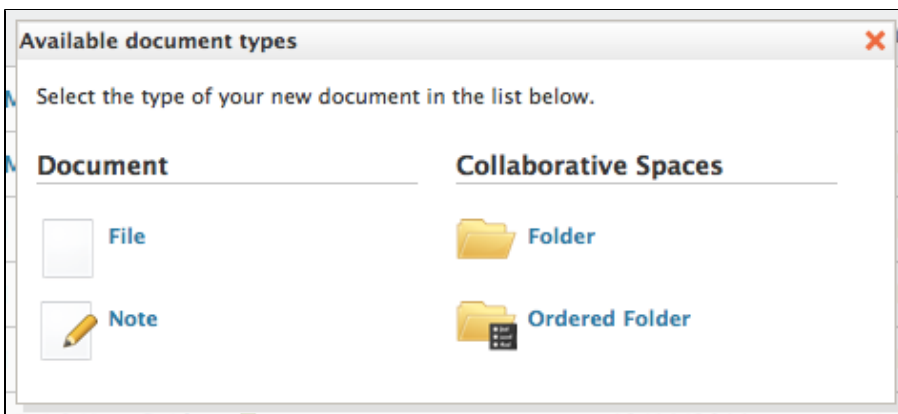
Users with Manage right in a space can define what document types can be created in the current space by restricting the list of allowed document types proposed by default.

To define what document types can be created in a space:

1. On the current space, click on the **Manage** tab.
2. Click on the **Local configuration** sub-tab.
The list of the available local configurations are displayed.
3. If needed, click on the **Enable** link of the "Document types configuration".
The document types configuration form is displayed. By default, all types are allowed.
4. Move the document types you don't want users to be able to create to the left column using the icon .



5. Click on the **Save** button.
The document types you removed from the default selection cannot be created in the current space anymore: they are not displayed anymore when users clicks on the **New** button.



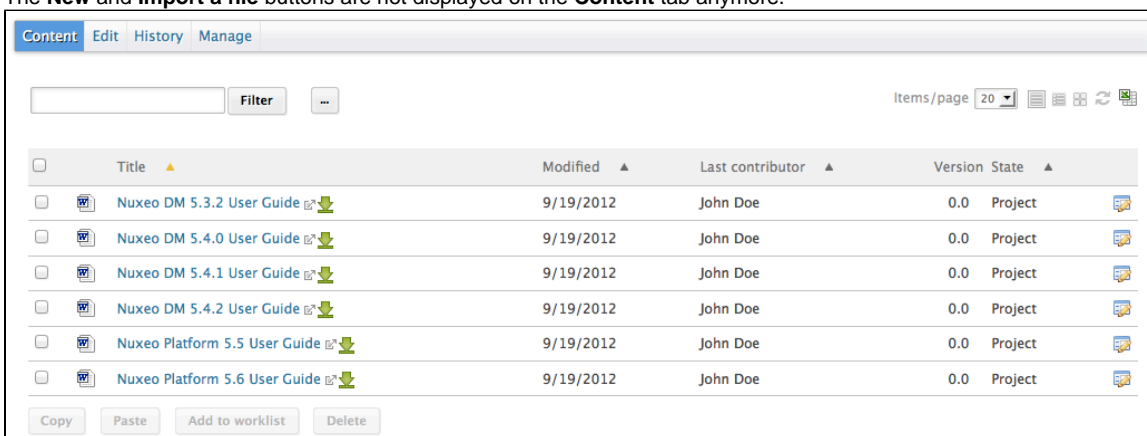
Denying the possibility to create documents

It is possible to deny the possibility to create documents without changing the access rights applied to the space. This allows to prevent the creation of new documents without forbidding the edition of existing documents.

To prevent new document creation:

1. On the current space, click on the **Manage** tab.
2. Click on the **Local configuration** sub-tab.
The list of the available local configurations are displayed.
3. If needed, click on the **Enable** link of the "Document types configuration".
The document types configuration form is displayed. By default, all types are allowed.
4. Check the box **Deny all types**.
5. Click on the **Save** button.

The **New** and **Import a file** buttons are not displayed on the **Content** tab anymore.



Selecting the default document type

Workspace managers can set the document type that is created when users import documents using the **import a file** button or drag & drop. In a workspace, the default document type is file.

To define the default document type for import:




1. On the current space, click on the **Manage** tab.
2. Click on the **Local configuration** sub-tab.
The list of the available local configurations are displayed.
3. If needed, click on the **Enable** link of the "Document types configuration".
The document types configuration form is displayed. By default, all types are allowed.
4. Select the default document type in the drop down list.
5. Click on the **Save** button.



Add your own document types

You can leverage this feature when you customize the Nuxeo Platform and create new document types that extend the File document type. Your document type will then be available in the "Default type" drop down list and you can select it instead of the default File. You can read a tutorial showing how to create a new document type using [Nuxeo Online Services](#).

Related sections in this documentation

-  [Defining the authorized document types](#)
-  [Changing the presentation of document lists](#)
-  [Local search configurations](#)

Related sections in other documentation spaces

-  [Documents \(Nuxeo Online Services\)](#)

Local search configurations

If customized faceted search and advanced search forms have been contributed, it is possible to define what [faceted search](#) or [advanced search](#) to display from a space. This enables users to have search forms adapted to the documents and processes used in the space.

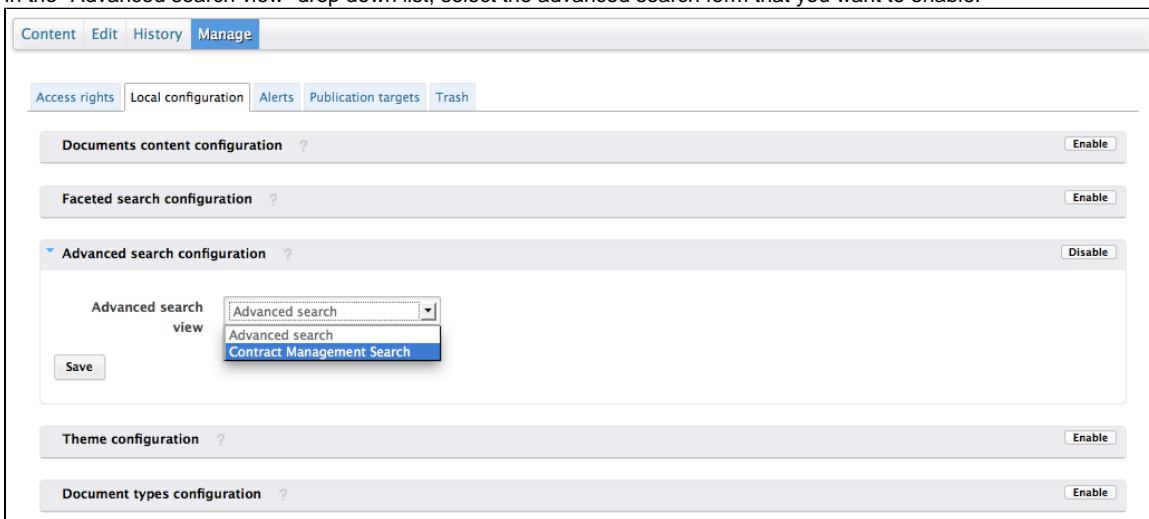
- [Changing advanced search form](#)
- [Changing faceted search](#)
 - [Related pages](#)
 - [Want to know more about search configuration?](#)

Changing advanced search form

You can have only one advanced search form enabled.

To enable a contributed advanced search form:


1. Click on the **Manage** tab of the space.
2. Click on the **Local configuration** sub-tab.
3. If needed, click on the **Enable** link of the search configuration.
The default advanced search form provided in Nuxeo is selected in the "Advanced search view" drop down list.
4. In the "Advanced search view" drop down list, select the advanced search form that you want to enable.



5. Click on the **Save** button.
When users click on the **Advanced search** link from the current space and one of its sub-space, the selected advanced search form is displayed.

Changing faceted search

It is possible to enable several faceted searches on a space. This allows users to have several forms and possibly predefined searches that they can edit.

 **Faceted search availability**
Faceted search is available on the Document Management module.

To enable contributed faceted searches:

1. Click on the **Manage** tab of the space.
2. Click on the **Local configuration** sub-tab.
3. If needed, click on the **Enable** link of the faceted search configuration.
The default faceted search provided in the Nuxeo Platform and the list of contributed faceted searches is displayed.
4. Move the faceted searches you want to enable from the space to the "Enabled content view" list.

- Click on the **Save** button.
Users that have access to the space now have the selected faceted searches available in the Faceted search tab of the left pane.



Removing a faceted search

To remove a faceted search, move it back to the "Existing content view" list on the left and click **Save**.

Related pages

- [Local search configurations](#)
- [Searching the Nuxeo Platform](#)

Want to know more about search configuration?

No content found for label(s) advanced-search.

Working with documents

The Nuxeo Platform enables you to create, edit and share documents within the application.

Available documents

Depending on what you're using, the naked platform or the Document Management module, you don't have exactly the same documents available. Documents are sorted in two categories:

- collaborative services
- documents

Collaborative services are folderish documents that enable users to share information.

The naked Platform collaborative services are:

- [Workspaces](#)
- [Folders](#)
- [Mail folder](#)
- [Forum](#)

The Document Management module collaborative services are:

- [Picture book](#)
- [Websites and blogs](#)

Documents available in the naked Platform are:

- the [note](#): a text typed in a rich editor integrated to the Nuxeo Platform;

- the [file](#): an attached file.

The Document Management module adds the documents below:

- the [picture](#): a picture file with specific features available.

Documents evolution

The evolution of a document, each time contributors edit it, constitutes its life cycle. This life cycle is composed of the following states:

- *project*: the document has been created and it can be modified;
- *approved*: the document has been approved and is considered as valid. Modifying it makes it back to project life cycle state;
- *obsolete*: the document is not accurate anymore and, for instance, has been replaced by a new version;
- *deleted*: the document is moved into the workspace's or folder's trash.

To change the life cycle state of a document, you need to submit it to a [workflow](#).

Creating content

You need to have "write" or "manage everything" rights to create documents.

Documents can be created in workspaces, templates and folders only. There are several ways to create documents in Nuxeo. You can:

- create all content types from the "Content" tab of the workspace and filling the appropriate form (see below),
- use drag and drop from your desktop, to [import one or several documents](#),
- create documents directly from MS Office or OpenOffice, using [Nuxeo LiveEdit extensions](#).

On this page

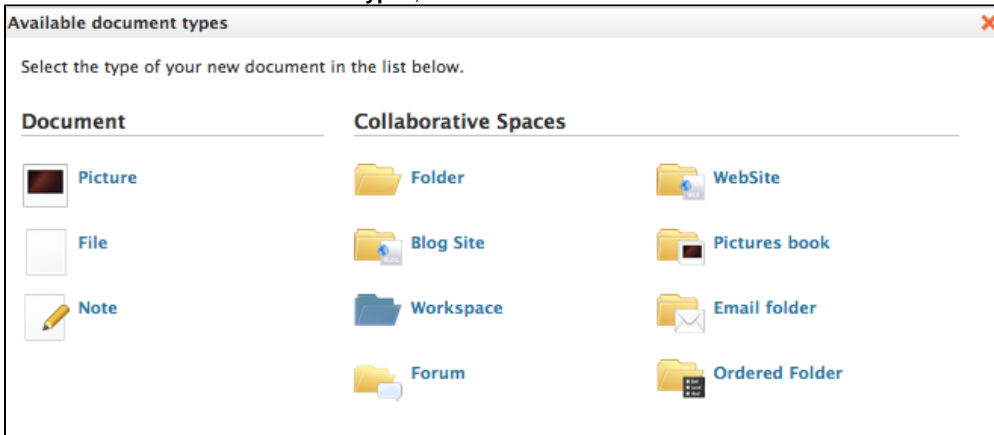
- [Creating a document using the New document button](#)
- [Creating a document using the Import a file button](#)
 - [Related pages](#)

Creating a document using the New document button

Creating a document using the **New document** button enables you to select the type of document you want to create among all Nuxeo's document types.

To create a document using the **New document** button:

1. In the **Content** tab of the workspace, click on the **New Document** button.
2. On the window **Available document types**, click on the desired document.



3. Fill in the document's creation form.
4. Click on the **Create** button.

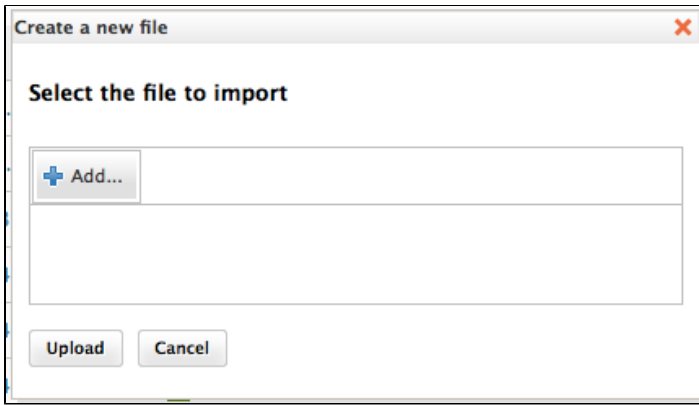
The **Summary** tab of the document is displayed.

Creating a document using the Import a file button

You can use the **Import a file** button to create a document in a faster way. Using this button, you won't need to fill the creation form. Depending on the uploaded file type, the system will create a note, a file or a picture.

To create a document using the **Import a file** button:










1. In the **Content** tab of the workspace, click on the **Import a file** button.
2. On the **Create a new file** window, click on the **Add** button to select the file to be uploaded.



3. Click on the **Upload** button.

The **Summary** tab of the document is displayed. The document automatically takes the name of the uploaded file as its title. The document has no description. You need to [modify the document](#) to fill in this field.

Related pages

-  [Working using drag and drop](#)
-  [Working with Live Edit](#)
-  [Installing Live Edit](#)
-  [Working with WebDAV and WSS](#)
-  [Importing content using Drag and Drop](#)
-  [Installing Drag and Drop extensions](#)
-  [Live Edit compatibility table](#)
-  [Manage your own file with LiveEdit](#)
-  [Drag and drop compatibility table](#)

Editing content

Documents can be edited by users with writing rights in a folder.

Documents can be edited in workspaces only. If you want to modify a published document, you need to edit it in the workspace and republish it.

Document modification means:

- editing or changing the attached file of a [file](#) document,
- editing the text of a [note](#),
- or simply editing the title, description or any metadata of the document.

On this page

- [Versioning overview](#)
- [Metadata overview](#)
- [Editing a document](#)
 - [Related pages](#)

Versioning overview

Every time you modify a document, you can define if the changes should be saved as a new version of the document.

Every document holds a version number, which is a piece of information about the evolution of the document. A version number (V.v) is composed of a major version number (V) and a minor version number (v). When a document is created, its version number is 0.0. Minor version increment are used for secondary changes. Major version increment is usually reserved to significant modifications.

Update versions

☒ Skip version increment
☐ Increment minor version
☐ Increment major version

When you edit a document and save your modifications, you have several options regarding the versioning of your document. Let's say that your current document version is 0.1.

- You can save modifications without creating a new version of the document, as it is not yet ready. The 0.1 version of the document has been modified, so its version number becomes 0.1+ (the + indicates to other users that version 0.1 has been modified).
- You can save the modifications in a new version of the document. The version number will then be 0.2 if you increment minor version or 1.0 if you save modifications in a major version. The newly created version is automatically archived in the **History** tab so it's not lost when users will edit it.

Metadata overview

Metadata are information describing some properties of the workspace, so that they are more accurately referenced. Some metadata are automatically filled in by the system, but most of them need to be filled in by users. When you create a document (file, note, workspace, section, or any other document type), its metadata are empty.

The Nuxeo Platform uses Dublin Core metadata by default. They are listed below:

Field	Description
Nature	Nature of the document.
Subjects	Topic(s) of the document.
Rights	Information about the reproduction rights of the document. Rights informations often encompass Intellectual Property Rights and Copyright.
Source	The references of the resource from which the document's content is derived (totally or partially).
Coverage	Information about the geographic reach of the document.
Created at	Date automatically filled in by the system when the document is created.
Last modified at	Date automatically filled in by the system when the document is modified.
Format	Format of the document, if any is preferred.
Language	Language used in the document.
Expire on	Date on which the document stops being valid. Click on the calendar icon to select a date. This date is not indexed in the system. It is just in indication for users but it is not processed by the application.
Author	User who created the document. This field is automatically filled in by the system.
Contributors	Users who modified the document. This field is automatically filled in by the system.

Last contributor	Last user who modified the document. This field is automatically filled in by the system.
------------------	---

Although metadata are not mandatory, filling them in will make your documents easier to find using Nuxeo DM search engine or virtual navigation.

Virtual navigation
Coverage and subjects are used for [virtual navigation](#).

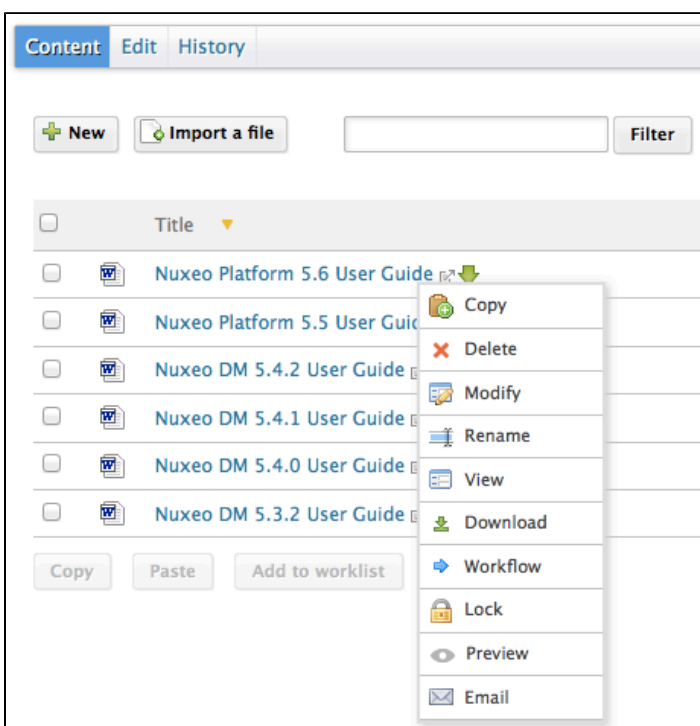
To fill in or change the metadata of the document, just edit the document.

Editing a document

To edit a document:

1. Click on the **Edit** tab of the document.

Quick access to modification
You can also access the **Edit** tab directly from the folder's content using right click on the document and clicking on **Modify**.



2. In the modification form displayed, type your modifications.
3. Indicate if you want to update the document's version.










Update versions

☒ Skip version increment
☐ Increment minor version
☐ Increment major version

4. Type a comment if you want to indicate why you modified the document.
This comment is logged in the document's history and helps other users know what has been changed on the document.
5. Click on the **Save** button.
The document's **Summary** tab is displayed.

Office documents modification
MS Office and OpenOffice.org documents can be edited directly in their native application using [Live Edit](#) or [WSS/WebDav](#).

Related pages

-  [Editing content](#)
-  [Consulting and editing assets](#)
-  [Editing content in a social workspace](#)
-  [Navigation trees](#)
-  [Editing a workspace](#)
-  [Managing vocabularies](#)
-  [Document's history](#)
-  [Working with Live Edit](#)
-  [Working with WebDAV and WSS](#)

Deleting content

Only users with "Write" or "manage everything" rights can delete documents from a space.

Deleting a document occurs in two steps:

1. A user moves a document to trash.
2. The manager of the space [deletes the document permanently](#).

There are two ways to move a document into the **Trash** tab:

- Deleting it from the workspace content table,
- submitting the document to an [workflow](#), with the destination lifecycle state 'deleted'.

If you are sure that the document is to be deleted, you can delete it from the workspace's content table. However, if you want the deletion to be approved before, you need to submit it to a [workflow](#) and specify that the destination life cycle is 'deleted'. When the workflow is ended and the deletion approved, the document is automatically moved into the **Trash** tab of the document.

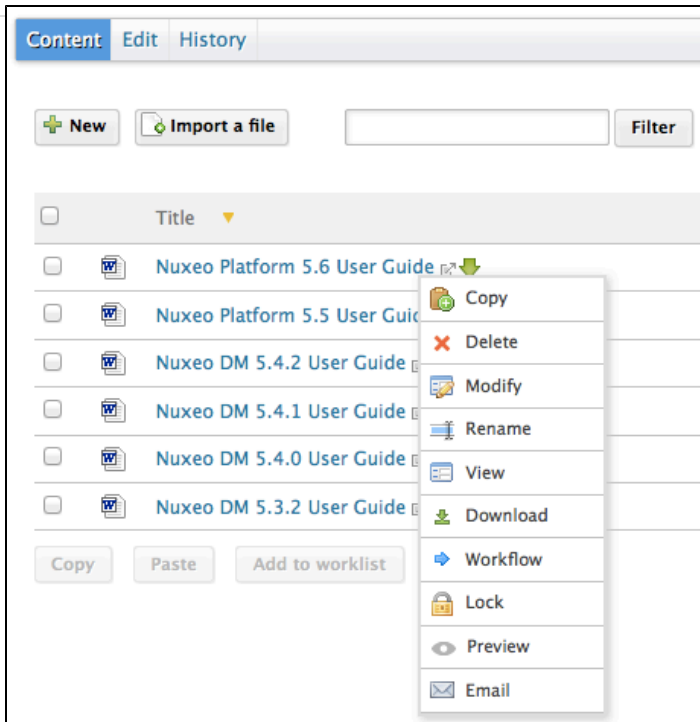
To delete a document from the Content tab of the workspace:

1. In the **Content** tab of the workspace, check the box in front of the document's name.
2. Click on the **Delete** button.
3. On the window that pops up, click on the **OK** button.
The document is moved to the **Trash** tab of the workspace (available to users with management rights only) and does not appear in the workspace's content list.






Quick deletion

You can also delete documents using right-click on document from the **Content** tab of the workspace.



Related pages

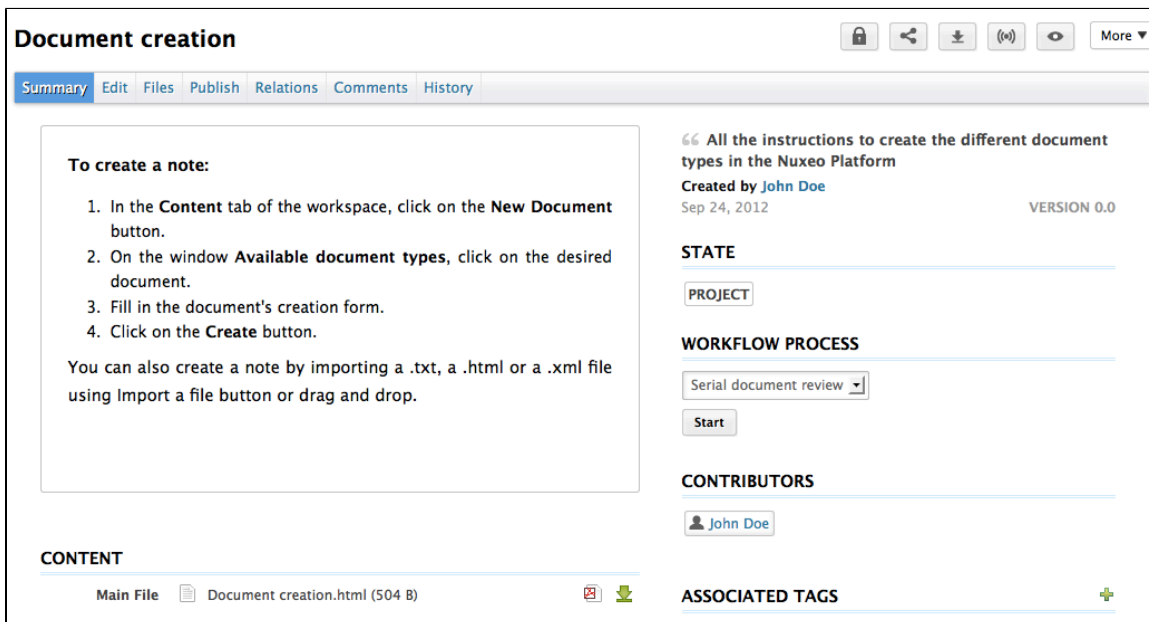
-  [Managing deleted documents](#)
-  [Deleting content](#)
-  [Deleting a workspace](#)

Customization

No content found for label(s) delete.

Notes

The note is a document that consists in a text displayed in the **Summary** tab of the document. The note is usually created using the integrated rich editor, displayed in the note creation form. This editor enables layout modifications on the text.



The default format of the note is HTML. The other formats available are .txt, .xml and Markdown.

[illegible]

A note is composed of the fields below:












Field	Description
Title	Note's title
Description	Text that explains what the note is about.
Content	Text of the note created using a rich text editor.
Format	Format of the automatically created file used to export notes from the Nuxeo Platform.

To create a note:

1. In the **Content** tab of the workspace, click on the **New Document** button.
2. On the window **Available document types**, click on the desired document.

Available document types

Select the type of your new document in the list below.

Document	Collaborative Spaces	
 Picture	 Folder	 WebSite
 File	 Blog Site	 Pictures book
 Note	 Workspace	 Email folder
	 Forum	 Ordered Folder

3. Fill in the document's creation form.
4. Click on the **Create** button.
















Other ways to create a note

You can also create a note by importing a .txt, a .html or a .xml file using **Import a file** button or drag and drop.

When the note is created, users can enhance it by adding [annotations](#), [comments](#), attached files on it, or just [editing](#) it.

Related pages

-  [Editing a workspace](#)
-  [Annotations](#)
-  [Comments](#)
-  [Navigation trees](#)
-  [Editing content](#)
-  [Document's history](#)
-  [Managing vocabularies](#)
-  [Annotating assets](#)
-  [Commenting assets](#)
-  [Consulting and editing assets](#)
-  [Nuxeo Diff](#)

Want to customize this document?

No content found for label(s) override-default.

Files

A file document is composed of an attached file that you upload on the application.

You can upload files of any format.

A file is composed of:

- a title (mandatory)
- a description (optional)
- an attached file

Nuxeo Studio Feature Overview

More ▾

Summary

Edit

Files

Publish

Relations

Comments

History

CONTENT

Main File

Nuxeo Studio Feature Overview.odt (12 kB)

Attachments

Nuxeo Studio Feature Overview.pdf (285 kB)

Created by **John Doe**
Sep 24, 2012 VERSION 0.1+

STATE

PROJECT

WORKFLOW PROCESS

Serial document review ▾

Start

CONTRIBUTORS

John Doe

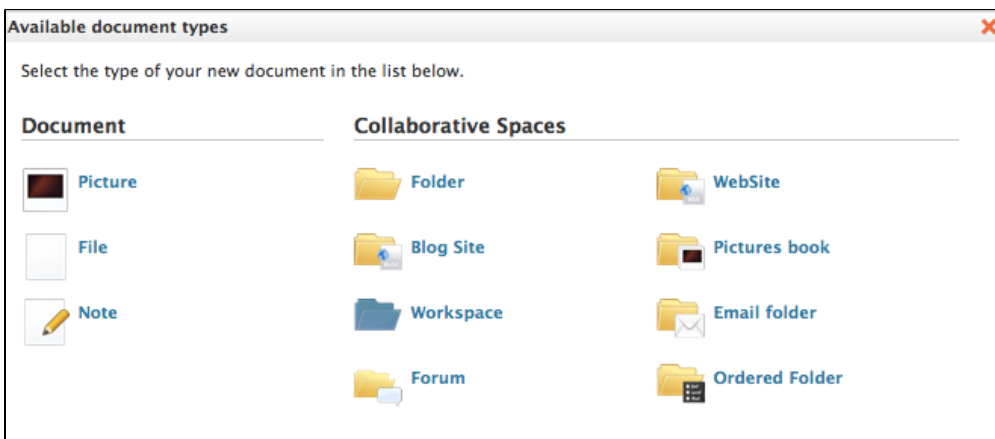
ASSOCIATED TAGS

studio

✕

To create a file:

1. In the **Content** tab of the workspace, click on the **New Document** button.
2. On the window **Available document types**, click on the desired document.



3. Fill in the document's creation form.
4. Click on the **Create** button.



Other ways to create a file

You can also create a file using the [Import a file](#) button or using drag and drop.

When the file is created, users can enhance it by [filling its metadata](#), adding attached files on it, [annotating it](#). When the document is completed, you can [publish](#) it in one or several section(s).

Related pages

- [Editing a workspace](#)
- [Annotations](#)
- [Comments](#)
- [Navigation trees](#)
- [Editing content](#)
- [Document's history](#)
- [Managing vocabularies](#)
- [Annotating assets](#)
- [Commenting assets](#)
- [Consulting and editing assets](#)
- [Nuxeo Diff](#)

Want to customize this document?

- [Adding a "Type" Property to File Document Type](#) (Nuxeo Online Services)

Folders

In workspaces, you can create and manage your documents in folders.

A folder works like a workspace, but the documents available for creation are limited. In a folder, you can create:

- notes
- files
- sub-folders.

There are two types of folders: regular folders and ordered folders. The difference between the two folder types is the way content is sorted.

- In a regular folder, documents are sorted on the title by default. You can change the sort criterion by clicking on the content table columns title. You can thus sort them on their state, author, etc.
- In an ordered folder, you can change the order of documents manually. So, the orders in which documents are listed in the folder doesn't depend on one of its properties (version, author, etc). When a document is created, it is added at the end of the list.

On this page

- Regular folders
- Ordered folders
 - Want to customize this document type?

Regular folders

Regular folders, called "Folders", have the same behavior as workspaces. In a folder, you can:

- create documents and do all the actions available on them (edit, approve, manage relations, etc)
- manage access rights,
- subscribe to and manage alerts,
- manage the folder's trash.

Like in a workspace, you can use **drag & drop** to create content in a folder.

Ordered folders

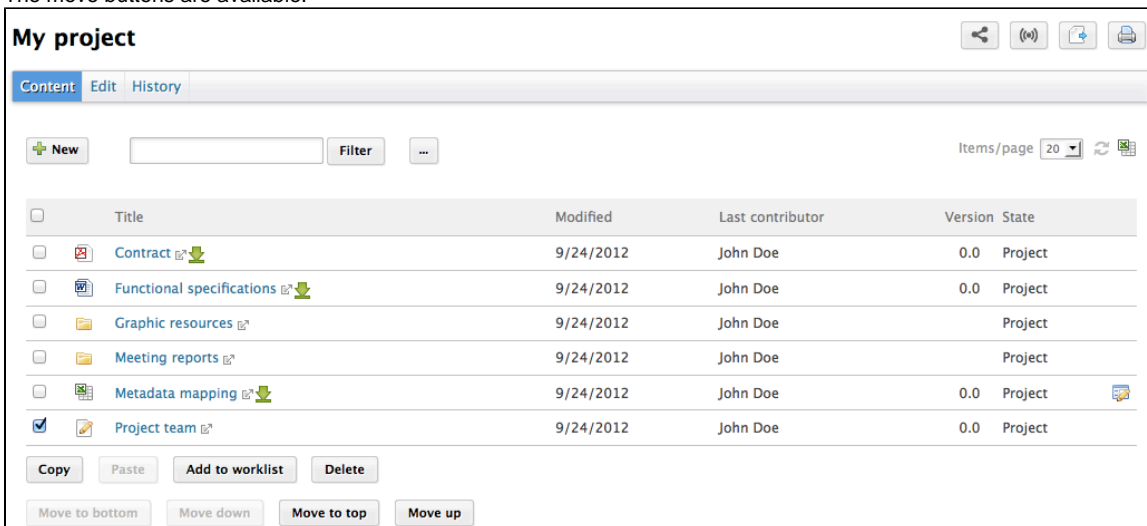
Ordered folders are folders in which you can change the content's order.

An ordered folder has the same presentation as a regular folder, but it has some additional buttons below the content table:

- Move up
- Move down
- Move to top
- Move to bottom

To change the content's order:

1. Select a document using the checkbox on the left.
The move buttons are available.



The screenshot shows the 'My project' folder interface. At the top, there are tabs for 'Content', 'Edit', and 'History'. Below the tabs, there is a 'New' button, a search bar, and a 'Filter' button. To the right, there is a 'Items/page' dropdown set to '20'. The main part of the interface is a table with the following columns: Title, Modified, Last contributor, Version, and State. The table contains six rows of documents. The first row is 'Contract' (9/24/2012, John Doe, 0.0, Project). The second row is 'Functional specifications' (9/24/2012, John Doe, 0.0, Project). The third row is 'Graphic resources' (9/24/2012, John Doe, Project). The fourth row is 'Meeting reports' (9/24/2012, John Doe, Project). The fifth row is 'Metadata mapping' (9/24/2012, John Doe, 0.0, Project). The sixth row is 'Project team' (9/24/2012, John Doe, 0.0, Project). Below the table, there are buttons for 'Copy', 'Paste', 'Add to worklist', and 'Delete'. At the bottom, there are four buttons for moving documents: 'Move to bottom', 'Move down', 'Move to top', and 'Move up'.

	Title	Modified	Last contributor	Version	State
<input type="checkbox"/>	Contract	9/24/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Functional specifications	9/24/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Graphic resources	9/24/2012	John Doe		Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Meeting reports	9/24/2012	John Doe		Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Metadata mapping	9/24/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Project team	9/24/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project

Buttons below the table: Copy, Paste, Add to worklist, Delete, Move to bottom, Move down, Move to top, Move up.

2. Click on the move button you need.
3. The document is moved in the list of documents available in the folder.

My project

Content Edit History

New

Filter

...

Items/page 20

<input type="checkbox"/>	Title	Modified	Last contributor	Version	State
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Project team	9/24/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Contract	9/24/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Functional specifications	9/24/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Graphic resources	9/24/2012	John Doe		Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Meeting reports	9/24/2012	John Doe		Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Metadata mapping	9/24/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project

Copy Paste Add to worklist Delete

Move to bottom Move down Move to top Move up



Moving documents restrictions

You can move one document at a time. If you select more than one document, the move buttons will deactivate.

Want to customize this document type?

No content found for label(s) override-default.

Working using drag and drop

The Nuxeo Platform allows the [import of documents from your desktop using drag and drop](#).

Drag and drop is based on the HTML 5 standard and is available on all browsers that support the HTML 5 standard, without extension. Basically, this includes Firefox 3.6+, Chrome10+, Safari 5+.

For other browsers or older versions, you may need to install an extension to enable drag and drop import:

- Internet Explorer:
 - [Drag & Drop Latest Stable for IE Extension \(.msi\)](#)
 - [Drag & Drop MSI install helper for Windows 2000 \(.exe\)](#)



Benefit the HTML5 Drag and Drop with Internet Explorer

You can enjoy the HTML5 Drag and Drop by [installing the Google Chrome Frame](#). This is recommended on Internet Explorer versions 7 and 8, to benefit from the [customizable OpenSocial dashboard](#), but you can also use it on later versions for HTML5 Drag and Drop.

- Firefox older than version 3.6: [Drag & Drop for Firefox Extension \(.xpi\)](#)



D&D extension in HTML 5 compatible browsers

On Firefox, if you previously installed the D&D extension, it is automatically disabled so that HTML 5 drag and drop is used.

Importing content using Drag and Drop

You can use Drag and Drop to easily import content into Nuxeo or just to create one document at a time. Two types of import are available:

- [quick import](#), that enables to quickly create documents in workspace;
- [import with metadata](#), that enables to fill in metadata of the document(s) before they are created in the workspace.

Quick import of documents

To import content into Nuxeo, drag an item from your computer and drop it into a workspace. The document is then automatically created in the workspace and its title is the name of the original file, and no metadata is filled in. You can also drop files in your worklist. The document is then created in your personal workspace.

You can drag and drop one or more files in Nuxeo.

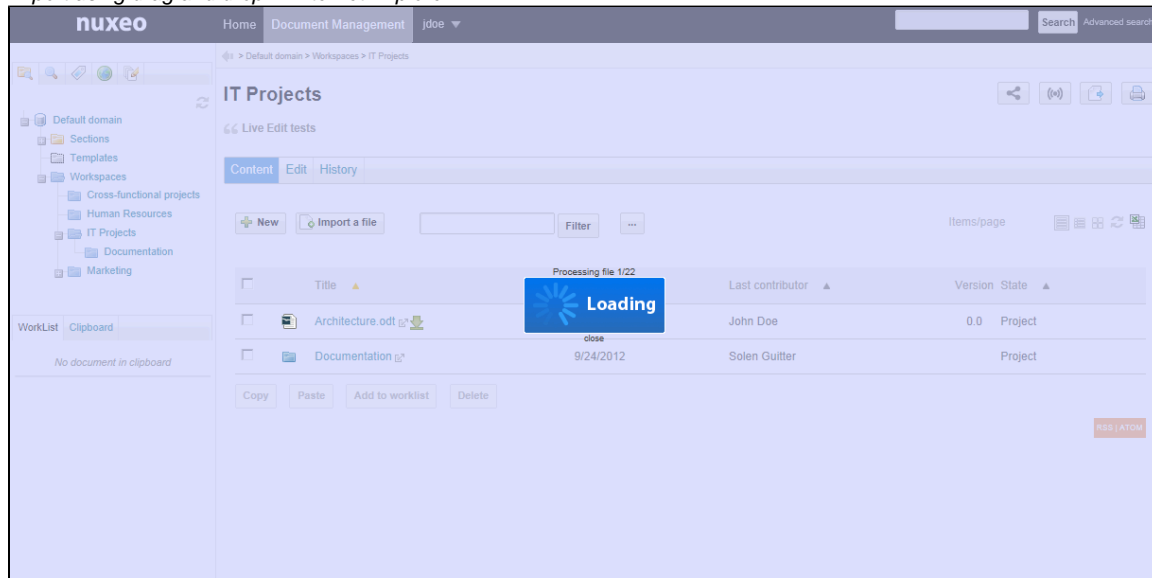


Drag and drop of folders

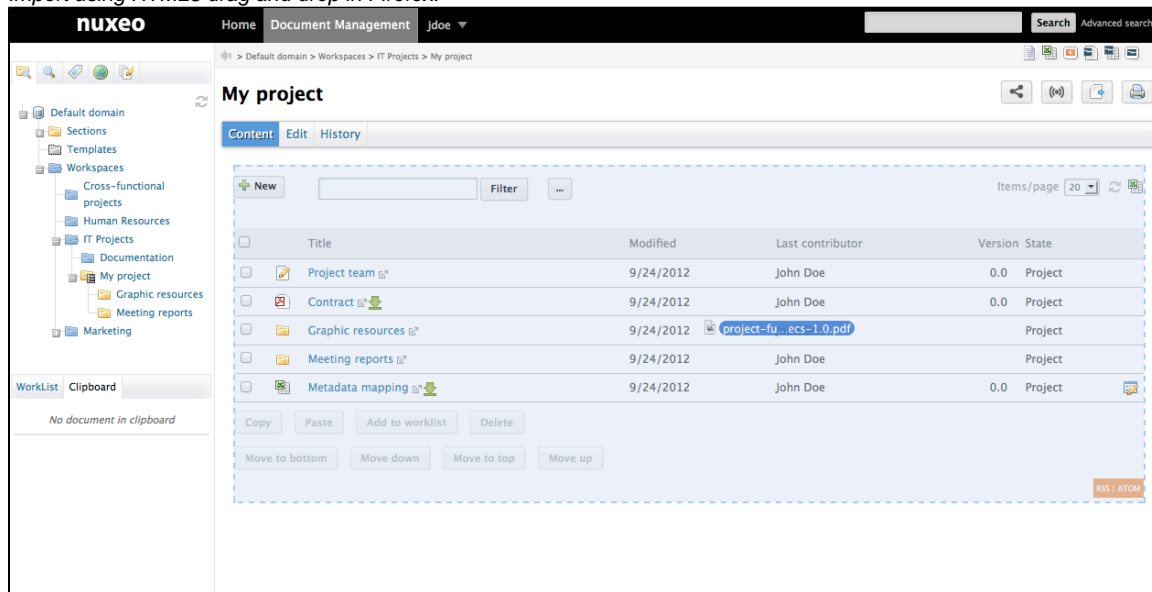
Drag and drop of folders is possible only with the Internet Explorer extension. The complete structure of the dropped folder is then reproduced and created in Nuxeo.

For security reasons, the HTML5 standard, used by the other browsers, doesn't allow to drop a folder. You can however drop several documents at the same time to fill a folder with many documents in a single manipulation.

Import using drag and drop in Internet Explorer:



Import using HTML5 drag and drop in Firefox:



You can drop any file type in Nuxeo.

Here are some examples of most commonly used item types and their output in Nuxeo:

Item type	Document created in Nuxeo
Folder	Folder
Microsoft Office file	File
OpenOffice.file	File
.txt file	Note
Picture (.jpg, .png, etc)	Picture

Import with metadata



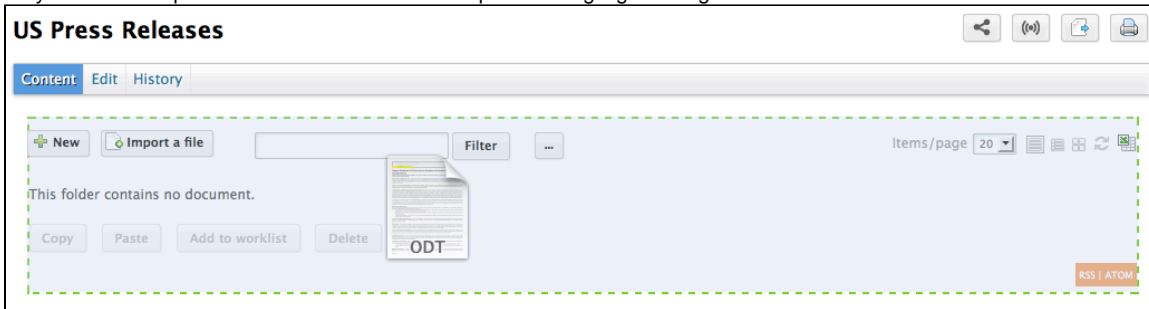
Prerequisite

Import with metadata is available only on browsers that support the HTML 5 drag and drop standard.

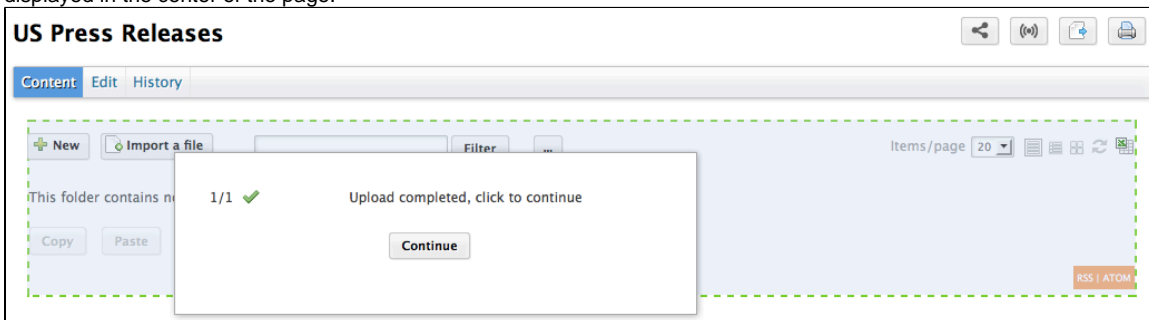
It is possible to do a drag and drop import of documents with an additional step to fill in some metadata. This prevents users from editing the documents after the import is done.

To import documents with metadata:

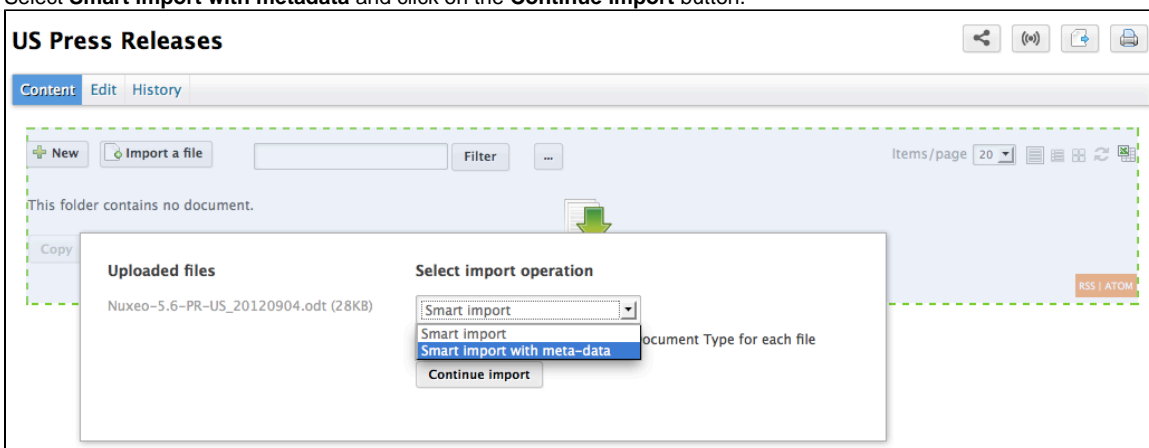
1. Drag your file from your desktop to the workspace main area in the browser, but don't drop it. The drop area is highlighted in blue.
2. Stay on the workspace a few seconds until the drop area is highlighted in green.



3. Drop the file. The file is uploaded. When the upload is done, a "Continue" button is displayed in the top right corner of the page and an icon is displayed in the center of the page.



4. Click on the icon or the "Continue" button. A window pops up, that enables you to select if you want to do a quick import (smart import) or an import with metadata.
5. Select **Smart import with metadata** and click on the **Continue import** button.



The metadata are displayed on the pop up window.

6. Fill in the metadata that you need and click on the **Continue** button.

The file is created with the filled in metadata.

Related pages

- Working using drag and drop
- Importing content using Drag and Drop
- Installing Drag and Drop extensions
- Drag and drop compatibility table

Installing Drag and Drop extensions

If you're using Firefox, no extension is needed to work with Drag and Drop, unless you're using a version older than 3.6. If you're using Internet Explorer, you need to install an extension to be able to create documents using drag and drop. For other browsers, drag and drop is automatically enabled if you're using a recent version that supports the HTML 5 standard.

Installing Internet Explorer extension

To make drag and drop available on Internet Explorer, you need to install the Internet Explorer extension.

The extension is available in two formats:

- .exe extension:** includes the drag and drop package and the needed dependencies (required for Windows 2000)
- .msi extension:** includes only the drag and drop package

To install the Internet Explorer extension, follow the instructions of the installer. Installation should be done for everyone, not just for the current user.



Internet Explorer and Google Chrome Frame

On Internet Explorer 7 and 8, Nuxeo automatically proposes to [install Google Chrome Frame](#) to enable the [customizable OpenSocial dashboard](#). This also enables the HTML5 Drag and Drop. You can also install it on later versions of Internet Explorer if you want to use HTML5 Drag and Drop. In that case, you don't need the extensions above.

Installing Firefox extension

If you're using a version older than Firefox 3.6, you need to install [the Firefox drag and drop extension](#). From Firefox 3.6, the HTML 5 drag and drop is automatically enabled.

It comes as a standard Firefox add-on. Installing process is the same as the other available Firefox add-ons: click on the link above and follow the instructions.




Drag and drop compatibility table

Nuxeo Platform 5.6

Browser version	File Drag & Drop	File Drag & Drop with metadata	Multi-file Drag & Drop	Multi-file Drag & Drop with metadata	Folder Drag & Drop
Firefox 3.6					X
Firefox 14					X
Chrome 20					X
Safari 5.1.7 (Mac OS X)					X
Internet Explorer 7 (Win XP)	X	X	X	X	X
Internet Explorer 7 (Win XP) with D&D plugin					
Internet Explorer 7 (Win XP) with Google Chrome Frame			NXP-9783		X
Internet Explorer 8 (Win XP)	X	X	X	X	X
Internet Explorer 8 (Win XP) with D&D plugin					
Internet Explorer 8 (Win XP) with Google Chrome Frame			NXP-9783	NXP-9783	X
Internet Explorer 8 (Win 7)	X	X	X	X	X
Internet Explorer 8 (Win 7) with D&D plugin					
Internet Explorer 8 (Win 7) with Google Chrome Frame	NXP-9783		NXP-9783	NXP-9783	X
Internet Explorer 9 (Win 7)	X	X	X	X	X
Internet Explorer 9 (Win 7) with D&D plugin					

Caption: = Working ; X = Not supported ; ? = Unknown

Related topics

-  [Working using drag and drop](#) (Nuxeo Platform User Documentation - 5.6)
-  [Importing content using Drag and Drop](#) (Nuxeo Platform User Documentation - 5.6)
-  [Installing Drag and Drop extensions](#) (Nuxeo Platform User Documentation - 5.6)

 [Drag and drop compatibility table](#) (Nuxeo Platform User Documentation - 5.6)

Desktop & Office Suites Integration

To ease office documents integration, Nuxeo proposes two ways to create and edit documents from their native application.

- **Nuxeo Live Edit** enables you to create and edit office documents in their native application from the Nuxeo Platform. Nuxeo Live Edit is available as an extension to be installed on the user's computer. It is available from Microsoft Office and OpenOffice.org.
- **Nuxeo WSS and WebDAV** enables you to work on Nuxeo's documents from your desktop directly. They don't require the installation of any extension.

Working with Live Edit

Nuxeo Live Edit is a Nuxeo extension that enables users to open and edit Microsoft Office and OpenOffice.org/LibreOffice documents in their native application from Nuxeo. This extension prevents you from the painful process of downloading - editing - uploading office documents in the application.

Live Edit comes as an extension that needs to be installed on the user's computer. Depending on the local environment, one or several extensions are required. The [Installing Live Edit](#) page describes what is required for which configuration.

Live Edit is available for:

- MS Office 2007/2010 (standard and OOXML formats),
- OpenOffice.org 3.3+,
- LibreOffice 3.4.4+.

It is known to work with Internet Explorer 7+ and Firefox 3.6+.



Compatible environments

Live Edit can be used on Windows and Linux environments.

Live Edit allows you to:

- create documents in MS Office, OpenOffice.org and LibreOffice,
- edit documents in MS Office, OpenOffice.org and LibreOffice.

On this page

- [Before you start](#)
- [Creating office documents](#)
- [Editing documents](#)
 - [More in this guide](#)
 - [In other documentation](#)

Before you start

Before you start using Live Edit to create and edit documents:

- you may want to take a look at the [Live Edit compatibility table](#),
- please check your certificate is validated if your Nuxeo Platform uses HTTPS. If your certificate is not validated, Live Edit won't work;
- under Linux, ensure to have Java support installed when using LibreOffice. Ubuntu package is *libreoffice-java-common*;
- for Internet Explorer 9 users, change your browser mode to at least "IE9 Compat view", in the developer toolbar (F12).

Creating office documents

To create office documents directly into the Nuxeo Platform:

1. Click on one of the MS Office or OpenOffice.org icon displayed below the search box.
2. The application corresponding to the icon you clicked on opens.
3. Type the content of your document.
4. Save your modifications in Nuxeo:
 - By closing the application.
 - By clicking **Save in Nuxeo** in the Add-Ins menu of the application.
A **Save in Nuxeo** window opens.
5. Give the document a title and a description, and select where to save the document in Nuxeo.
6. Click on **OK** button.
The document is automatically saved in Nuxeo.

Editing documents





Documents that can be edited with Live Edit are indicated by the icon in the **Content** tab of the parent folder and in the **Summary** tab of the document.

When you edit a document online using Live Edit, the document is automatically locked in Nuxeo. It is automatically unlocked when you close the file from Microsoft Office or OpenOffice.org.





To edit office documents from the Nuxeo Platform:

1. Click on the online edition icon of the document.
The document opens in the appropriate application.
2. Modify the file.
3. When done, close the editing application.
A window pops up.
4. Indicate if you want to save the modifications.
The modified file is automatically uploaded on the Nuxeo Platform.

More in this guide

-  [Working with Live Edit](#)
-  [Installing Live Edit](#)
-  [Live Edit compatibility table](#)
-  [Manage your own file with LiveEdit](#)

In other documentation

-  [LiveEdit makes MS Office slow to start](#) (Nuxeo Technical Knowledge Base (FAQ))
-  [Setup Firefox protocol handler with LiveEdit 2 for MS Office and OpenOffice.org](#) (Nuxeo Technical Knowledge Base (FAQ))
-  [LiveEdit icons are still available in Nuxeo after LiveEdit has been uninstalled](#) (Nuxeo Technical Knowledge Base (FAQ))
-  [I can't view my websites and blogs \(displays a message "The HTTP header field "Accept" with value..."](#) (Nuxeo Technical Knowledge Base (FAQ))

Installing Live Edit

Live Edit is available for:

- MS Office 2007/2010 (standard and OOXML formats),
- OpenOffice.org 3.3+,
- LibreOffice 3.4.4+.

It is known to work with Internet Explorer 7+ and Firefox 3.6+.

The table below summarizes the extensions and packages you need to install for each OS and browser.

The Microsoft Office extension is available in 32- and 64-bit. You need to install the version corresponding to Microsoft Office, not the operating system (if you run MS Office 32-bit on Windows 7 64-bit, you need to install Live Edit for MS Office 32-bit).

	Internet Explorer	Firefox
Microsoft Office 32-bit	Live Edit MS Office-IE 32-bit (.msi)	Live Edit MS Office-IE 32-bit (.msi) Firefox Protocol Handler for FF <3.6 or Firefox Protocol Handler for FF 4+
Microsoft Office 64-bit	Live Edit MS Office-IE 64-bit (.msi)	Live Edit MS Office-IE 64-bit (.msi) Firefox Protocol Handler for FF <3.6 or Firefox Protocol Handler for FF 4+
OpenOffice.org / LibreOffice	Live Edit MS Office-IE 32-bit (.msi) Live Edit OOo Distribution (.exe)	Live Edit OpenOffice.org extension (.oxt) Firefox Protocol Handler for FF <3.6 or Firefox Protocol Handler for FF 4+

All Live Edit extension versions are available from: <http://download.nuxeo.org/desktop-integration/live-edit/>.



Live Edit MS Office requirements

The Live Edit MS Office installers require .Net and the installation of the Microsoft Office Primary Interop Assemblies (PIA) that corresponds to the version of Microsoft Office. These are already installed on a complete default installation of MS Office, so you probably don't need to install them.

- PIA for MS Office 2010: <http://www.microsoft.com/download/en/details.aspx?id=3508>
- PIA for MS Office 2007: <http://www.microsoft.com/download/en/details.aspx?id=18346>

For Internet Explorer 9 users

If you are on a 64-bits Windows you have two versions of Internet Explorer 9 (32-bits and 64-bits of course), if you have Office 32-bits and use Internet Explorer 64-bits, you'll need to apply this registry fix to enable Live Edit in Internet Explorer 9 64-bits: [livedit-ie-x64-fix.reg](#)

For Windows XP / MS Office 2003 32 bits users

You need to install the previous version of Live Edit (2.3.0) available from: <http://download.nuxeo.org/desktop-integration/live-edit/nuxeo-livedit-msoffice-ie-2.3.0.msi>.

You also need to install the *Microsoft Visual Studio 2005 Tools for Office Runtime* available from: <http://www.microsoft.com/download/en/details.aspx?displaylang=en&id=24263>.

On this page

- For MS Office and Internet Explorer users
- For MS Office and Firefox users
 - Installing Live Edit for MS Office
 - Installing Firefox Protocol Handler
 - Configuring the Firefox protocol handler
- For OpenOffice.org and Internet Explorer users
- For OpenOffice.org and Firefox users
 - Installing the Live Edit OpenOffice.org extension (.oxt)
 - Installing Firefox Protocol Handler
 - Configuring the Firefox protocol handler
- For Google Chrome users under MS Windows
 - More in this guide
 - In other documentation

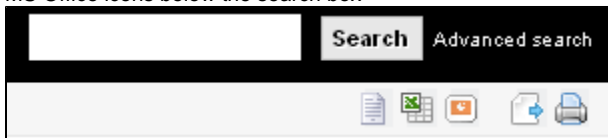
For MS Office and Internet Explorer users

To install Live Edit for MS Office:

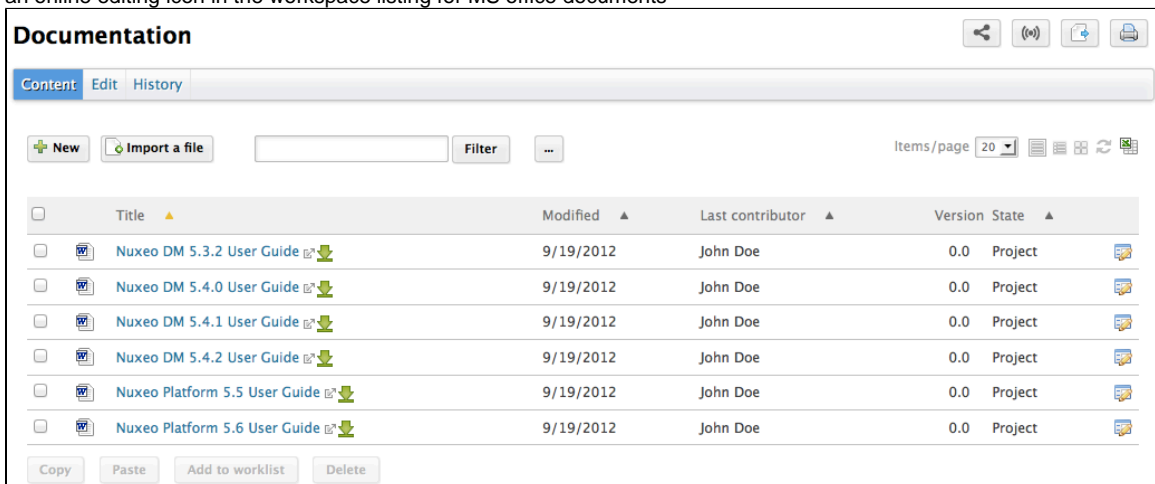
1. Run the Live Edit installer and follow the instructions.
2. If you are using Internet Explorer, close all windows and restart it.
3. Go on your Nuxeo application.

You now have new icons displayed:

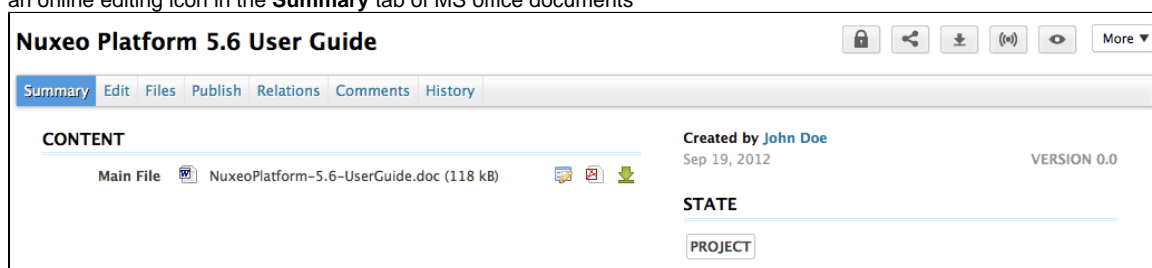
- MS Office icons below the search box



- an online editing icon in the workspace listing for MS office documents



- an online editing icon in the **Summary** tab of MS office documents



You can now [edit documents online](#).



Where is Live Edit installed?

Live Edit 2.4.1 and older

Default installation of Live Edit is installed for all users:

- Windows Vista or 7: in C:\Program Files (x86)\Nuxeo\Nuxeo Live Edit MsOffice,
- Windows XP: C:\Program Files\Nuxeo\Nuxeo Live Edit MsOffice.

Live Edit 2.4.2+

From version 2.4.2 of Live Edit, it is possible to choose if Live Edit is installed for the current user or for users. Depending on this choice, Live Edit is installed at different locations:

- Installation for the current user (default installation): C:\Users\MYUSER\AppData\Local\Apps\Nuxeo Live Edit MsOffice.
- Installation for all users (from the Advanced installation menu):
 - Windows Vista or 7: C:\Program Files (x86)\Nuxeo Live Edit MsOffice,
 - Windows XP: C:\Program Files\Nuxeo Live Edit MsOffice.

For MS Office and Firefox users

Making LiveEdit work for MS Office documents when you use Firefox takes 3 steps:

1. Install Live Edit for MS Office,
2. Install the Firefox extension for Live Edit, called protocol handler,
3. Configure the Firefox protocol handler.

Installing Live Edit for MS Office

You need to install Live Edit for Microsoft Office using the same installer as for MS Office and Internet Explorer: just run the installer and follow the instructions displayed.

At the end of this step, you won't see the online editing icons, because you need to install and configure the Firefox protocol handler.

Installing Firefox Protocol Handler

The Firefox Live Edit extension is a regular Firefox extension and gets installed the same way as any other extension on that browser.

To install it, click on the link to download it and follow the instructions displayed.

At this stage, you still won't see the online editing icons in the application. To see the icons and be able to edit documents, you need to configure the protocol handler.

Configuring the Firefox protocol handler

To configure Live Edit Firefox Protocol Handler:

1. In Firefox, go to **Tools > Add-ons > Nuxeo Live Edit Protocol Handler > Preferences (or Options)**.
2. Change the temp folder : /tmp/ with C:\Temp (or another temp folder like C:\Windows\Temp)
3. Set the mime-types you want to use Live Edit with and click on **Add new mapping** (see below for the mimetypes mapping).
4. Be sure that the checkbox "Use NXWss" is un-checked.
5. Be sure that the checkbox "Preserve compatibility" is un-checked.



When should you check the "Preserve compatibility" box

Since version 0.4.6 of the protocol handler, there is a checkbox labeled "Preserve compatibility" that allows to preserve the backward compatibility.

This box **must** be checked when the targeted server is pre 5.2.

Without checking it, the add-on is forming a different type of headers allowing using of a bunch of new features like WebEngine (but it works only for the server 5.2 +). Simply said:

- if Live Edit appear not to work (there is no available Edit online link) and the targeted Nuxeo server is not 5.2 or higher, check that the "Preserve compatibility" is marked.

- if some cool features like WebEngine are not available (throwing exception) and the targeted Nuxeo server is 5.2 or higher, check that the "Preserve compatibility" is not marked.

6. Click **Ok**.

MS Office mimetype mapping with MS Office

File extension	Mimetype	Editor command	Editor command arguments
.doc	application/msword	Path to the file nuxeo-liveedit-msoffice-launcher.exe, in the directory where Live Edit has been installed. Default is: C:\Users\MYUSER\AppData\Local\Apps\Nuxeo Live Edit MsOffice\nuxeo-liveedit-msoffice-launcher.exe. Check the Installation for Internet Explorer and MS Office instructions to know where Live Edit is installed.	%s
.xls	application/vnd.ms-excel	Path to the file nuxeo-liveedit-msoffice-launcher.exe, in the directory where Live Edit has been installed. Default is: C:\Users\MYUSER\AppData\Local\Apps\Nuxeo Live Edit MsOffice\nuxeo-liveedit-msoffice-launcher.exe. Check the Installation for Internet Explorer and MS Office instructions to know where Live Edit is installed.	%s
.ppt	application/vnd.ms-powerpoint	Path to the file nuxeo-liveedit-msoffice-launcher.exe, in the directory where Live Edit has been installed. Default is: C:\Users\MYUSER\AppData\Local\Apps\Nuxeo Live Edit MsOffice\nuxeo-liveedit-msoffice-launcher.exe. Check the Installation for Internet Explorer and MS Office instructions to know where Live Edit is installed.	%s
.docx	application/vnd.openxmlformats-officedocument.wordprocessingml.document	Path to the file nuxeo-liveedit-msoffice-launcher.exe, in the directory where Live Edit has been installed. Default is: C:\Users\MYUSER\AppData\Local\Apps\Nuxeo Live Edit MsOffice\nuxeo-liveedit-msoffice-launcher.exe. Check the Installation for Internet Explorer and MS Office instructions to know where Live Edit is installed.	%s

.xlsx	application/vnd.openxmlformats-officedocument.spreadsheetml.sheet	Path to the file nuxeo-liveedit-msoffice-launcher.exe, in the directory where Live Edit has been installed. Default is: C:\Users\MYUSER\AppData\Local\Apps\Nuxeo Live Edit MsOffice\nuxeo-liveedit-msoffice-launcher.exe. Check the Installation for Internet Explorer and MS Office instructions to know where Live Edit is installed.	%s
.pptx	application/vnd.openxmlformats-officedocument.presentationml.presentation	Path to the file nuxeo-liveedit-msoffice-launcher.exe, in the directory where Live Edit has been installed. Default is: C:\Users\MYUSER\AppData\Local\Apps\Nuxeo Live Edit MsOffice\nuxeo-liveedit-msoffice-launcher.exe. Check the Installation for Internet Explorer and MS Office instructions to know where Live Edit is installed.	%s

For OpenOffice.org and Internet Explorer users

To make Live Edit work when you use OpenOffice.org or Libre Office and Internet Explorer, you need to:

1. install the [MS Office - IE Live Edit](#) (see [Installing Live Edit for MS Office](#)),
2. install the OpenOffice.org - IE Live Edit extension (see below).

To install Live Edit for OpenOffice.org and Internet Explorer:

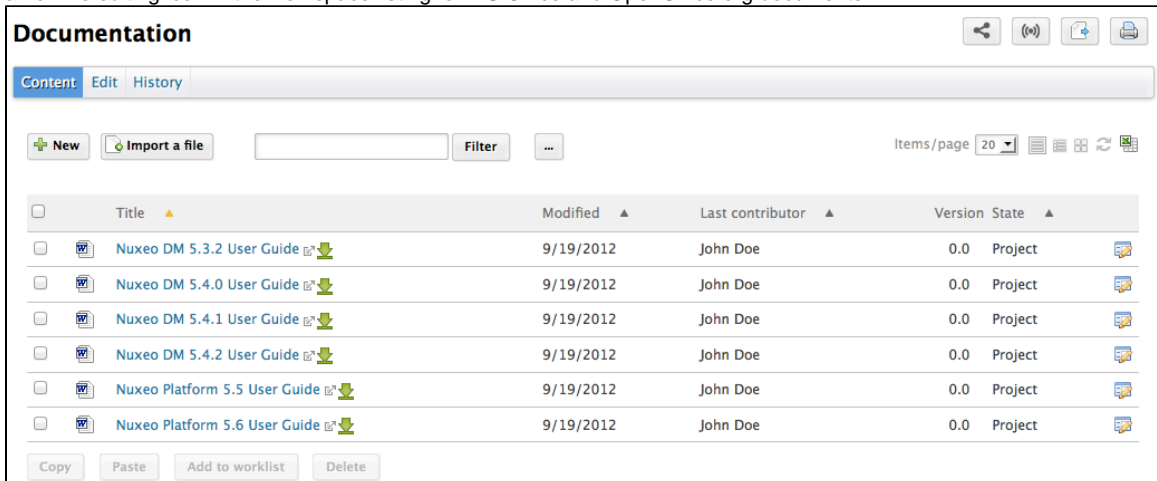
1. Run the [OpenOffice.org - IE Live Edit installer \(.exe\)](#) and follow the instructions displayed.
2. Restart Internet Explorer if you have windows open.
3. Go on your Nuxeo application.

You now have new icons displayed:

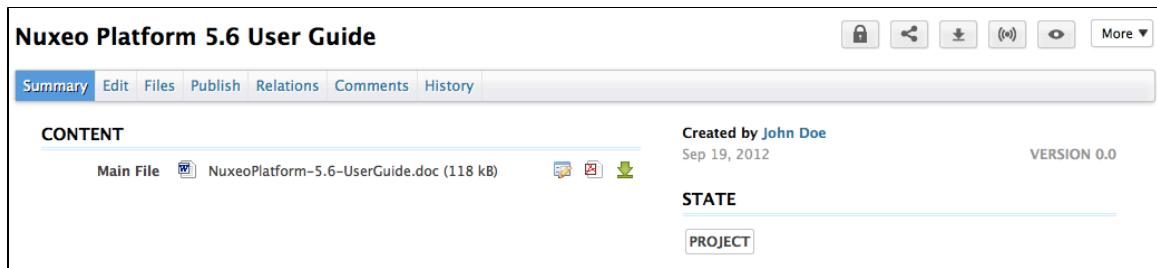
- MS Office and OpenOffice.org icons below the search box



- an online editing icon in the workspace listing for MS Office and OpenOffice.org documents



- an online editing icon in the **Summary** tab of MS Office and OpenOffice.org documents



You can now [edit documents online](#).

For OpenOffice.org and Firefox users

To be able to edit OpenOffice.org and LibreOffice documents online using Firefox, you need to:

1. install the Live Edit OpenOffice.org extension (.otx),
2. install the Firefox protocol handler,
3. configure the Firefox protocol handler.

Installing the Live Edit OpenOffice.org extension (.otx)

The [Live Edit extension for OpenOffice.org](#) is a regular OOo extension and gets installed the same way as any other extension: just double-click the .otx file and follow the instructions. It works on LibreOffice.



Java requirement

The Live Edit extension for OpenOffice and Libre Office requires Java support in OpenOffice / LibreOffice. This is included in most of distributions, but on some Linux distributions you may need to install `openoffice-java-common` or `libreoffice-java-common` for the extension installation to work.

Then you need to install and configure the Firefox extension.

Installing Firefox Protocol Handler

The Firefox Live Edit extension is a regular Firefox extension and gets installed the same way as any other extension on that browser.

To install it, click on the link to download it and follow the instructions displayed.

At this stage, you still won't see the online editing icons in the application. To see the icons and be able to edit documents, you need to configure the protocol handler.

Configuring the Firefox protocol handler

To configure Live Edit Firefox Protocol Handler:

1. In Firefox, go to **Tools > Add-ons > Nuxeo Live Edit Protocol Handler > Preferences (or Options)**.
2. Change the temp folder : `/tmp/` with `C:\Temp` (or another temp folder like `C:\Windows\Temp`)
3. Set the mime-types you want to use Live Edit with and click on **Add new mapping** (see below for the mimetypes mapping).
4. Be sure that the checkbox "Use NXWss" is un-checked.
5. Be sure that the checkbox "Preserve compatibility" is un-checked.



When should you check the "Preserve compatibility" box

Since version 0.4.6 of the protocol handler, there is a checkbox labeled "Preserve compatibility" that allows to preserve the backward compatibility.

This box **must** be checked when the targeted server is pre 5.2.

Without checking it, the addon is forming a different type of headers allowing using of a bunch of new features like WebEngine (but it works only for the server 5.2 +). Simply said:

- if Live Edit appear not to work (there is no available Edit online link) and the targeted Nuxeo server is not 5.2 or higher, check that the "Preserve compatibility" is marked.
- if some cool features like WebEngine are not available (throwing exception) and the targeted Nuxeo server is 5.2 or higher, check that the "Preserve compatibility" is not marked.

6. Click **Ok**.

OpenOffice.org and MS Office mimetype mapping with OpenOffice.org or LibreOffice

File extension	Mimetype	Editor command	Editor command arguments
----------------	----------	----------------	--------------------------

.doc	application/msword	Path to the OpenOffice.org or LibreOffice soffice.exe file, for instance C:\Program Files\OpenOffice.org 3\program\soffice.exe or C:\Program Files (x86)\LibreOffice 3.4\program\soffice.exe	macro:///LiveEditOOo.lau ncher.load(%s)
.xls	application/vnd.ms-excel	Path to the OpenOffice.org or LibreOffice soffice.exe file, for instance C:\Program Files\OpenOffice.org 3\program\soffice.exe or C:\Program Files (x86)\LibreOffice 3.4\program\soffice.exe	macro:///LiveEditOOo.lau ncher.load(%s)
.odt	application/vnd.oasis.opendocument.text	Path to the OpenOffice.org or LibreOffice soffice.exe file, for instance C:\Program Files\OpenOffice.org 3\program\soffice.exe or C:\Program Files (x86)\LibreOffice 3.4\program\soffice.exe	macro:///LiveEditOOo.lau ncher.load(%s)
.ods	application/vnd.oasis.opendocument.spreadsheet	Path to the OpenOffice.org or LibreOffice soffice.exe file, for instance C:\Program Files\OpenOffice.org 3\program\soffice.exe or C:\Program Files (x86)\LibreOffice 3.4\program\soffice.exe	macro:///LiveEditOOo.lau ncher.load(%s)
.odp	application/vnd.oasis.opendocument.presentation	Path to the OpenOffice.org or LibreOffice soffice.exe file, for instance C:\Program Files\OpenOffice.org 3\program\soffice.exe or C:\Program Files (x86)\LibreOffice 3.4\program\soffice.exe	macro:///LiveEditOOo.lau ncher.load(%s)



Microsoft Office 2007 compatibility

Live Edit OpenOffice.org is not compatible with MS Office 2007 documents yet.

For Google Chrome users under MS Windows

For Windows users, Chrome will use Windows registry where NuxeoLiveEdit protocol is declared (LiveEdit for MS IE must be installed). However some steps are needed to configure your computer and the server.

On your machine, you need to force Chrome to handle `nxdedit` protocol:

1. Close Google Chrome because at shutdown it dumps its properties in the file we'll modify.
2. Edit the `Local State` file located under:
 - XP: C:\Documents and Settings\<USERNAME>\Local Settings\Application Data\Google\Chrome\User Data;
 - Vista/7: C:\Users\<USERNAME>\AppData\Local\Google\Chrome\User Data.
3. Add the protocol `nxdedit` under the `protocol_handler` section, as such:





```
"protocol_handler": {
  "excluded_schemes": {
    ...
    "nxedit": false,
    ...
  }
}
```

If the section `protocol_handler` doesn't exist, find a mailto link and follow it, it should initialize this section.





On the server side, because we don't have a mechanism to detect that LiveEdit is configured yet, you have to set a property to allow LiveEdit on each document type. As a consequence, you'll have to pay attention when clicking on LiveEdit links.

1. Edit `$NUXEO_HOME/templates/common/config/nuxeo.properties`.
2. Change the value for the property `org.nuxeo.ecm.platform.liveedit.config` from **client** to **server** (uncomment the line if needed).
3. Restart the Nuxeo server.

More in this guide

-  [Working with Live Edit](#)
-  [Installing Live Edit](#)
-  [Live Edit compatibility table](#)
-  [Manage your own file with LiveEdit](#)

In other documentation

-  [LiveEdit makes MS Office slow to start](#) (Nuxeo Technical Knowledge Base (FAQ))
-  [Setup Firefox protocol handler with LiveEdit 2 for MS Office and OpenOffice.org](#) (Nuxeo Technical Knowledge Base (FAQ))
-  [LiveEdit icons are still available in Nuxeo after LiveEdit has been uninstalled](#) (Nuxeo Technical Knowledge Base (FAQ))
-  [I can't view my websites and blogs \(displays a message "The HTTP header field "Accept" with value..."](#) (Nuxeo Technical Knowledge Base (FAQ))

Live Edit compatibility table

The table below states the compatibility of Live Edit plugins with different versions of browsers and office software, for Nuxeo DM 5.4+.

Tested versions of Live Edit are:

- Live Edit MS Office-IE (.msi): 2.2.1
 - Live Edit OpenOffice Distribution (.exe): 2.2.1
 - FireFox Protocol Handler: 0.4.11
- More information on the plugin / environment correspondence on the [Live Edit Installation page](#).

On this page	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Windows XP environment • Windows 7 64b environment • Windows 7 32b environment • Internet Explorer 9 compatibility <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • More in this guide • In other documentation 	

Windows XP environment

	Internet Explorer 6	Internet Explorer 7	Internet Explorer 8	Internet Explorer 9	Firefox < 3.6	Firefox 3.6.3	Firefox 4+
Microsoft Office 2000	Not supported	Not supported anymore	Not supported anymore	N/A	Not supported anymore	Not supported anymore	Not supported anymore
Microsoft Office XP	Not supported	Not supported anymore	Not supported anymore	N/A	Not supported anymore	Not supported anymore	Not supported anymore

Microsoft Office 2003	Not supported	OK, except for a minor issue: LIVED-187	OK, except for a minor issue: LIVED-187	N/A	Not supported anymore	OK, except for a minor issue: LIVED-187	Testing in progress
Microsoft Office 2007	Not supported	Tested OK on development branch, but minor issues: LIVED-163 LIVED-164 LIVED-165 Tests on Live Edit 2.2.1 in progress	Testing in progress	N/A	Not supported anymore	Tested OK on development branch, but minor issues: LIVED-163 LIVED-164 LIVED-165 Tests on Live Edit 2.2.1 in progress	Testing in progress
OpenOffice.org 3.3	Not supported	OK	OK	N/A	Not supported anymore	OK	Testing in progress
LibreOffice 3.4	Not supported	OK	OK	N/A	Not supported anymore	OK	Testing in progress

Windows 7 64b environment

Nuxeo LiveEdit Microsoft Office is only compatible with Office in 32 bits.

Beware about its detection inside Internet Explorer. For the moment, out of the box, it will only be possible with the 32 bits version of your browser.

To enable the detection of your LiveEdit installation with Internet Explorer running in 64 bits mode, you need to import this file into your registry (regedit).

- Nuxeo LiveEdit Internet Explorer (64 bits) fix: [liveedit-ie-x64-fix.reg](#)

As LiveEdit installer is only built in 32 bits yet, Windows will write the registry entries into a compatibility node (WoW6432Node) read by 32 bits application running on 64 bits OS, and this file will add necessary keys to the default registry node read.

	Internet Explorer 6	Internet Explorer 7	Internet Explorer 8	Internet Explorer 9	Firefox < 3.6	Firefox 3.6.x	Firefox 4+
Microsoft Office 2000	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Microsoft Office XP	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Microsoft Office 2003	N/A	N/A	Not supported	Note supported	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported
Microsoft Office 2007	N/A	N/A	OK except for LIVED-163	Testing in progress	Not supported anymore	Testing in progress	OK except for LIVED-163
Microsoft Office 2010	N/A	N/A	LIVED-149	Testing in progress	Not supported anymore	LIVED-149	LIVED-149
OpenOffice.org 3.3	N/A	N/A	Testing in progress	Testing in progress	Not supported anymore	Testing in progress	Testing in progress
LibreOffice 3.4	N/A	N/A	Testing in progress	Testing in progress	Not supported anymore	Testing in progress	Testing in progress

Windows 7 32b environment

	Internet Explorer 6	Internet Explorer 7	Internet Explorer 8	Internet Explorer 9	Firefox < 3.6	Firefox 3.6.x	Firefox 4+
Microsoft Office 2000	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Microsoft Office XP	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A
Microsoft Office 2003	N/A	N/A	Not supported	Note supported	Not supported	Not supported	Not supported

Microsoft Office 2007	N/A	N/A	Testing in progress	Testing in progress	Not supported anymore	Testing in progress	Testing in progress
Microsoft Office 2010	N/A	N/A	OK	Testing in progress	Not supported anymore	Testing in progress	Testing in progress
OpenOffice.org 3.3	N/A	N/A	Testing in progress	Testing in progress	Not supported anymore	Testing in progress	Testing in progress
LibreOffice 3.4	N/A	N/A	Testing in progress	Testing in progress	Not supported anymore	Testing in progress	Testing in progress

Internet Explorer 9 compatibility

Internet Explorer 9 truncates the HTTP_ACCEPT header and prevents Live Edit to work. For instance:

- with IE 9 in default browsing mode, the HTTP_ACCEPT header looks like this:

```
text/html, application/xhtml+xml, */*
```

Two workarounds are possible:





- If you want to use Live Edit with the client side detection in Internet Explorer 9, you need to activate the "Internet Explorer 9 Compatibility view" browsing mode (F12 developer tools).

With IE 9 in compatibility mode, the HTTP_ACCEPT header is:





```
image/jpeg, application/x-ms-application, image/gif, application/xaml+xml, image/pjpeg, application/x-ms-xbap,
application/vnd.ms-excel, application/vnd.ms-powerpoint, application/msword,
application/x-nuxeo-liveedit;ext0="application/vnd.ms-excel",
application/x-nuxeo-liveedit;ext0="application/vnd.openxmlformats-officedocument.spreadsheetml.sheet",
application/x-nuxeo-liveedit;ext0="application/vnd.openxmlformats-officedocument.presentationml.presentation",
application/x-nuxeo-liveedit;ext0="application/vnd.openxmlformats-officedocument.wordprocessingml.document",
application/x-nuxeo-liveedit;ext1="application/vnd.ms-powerpoint", application/x-nuxeo-liveedit;ext2="application/msword",
*/*
```

- Or you can force the detection of the Live Edit installation with a server side configuration:
 - Edit \$NUXEO_HOME/templates/common/config/nuxeo.properties.
 - Change the value for the property org.nuxeo.ecm.platform.liveedit.config from **client** to **server** (uncomment the line if needed).
 - Restart the Nuxeo server.

More in this guide

-  [Working with Live Edit](#)
-  [Installing Live Edit](#)
-  [Live Edit compatibility table](#)
-  [Manage your own file with LiveEdit](#)

In other documentation

-  [LiveEdit makes MS Office slow to start](#) (Nuxeo Technical Knowledge Base (FAQ))
-  [Setup Firefox protocol handler with LiveEdit 2 for MS Office and OpenOffice.org](#) (Nuxeo Technical Knowledge Base (FAQ))
-  [LiveEdit icons are still available in Nuxeo after LiveEdit has been uninstalled](#) (Nuxeo Technical Knowledge Base (FAQ))
-  [I can't view my websites and blogs \(displays a message "The HTTP header field "Accept" with value..."\)](#) (Nuxeo Technical Knowledge Base (FAQ))

Manage your own file with LiveEdit

By default, we recognize default office files (doc, docx, xls, xlsx, odt, ...) for Microsoft Office, OpenOffice.org and LibreOffice. But sometimes, you could be interested in managing other file types with Live Edit, and launching their associated editors.

On this page

- [With Internet Explorer](#)
- [With Firefox](#)

With Internet Explorer

Recognized extensions are managed in the Windows Registry. They are simple string values, stored in **HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SOFTWARE**

Wow6432Node\Microsoft\Windows\CurrentVersion\Internet Settings\Accepted Documents and using this model:

In a .reg file, a new handled extension should looks like:

```
"liveedit_msoffice12_word_template"="application/x-nuxeo-liveedit;ext7=\\vnd.ms-word.template.macroEnabled.12\""
```

The key is a unique name, and in this example, it is "liveedit_msoffice12_word_template".

The value is built like a MIME-TYPE: application/x-nuxeo-liveedit;extX="FILE_MIME_TYPE". In this example, the value is: "application/x-nuxeo-liveedit;ext7=\\vnd.ms-word.template.macroEnabled.12".



Internet Explorer behaviour

With Internet Explorer, Live Edit will open the associated program and save the edited file into Nuxeo when the program ended.



Restart required

Do not forget to restart your browser after making changes.

See the attached file to enable all Microsoft Office extensions.

With Firefox

In the extension preferences form, you can directly add the editor / MIME-TYPE mapping. By doing this, it will be enough to enable a new extension.



Additional script

With Firefox, you just receive a file descriptor with the file URL and authentication information. You also need to add a script to download the file, start the editor and upload it when finished.

Working with WebDAV and WSS

Nuxeo enables you to create and edit MS Office documents stored in Nuxeo directly from your OS desktop, without having to go on your Nuxeo application in your browser. This is possible thanks to the support of the WebDAV (*Web-based Distributed Authoring and Versioning*) and Windows SharePoint Service (WSS) protocols.

For both protocols, you don't need to install an extension or configure Nuxeo. You just need to add Nuxeo as a network drive. You will then be able to do the following actions on Nuxeo MS Office documents, from your OS desktop directly:

- create documents and folders,
- edit documents,
- move documents and folders.

Adding Nuxeo as an external drive

Depending on your OS, the steps to follow so Nuxeo is seen by the OS as an external drive are different depending on your OS.



Requirement

The first time you do the mapping, make sure that you have already logged in to the web interface once. This is required to setup the Windows authentication protocol.

On this page

- [Adding Nuxeo as an external drive](#)
 - [Adding a new network place from Windows XP](#)
 - [Mapping a network drive from Windows 7 Explorer](#)
 - [Connecting to Nuxeo from Mac OS Finder](#)
 - [Connecting to Nuxeo from Linux](#)
- [Browsing Nuxeo from your OS](#)
- [Editing documents](#)
- [Creating content in Nuxeo](#)
 - [Related pages](#)
 - [Want to know more about WebDAV and WSS?](#)

Adding a new network place from Windows XP

1. From the Windows Explorer, open **My Network Places**.
2. Click on **Add a network place**.
The **Add Network Place Wizard** opens.

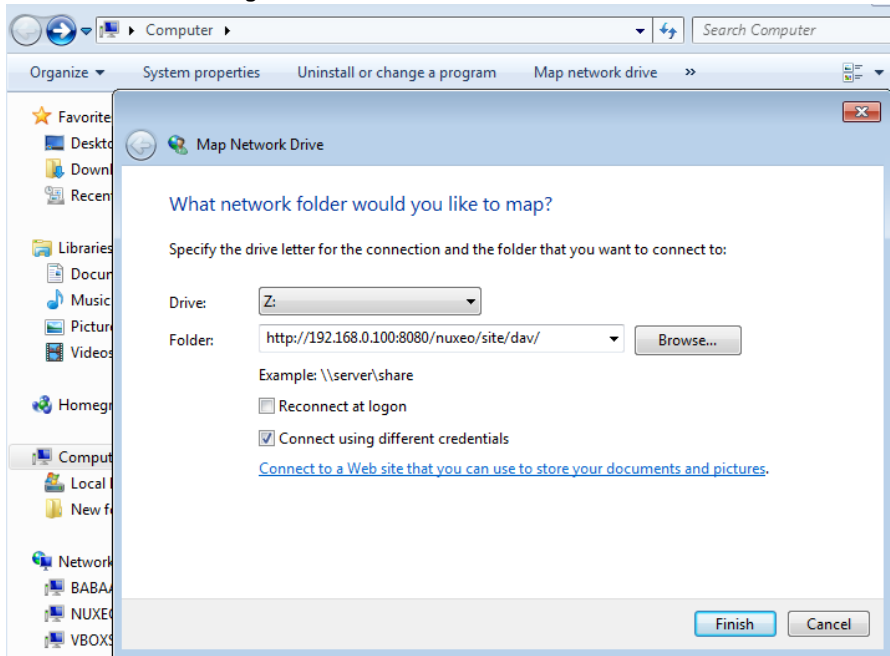
3. When asked for the Internet or network address, type the address of your Nuxeo application, for instance "<http://localhost:8080/nuxeo/>".
4. When prompted, type your username and password.
5. Give the application a name. This is the name that will be displayed in the network places.
6. Finish the steps.

The network place is created. You can now browse the content of your Nuxeo application in the Windows Explorer, from the network places.

If you checked the **Open this network place when I click Finish** box, the workspaces of the application are displayed in the explorer.

Mapping a network drive from Windows 7 Explorer

1. Open the Windows Explorer.
2. Click **Map network drive**.
3. Choose a Drive letter.
4. In **Folder**, type the address of your Nuxeo application adding the **site/dav/** suffix, for instance "<http://localhost:8080/nuxeo/site/dav/>". Make sure **Connect using different credentials** is selected.



5. Click on **Finish**.
A connect window opens.
6. Type your login and your password and click on the **OK** button.

Connecting to Nuxeo from Mac OS Finder

1. From the Finder open the **Connect to Server** popup
2. Type the address of your Nuxeo application adding the **site/dav/** suffix, for instance "<http://localhost:8080/nuxeo/site/dav/>".
3. A connect window opens. Type your login and your password and click on the **OK** button.

Connecting to Nuxeo from Linux

The plugin comes with a default configuration which supports only a few clients. On Linux, it supports:

- cadaver, which enables you to browse the content of the Nuxeo application in command line like you would do with a FTP server;
- davfs, which enables your to mount Nuxeo and see it as a file system directory.

It is possible to [configure the application to work with other WebDAV clients](#).

Browsing Nuxeo from your OS

After you added the Nuxeo application as an external drive, you can browse the content of Nuxeo from your OS. You can see:

- workspaces,
- folders,
- templates,
- files,
- notes,
- pictures.

Editing documents

You can edit office documents available in your Nuxeo workspaces and folders from your OS, like any other local documents. The document is automatically locked in Nuxeo. When you save your modifications, they are saved in Nuxeo directly. When done, closing the document will unlock the document in Nuxeo.

Creating content in Nuxeo

You can create folders and documents in Nuxeo from your desktop. To create documents in a Nuxeo folder or workspace, you can:

- drag and drop files from a local folder into the target Nuxeo folder,
- create the document in the native office application and save it in the Nuxeo folder.

You can then create, copy and move documents and folders in Nuxeo via the Windows Explorer or Mac Finder the same way you would do in a local folder.

Related pages

- [Working with WebDAV and WSS](#)
- [Manage your own file with LiveEdit](#)
- [Live Edit compatibility table](#)
- [Installing Live Edit](#)
- [Working with Live Edit](#)

Want to know more about WebDAV and WSS?

- [WSS before Nuxeo 5.4.2](#) (Nuxeo Platform Developer Documentation - 5.6)
- [WebDAV](#) (Nuxeo Platform Developer Documentation - 5.6)

Relations

Relations are informations that connect the application's documents with other documents or external resources. Documents are thus part of a coherent and organized structure.

A summary of the document's relations is displayed in the **Summary** tab.

The screenshot displays the Nuxeo Platform 5.6 User Guide document interface. At the top, there's a title bar with the document name and several action icons (lock, share, download, etc.). Below the title bar is a tabbed interface with 'Summary' selected. The main content area is divided into two columns. The left column, titled 'CONTENT', shows a 'Main File' named 'NuxeoPlatform-5.5-UserGuide.doc (118 kB)' with icons for document, error, and download. The right column contains several sections: 'Created by John Doe' (Sep 19, 2012, VERSION 0.0), 'STATE' (PROJECT), 'WORKFLOW PROCESS' (Serial document review, Start), 'CONTRIBUTORS' (John Doe), 'ASSOCIATED TAGS' (empty), and 'RELATIONS' (This Document ...). The 'RELATIONS' section shows a 'Replaces' relationship with 'Nuxeo Platform 5.5 User Guide'.

You can also see all the document's relations in the **Relations** tab of the document. In **Relations** tab, relations are sorted by outgoing and incoming relations. Outgoing relations are relations that were created from the current document. Incoming relations are relations which were created from another document and to the current document. The objects of the relation are hyperlinks. Click on the object's name to consult it.

Available relations are:

- reference relation (references, is referenced by),
- basis relation (is based on, is base for),
- replacement relation (replaces, is replaced by),
- requirement relation (requires, is required by),
- compliance relation (conforms to, has conform).

Adding a relation

You need to have writing or management rights to add relations on a document.

You can create a relation from a document to:

- another document on the application,
- an external document (using URI),
- a text.

You can create relations between documents from different workspaces or domains.

When you add a relation on a document, it creates what we call an "outgoing" relation. The document to which you added the relation automatically has an "incoming" relation.

To create a relation:

1. Click on the **Relations** tab of the document.
2. Click on the **Add a new relation** link.

The relation creation form is displayed under the link.

Add a new relation

Predicate *

Select a value

Text

Resource URI

Document

Object *


Search

Comment


Add

3. Fill in the relation creation form.
4. Click on the **Add** button.

The relation is displayed as an outgoing relation, under the relation creation form.

Outgoing relations					
Predicate	Object	Creation	Author	Comment	Operations
Replaces	 Nuxeo Platform 5.5 User Guide	9/26/2012 11:09 AM	system	Updated for 5.6 release	Delete

An incoming relation is automatically created in the target document's **Relations** tab, that directs to the source document of the relation.

Incoming relations					
Predicate	Object	Creation	Author	Comment	
Is replaced by	 Nuxeo Platform 5.6 User Guide	9/26/2012 11:09 AM	system	Updated for 5.6 release	

Relations are also displayed in the **Summary** tab of the document.

Deleting a relation

You need to have writing or management rights to delete the relations of a document.

You can delete outgoing relations only.

To delete a relation:

1. Click on the **Relations** tab of the document.
2. Click on the **Delete** link corresponding to the relation.

The relation is deleted and does not appear in the table anymore. It is also removed from the incoming relations of the target document.

Comments

You can add comments on the documents, via the **Comments** tab. Comments enable users to discuss about the document and its evolution.

Comments are attached to the document in the workspace. When the document is published, comments are not published with it.

All users can see the comments added on a document.

Adding a comment on a document

You need reading rights to add comments on documents.

To add a comment on a document:

1. Click on the **Comments** tab of the document.
2. Click on the **Add a comment** link.

A form to add a comment is displayed.



Nuxeo Platform 5.6 User Guide

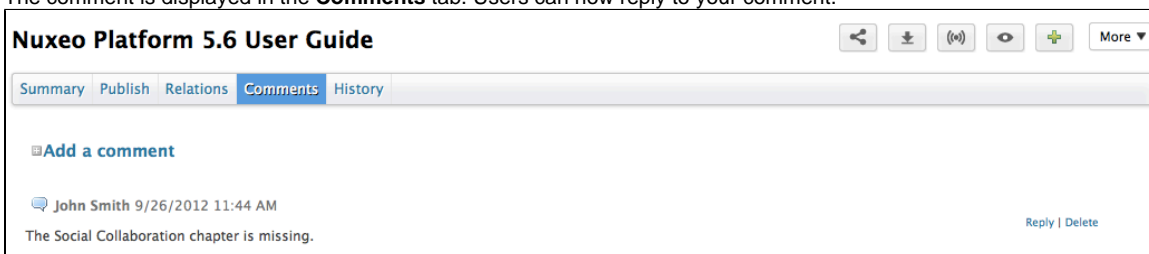
Summary Publish Relations **Comments** History

[Add a comment](#)

Add Cancel

3. In the text area, type your comment.
4. Click on the **Add** button.

The comment is displayed in the **Comments** tab. Users can now reply to your comment.



Nuxeo Platform 5.6 User Guide

Summary Publish Relations **Comments** History

[Add a comment](#)

John Smith 9/26/2012 11:44 AM

The Social Collaboration chapter is missing.

Reply | Delete

Replying to a comment

You need to have reading rights to reply to comments on documents.

When you want to react to a comment, you can reply to it. Answers are inserted right after the comment they reply to, making it easy to read the thread of discussion.


To reply to a comment:

1. Click on the **Reply** link on the comment.
A form is displayed under the comment.

2. Type your comment in the text area.
3. Click on the **Add** button.
The answer is inserted after the comment it replies to.

Deleting comments

Only the author of the comment and users with management rights can delete the comments of a document.

 Deleting a comment is a permanent action. You cannot restore deleted comments.

To delete a comment:

1. Click on the **Comments** tab of the document.
2. Click on the **Delete** link displayed in the top right corner of the comment.

The comment is immediately erased.

Related pages



Comments



Commenting assets


• Annotations

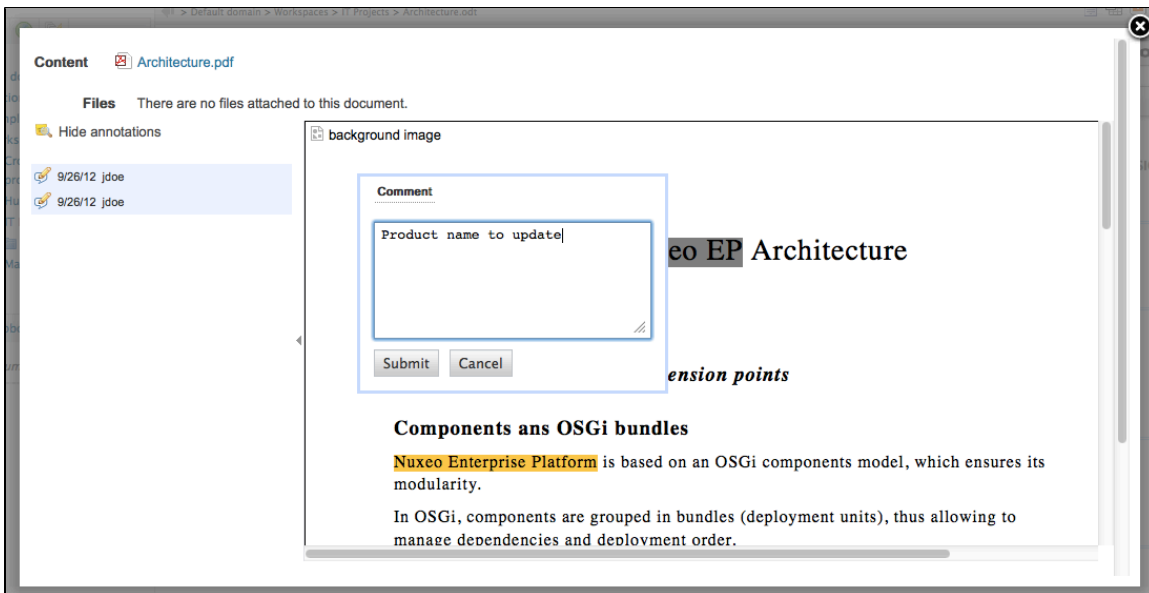
Annotations are post-its or comments placed on the preview of documents.

You can annotate documents as soon as you can access them, i.e. when you have at least "Read" right.

 Annotations and preview are available on the Document Management module of the Nuxeo Platform.

To annotate a document:

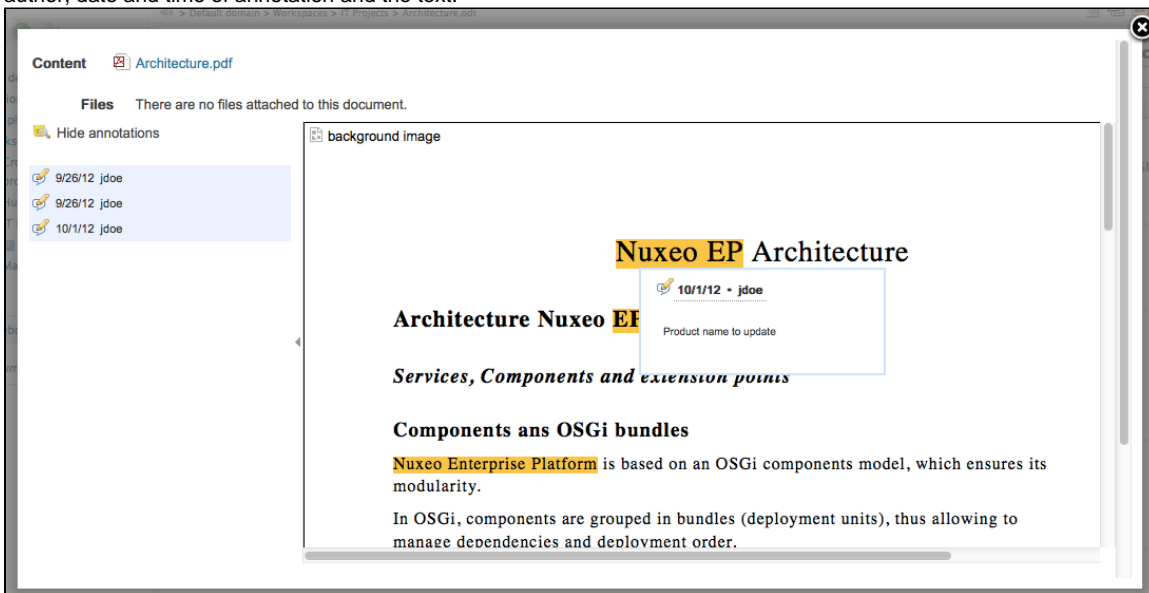
1. Click on the icon  of the document.
The document's preview is displayed in a pop up window.
2. Draw a frame on the preview.
An input pop up appears.
3. Type your comment.



4. Click on **Submit**.

The annotation is saved.

You can see your annotation when the mouse is over the zone you selected, and, in the margin, the list of annotations, and for each, the author, date and time of annotation and the text.



Related pages

• Tags

Annotating assets

Tags are labels that you can add on documents to help you describe them. Unlike subjects in the metadata of the document, you don't have to choose tags in a closed list. You are free to apply the labels that describe the document best. However, tags are proposed as you type them, to enable you to use the same tags as the other users and have a consistent tagging of documents.

i Tags are available on the Document Management module of the Nuxeo Platform.

On this page

- Tagging documents
- Removing tags

You can add as many tags on documents as you want.

Nuxeo Platform 5.6 User Guide

Created by **John Doe**
Sep 19, 2012
VERSION 0.1

CONTENT

Main File NuxeoPlatform-5.6-UserGuide.odt (115 kB)

STATE

PROJECT

WORKFLOW PROCESS

Serial document review

Start

CONTRIBUTORS

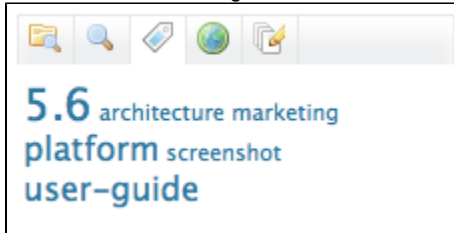
John Doe

ASSOCIATED TAGS

5.6 platform user-guide

RELATIONS

You can then use the tag cloud to find all documents that have the same tags.



Tagging documents

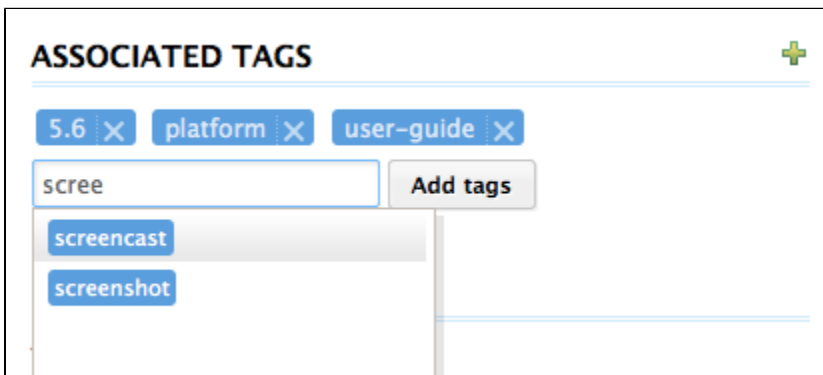
Users can add a tag on a document as soon as they can access the document, ie as soon as they have reading rights.

Documents can be tagged in workspaces and in sections. When a document is published, the tags applied in the workspaces are not published with the document. You can have tags in the workspace that are more collaborative work oriented than in the section.

To tag a document:

1. Go on the **Summary** tab of the document.
2. In the Associated tags section, click on the icon .
A text area is displayed below the link.
3. Type a label.


Tags already used are proposed from 3 letters typed.



4. Click the button **Add tags** button.
The tags are immediately available in the tag cloud.

Removing tags

You need to be the user who added the tag on the document or have at least *write* right on the document to be able to remove a tag from a document.

To remove a tag from a document, click on the icon . The tag is immediately removed.

Document's history

All the actions that are done on the document are registered in the document's history, with several informations, such as the date and time, the user, the comment, etc.

Event log		Archived versions					
Filter						Items/page 10	
Performed action	Date	Username	Category	Directive	Due date	Comment	State
Unlock document	1/18/2012 1:56 PM	John Doe	Document				Project
Modification	1/18/2012 1:55 PM	John Doe	Document			Updated metadata	Project
Version created	1/18/2012 1:55 PM	John Doe	Document			0.1 Updated metadata	Project
Lock document	1/18/2012 1:55 PM	John Doe	Document				Project
Relation created	1/16/2012 2:06 PM	John Doe	Document				Project
Relation deleted	1/16/2012 2:04 PM	John Doe	Document				Project
Relation created	1/16/2012 2:01 PM	John Doe	Document				Project
Modification	1/11/2012 5:35 PM	John Doe	Document				Project
Creation	1/11/2012 5:30 PM	John Doe	Document				Project

To consult the document's history, click on the **History** tab.

The **History** tab also displays the previous versions of the document that were archived when the document was edited and its version increased. All previous versions can be consulted. You can also restore or delete archived versions.

On this page

- [Viewing a previous version of a document](#)
- [Restoring an older version of a document](#)
- [Deleting a older version of a document](#)

Viewing a previous version of a document

All users can consult the previous versions of a document.

Every time you modify a document, you can decide to save and archive the state of the document as a new version. Thus the modifications are not erased by future modifications of the document.

The archived versions are listed in the "Archived versions" sub-tab.

Event log

Archived versions

Version	Action
0.1	<div><div>Restore</div><div>View archived version</div></div>
0.2	<div><div>Restore</div><div>View archived version</div></div>

To consult a previous version of a document, click on the **View archived version** button corresponding to the chosen version. The archived version opens.

Archived versions have few actions available: you can only [create relations](#) from it to another document, [annotate](#) it and subscribe to [notifications](#).

Restoring an older version of a document

You need to have "version", "write" or "manage everything" rights to restore a previous version of a document.

Restoring an archived version means making it the current version of the document. The modifications done since that old version are thus not taken into account anymore.

To restore an archived version, click on the **Restore** button corresponding to the chosen version. The document is displayed as it was for the


chosen version and has the same archived version's number. The next time it will be modified, its version number will automatically be increased.

Event log Archived versions	
Version	Action
0.1	Restore View archived version Delete
0.2	Restore View archived version Delete

For instance, your document's version is currently 0.3. When you click on the **Restore** button of the version 0.1, the Summary tab of the document is displayed : the content and metadata are the one of version 0.1, and the version number is 0.1. When the document is modified, the version number is automatically increased to 0.3+.

Deleting a older version of a document

You need to have "version", "write" or "manage everything" rights to delete a previous version of a document.

 Version deletion is a permanent action.

To delete an archived version:


1. Check the box corresponding to the version you want to delete.
2. Click on the **Delete** button below the version list.
A confirmation window pops up.
3. Click on the **OK** button to confirm.
The version is permanently deleted.

Alerts

Alerts are emails automatically sent to users when an event occurs in a space. Users can follow the activity of a document or a space, which means that they will receive an alert when an event occurs on the document or space. Spaces' managers can subscribe users to alerts.

When users follow a document or a space activity, they get an email when the events below happen:

- creation: users get an email when some content is created in the space;
- modification: users receive an email every time the space or its content is edited;
- workflow changed: users receive an email for each action that happens during a review (start, abandon, document approval, document rejection);
- Approval workflow started: users receive an email every time an approval workflow is started;
- Comments moderation: users receive an email when a comment is approved on a site.
- publish: users receive an email when a document is published in the specified section.

 The publish event is available in sections only. The other events are available in workspaces only.

On this page

- [Following a document or the activity of a space](#)
- [Unfollowing a document or the activity of a space](#)
- [Managing subscriptions](#)
 - Customization

Following a document or the activity of a space

You need to have at least reading rights to follow a document or a space.

To follow a document or a space activity:



From the document or space, click on the icon


The icon becomes green to indicate that you follow the document and, from now on, you will receive an email every time an event occurs on the document.

On the Home **Alerts** tab, the user can see all the events he will be alerted of and the associated documents.

nuxeo			
Home	Document Management	jdoe ▾	Search Advanced search
Dashboard	Alert	Subscribed to	On document
Profile	Comments	user:jdoe	Marketing /default-domain/workspaces/Marketing Unsubscribe
Preferences	Subscriptions Updated	user:jdoe	Marketing /default-domain/workspaces/Marketing Unsubscribe
Alerts	Modification	user:jdoe	Marketing /default-domain/workspaces/Marketing Unsubscribe
Authorized Applications	Creation	user:jdoe	Marketing /default-domain/workspaces/Marketing Unsubscribe
Users & groups	Publish	user:jdoe	Marketing /default-domain/workspaces/Marketing Unsubscribe
	Publish	user:jdoe	Marketing /default-domain/workspaces/Marketing Unsubscribe
	Workflow changed	user:jdoe	Marketing /default-domain/workspaces/Marketing Unsubscribe
	Approval workflow started	user:jdoe	Marketing /default-domain/workspaces/Marketing Unsubscribe
	Document transmit by mail	user:jdoe	Marketing /default-domain/workspaces/Marketing Unsubscribe
	Approval workflow started	user:jdoe	Marketing /default-domain/workspaces/Marketing Unsubscribe

Unfollowing a document or the activity of a space

You need to have at least reading rights to unfollow a document or a space. You can either unfollow the document and don't receive any email anymore, or you can unsubscribe from some events only.

 You cannot unfollow a document when your group was subscribed to alerts on it.

To unfollow a document or a space activity:



From the document or space, click on the icon

The icon becomes grey to indicate that you don't follow the document and you won't receive emails anymore when events occur on the document. On the Home **Alerts** tab, no event is associated to the document anymore.

To unsubscribe from an event:

1. Go on the **Alerts** tab in your Home.

nuxeo			
Home	Document Management	jdoe ▾	Search Advanced search
Dashboard	Alert	Subscribed to	On document
Profile	Comments	user:jdoe	Marketing /default-domain/workspaces/Marketing Unsubscribe
Preferences	Subscriptions Updated	user:jdoe	Marketing /default-domain/workspaces/Marketing Unsubscribe
Alerts	Modification	user:jdoe	Marketing /default-domain/workspaces/Marketing Unsubscribe
Authorized Applications	Creation	user:jdoe	Marketing /default-domain/workspaces/Marketing Unsubscribe
Users & groups	Publish	user:jdoe	Marketing /default-domain/workspaces/Marketing Unsubscribe
	Publish	user:jdoe	Marketing /default-domain/workspaces/Marketing Unsubscribe
	Workflow changed	user:jdoe	Marketing /default-domain/workspaces/Marketing Unsubscribe
	Approval workflow started	user:jdoe	Marketing /default-domain/workspaces/Marketing Unsubscribe
	Document transmit by mail	user:jdoe	Marketing /default-domain/workspaces/Marketing Unsubscribe
	Approval workflow started	user:jdoe	Marketing /default-domain/workspaces/Marketing Unsubscribe

2. Click on the **Unsubscribe** button corresponding to the event you want to unsubscribe from.
The event is removed from the list. You won't receive emails when this event occurs on the document or space.

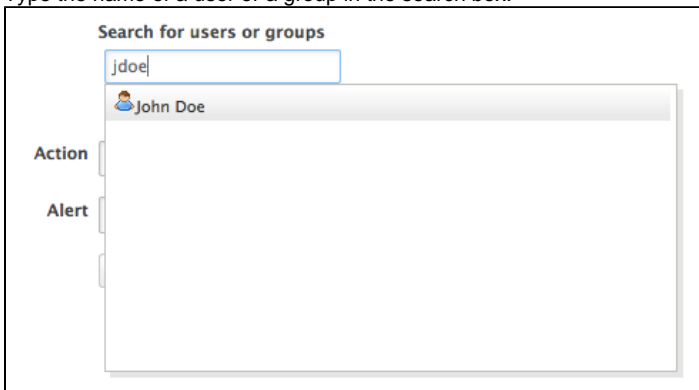
Managing subscriptions

Only users with management rights can manage the users' alerts.

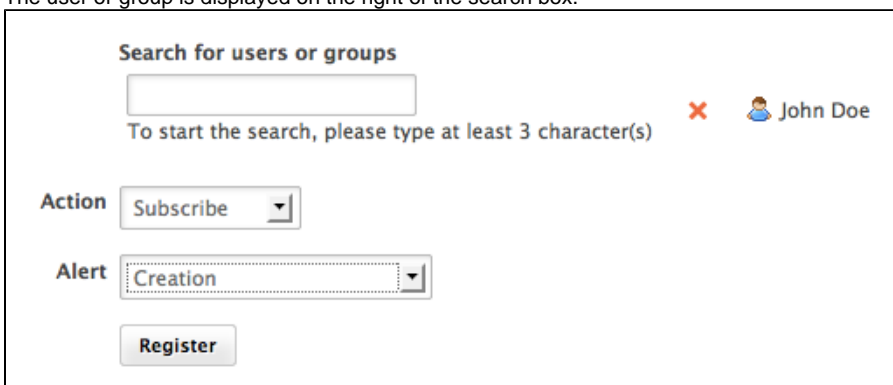
Users with management rights can see the documents the users follow. They can also subscribe users or groups to alerts or unsubscribe them.

To manage subscriptions:

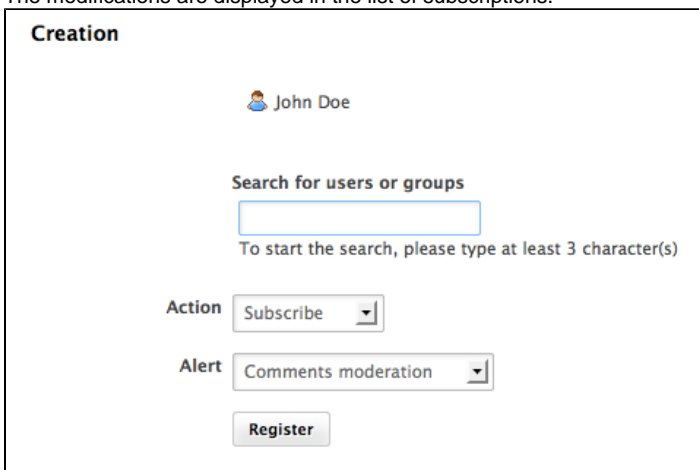
1. In the space, click on the **Manage** tab.
2. Click on the **Subscriptions** sub-tab.
The lists of users subscribed to each notification type is displayed above a subscription form.
3. Type the name of a user or a group in the search box.



4. Click on the user or group you want to subscribe to a notification.
The user or group is displayed on the right of the search box.



5. Select the action you want to do (**Subscribe** or **Unsubscribe**) and the notification concerned.
6. Click on the **Register** button.
The modifications are displayed in the list of subscriptions.



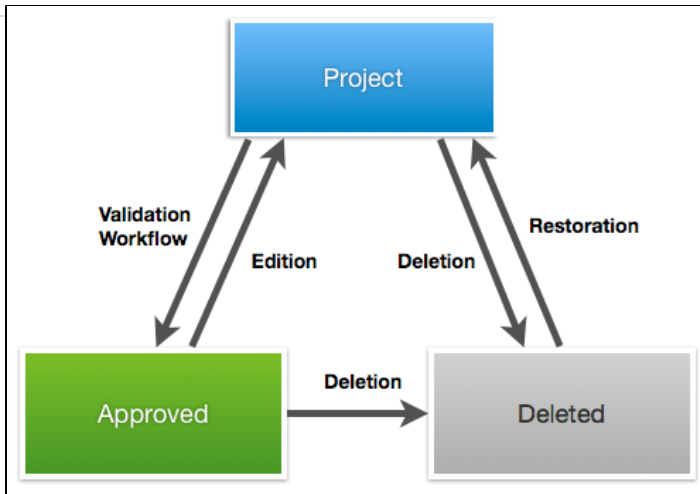
Customization



[Recommended configurations](#) (Nuxeo Installation and Administration - 5.6)

• Workflows

All the documents evolve according to a defined life cycle. The default life cycle is composed of the following states: Project, Approved, Obsolete and Deleted. There are different ways to make documents evolve through this life cycle. One of the ways is to use a workflow.



A workflow is a process in which a chain of users is defined to review, approve or reject the document. Workflows are traditionally used to validate documents (make them go to "Approved" state), but they can also be used to have the document reviewed, without life cycle state change.

The Nuxeo Platform includes one default workflow that can be used either to approve the document or simply to review it. Other workflows can be [configured with Nuxeo Studio](#), which will then be available in the application.

The default workflow, called "Serial document workflow", is an ordered workflow. This means that participants can review the document only when the previous participant in the list has approved the document.

Users who are involved in workflows are alerted by email and can have a synthetic view of all the tasks they have to do on documents in their [dashboard](#). The documents they have to review are listed there.

Starting a workflow

You need to have writing or management rights to start a workflow.


To start a workflow, you need to select the workflow type, reviewers and review type.

To start a workflow:

1. On the **Summary** tab, in the **Workflow process** section, select the workflow type you want to start and click on the **Start** button.

The form to select the reviewers and start the workflow is displayed on the **Summary** tab. A **Show graph view** button is also available, that displays the workflow route in a pop-up window.

YOUR TASKS

Serial document review - Choose participants: This task is assigned to 

Due date: Sep 15, 2012

Please select some participants for the review

Participants on the review * Search for users or groups

To start the search, please type at least 3 character(s)




Validation or simple review * Select a value


Comment

WORKFLOW PROCESS

Serial document review has been started by system

CONTRIBUTORS


 Administrator
  Lise Kemen
  Delphine Renevey

 Solen Guitter

A **Workflow** tab is now available on the document from which you can select the reviewers, show the graph view but also see the current and previous tasks and [abandon the workflow](#).

[Summary](#)
[Edit](#)
[Files](#)
[Publish](#)
[Relations](#)
[Workflow](#)
[Comments](#)
[History](#)

YOUR TASKS

Serial document review - Choose participants: This task is assigned to 

Due date: Sep 15, 2012

Please select some participants for the review

Participants on the review * Search for users or groups

To start the search, please type at least 3 character(s)

Validation or simple review * Select a value


Comment

SERIAL DOCUMENT REVIEW

Created by system

Sep 10, 2012

OPEN TASKS

Choose participants: This task is assigned to 


Due date: Sep 15, 2012

Please select some participants for the review

Past workflow steps

2. Add users on the workflow:
 - a. In the **Participants on the review**, type the name of a user or a group. The users and groups corresponding to the letters typed are displayed.



YOUR TASKS

Serial document review - Choose participants: This task is assigned to 

Due date: Sep 15, 2012




Please select some participants for the review

Participants on the review * Search for users or groups


 John Doe
  John Smith

Validation or simple review *

Comment

- b. Click on the user you want to add on the workflow.
- c. Repeat these two steps to add all the participants to the review.
- d. Optionally, click on the icons  and  to change the participant order, or the icon  to remove them.
3. Select the type of review you want to do:
 - Simple review: the document's state will not change.
 - Validation review: when all the reviewers have approved the document, it goes to the **Approved** life cycle state.

YOUR TASKS

Serial document review - Choose participants: This task is assigned to 

Due date: Sep 15, 2012

Please select some participants for the review

Participants on the * review

Search for users or groups

To start the search, please type at least 3 character(s)

Validation or simple review

Comment


Cancel the review Start the review

4. Type a comment, indicating the purpose of the review for instance.
 5. Click on the **Start the review** button to let participants approve or reject the document.
- Only the **Show graph view** button remains on the **Summary** tab.
- On the **Workflow** tab, the current task and the previous ones are displayed.

Summary Edit Files Publish Relations **Workflow** Comments History

SERIAL DOCUMENT REVIEW

Created by system
Sep 10, 2012

Document validation: This task is assigned to 


Due date: Sep 15, 2012

Please accept or reject the document

Show graph view










Abandon

Past workflow steps

Name	Assignee	Directive	Comments	Start date	Due date
Choose participants		Please select some participants for the review		Sep 10, 2012	Sep 15, 2012

The first participant(s) on the review get an email and have their task displayed on his (their) dashboard.

Related pages:

-  [Participating to a workflow](#)
-  [Participating to a jBPM workflow](#)
-  [Managing the jBPM workflow participants](#)
-  [Starting a jBPM workflow](#)
-  [Workflows](#)
-  [Starting a workflow](#)
-  [Abandoning a workflow](#)
-  [Nuxeo jBPM](#)
-  [Case Management with the Nuxeo Platform](#)

Related pages:

-  [Workflow \(Nuxeo Online Services\)](#)

Participating to a workflow

Once the workflow [has been started](#), users added on the workflow's roadmap can review the document and approve or reject it. When they have a task on a document, users are displayed it on their [dashboard](#) in the "My tasks" gadget. They also receive an email to inform them that they were assigned a task on a document:

A task on the document Document_Title was assigned to you or to a group you belong to. You can consult the document following this link: Document_Title

The participants of a workflow can:

- edit the document: access rights to the document are temporarily modified by the system to enable the reviewers to edit the document if their rights didn't allow them to;
- approve the document;
- reject the document.

On this page

- [Approving a document](#)
- [Rejecting a document](#)
- [Ending the workflow](#)
 - [Related pages:](#)
 - [Related pages:](#)

Approving a document

Participants can approve the document when it's their turn, after the previous participant on the workflow has approved it. Participants automatically get Write right on the document for the time they have a task to perform on the document, if they had Read permission or no access to the document.

To approve the document

1. From your dashboard's "My tasks" gadget, click on the document on which you have a task to do. The **Summary** tab of the document is displayed. It shows a "Your tasks" section that enables you to approve or reject the document.

YOUR TASKS

Serial document review – Document validation: This task is assigned to [John Doe](#)

Due date: Sep 15, 2012

“ Please accept or reject the document

Participants on the review

- user:jdoe
- user:jsmith

Initiator comment

Your comment

2. Optionally, type a comment to indicate what you did on the document before approving it.
3. Click on the **Validation** button in the "Your tasks" section of the **Summary** tab. The "Your tasks" section is not displayed any more. If you originally had read-only access to the document, you can't edit it anymore. The next participant can now review the document and approve or reject it.

Rejecting a document

Participants can reject the document when it's their turn, after the previous participant on the workflow has approved it.

To reject the document:

1. From your dashboard's "My tasks" gadget, click on the document on which you have a task to do. The **Summary** tab of the document is displayed. It shows a "Your tasks" section that enables you to approve or reject the document.

YOUR TASKS

Serial document review – Document validation: This task is assigned to John Doe

Due date: Sep 15, 2012

Please accept or reject the document

Participants on the review

user:jdoo
user:jsmith

Initiator comment

Your comment

Reject

Validation

2. Optionally, type a comment to indicate why you reject the document.
3. Click on the **Reject** button in the "Your tasks" section of the **Summary** tab.
The "Your tasks" section is not displayed any more. If you originally had read-only access to the document, you can't edit it anymore. The document is automatically sent back to the previous reviewer on the workflow, so he can edit it and approve it again.

When the document is rejected by the first reviewer, the document is sent back to the initiator, who can then either modify the document and resubmit it, or [cancel the review](#).

Ending the workflow

The workflow automatically ends when the last reviewer approves the document, and the document changes state if the initiator [chose to do a validation review](#).

Related pages:

- [Participating to a workflow](#)
- [Participating to a jBPM workflow](#)
- [Managing the jBPM workflow participants](#)
- [Starting a jBPM workflow](#)
- [Workflows](#)
- [Starting a workflow](#)
- [Abandoning a workflow](#)
- [Nuxeo jBPM](#)
- [Case Management with the Nuxeo Platform](#)

Related pages:

- [Workflow](#)

Abandoning a workflow

Only the workflow initiator and administrators can abandon a workflow.

Abandoning a workflow means canceling it. When you abandon a workflow, the life cycle state of the document does not change. The modifications made on the document during the workflow are kept.

Abandoning the workflow can be done at any time. The workflow initiator can also decide to cancel the workflow when he gets an update request from the first reviewer. When the first reviewer [rejects the document](#), it goes back to the initiator, who should then either edit the document and resubmit it, or cancel the review.

To abandon a workflow:

1. Click on the **Workflow** tab of the document.

Summary Edit Files Publish Relations **Workflow** Comments History

YOUR TASKS

Serial document review – Choose participants: This task is assigned to sguitter
Due date: Sep 15, 2012
Please select some participants for the review

Participants on the review * Search for users or groups

To start the search, please type at least 3 character(s)

Validation or simple review *

Comment

SERIAL DOCUMENT REVIEW

Created by **system**
Sep 10, 2012

OPEN TASKS

Choose participants: This task is assigned to sguitter
Due date: Sep 15, 2012
Please select some participants for the review

Past workflow steps

- Click on the **Abandon** button.
A confirmation window pops up.
- Click on **OK** to confirm abandon.
The workflow is immediately canceled. The life cycle state of the document does not change and the modifications done during the workflow are still saved.

To cancel a workflow after an update request:

- From your dashboard, click on the document for which you have an update task in the "My tasks" gadget.
The Summary tab of the document is displayed. It shows a "Your tasks" section.

YOUR TASKS

Serial document review – Update request: This task is assigned to sguitter
Due date: Sep 17, 2012
The document was refused. Please update it before going back to the validation flow, or cancel the review.

- Click on the **Cancel the review** button.
The workflow is immediately stopped. The life cycle state of the document does not change and the possible modifications done during the workflow are still saved.

Related pages:

- [Participating to a workflow](#)
- [Participating to a jBPM workflow](#)
- [Managing the jBPM workflow participants](#)
- [Starting a jBPM workflow](#)
- [Workflows](#)
- [Starting a workflow](#)
- [Abandoning a workflow](#)
- [Nuxeo jBPM](#)
- [Case Management with the Nuxeo Platform](#)

Related pages:

- [Workflow](#)

Forums

A forum is a discussion space in which users can talk together. A forum is organized around different topics, in which users can add comments. Topics and comments are displayed in threads.

As for workspaces and sections, the access to a forum is defined by access rights. Forum access rights are the same as workspace access rights. However, in the case of a [moderated topic](#), some users are declared "moderators" and are in charge of the approval of the topic content.

Forum creation and edition are available for users with "Write" and "Manage" rights.

Users with "Manage" rights can also manage the forum like a workspace, ie [give users access rights](#), set [alerts](#) and manage the forum's [trash](#).

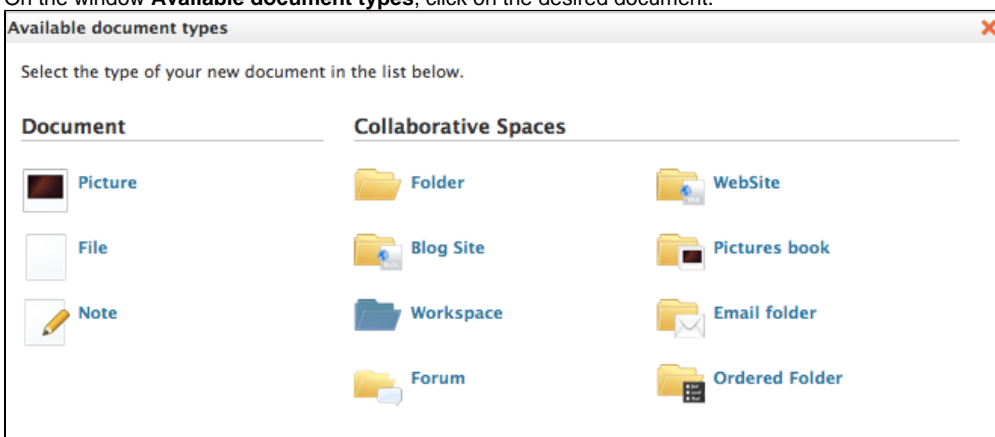
Creating a forum

You need 'Write' or 'Manage' rights to be able to create a forum.

You can create forums only in workspaces.

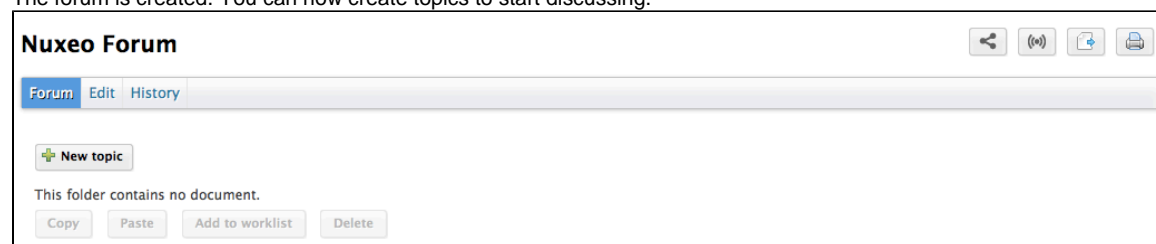
To create a forum:

1. In the **Content** tab of the workspace, click on the **New Document** button.
2. On the window **Available document types**, click on the desired document.



3. Fill in the document's creation form.
4. Click on the **Create** button.

The forum is created. You can now create topics to start discussing.



Editing a forum

You need 'Write' or 'Manage' rights to edit a forum.

When you edit a forum, you modify its title and its description.

To edit a forum:

1. On the forum, click on the **Edit** tab.
2. Modify the title or the description of the forum. You can also add a comment explaining what you edited on the forum.
3. Click on the **Save** button.
The modifications are saved and the **Forum** tab is displayed.

Related pages


- [Managing topics](#)
- [Participating to a topic](#)
- [Alerts](#)

- Managing access rights
- Document Management concepts
- Managing access rights in DAM

Managing topics

A topic can be moderated, that is to say that the content needs to be approved in order to be available to forum readers.

- In an topic without moderation, the content is available without preliminary approval.
- In a moderated topic, the content needs to be approved by a moderator to be visible for users.

 You are automatically added as a moderator if you create a moderated topic.

On this page

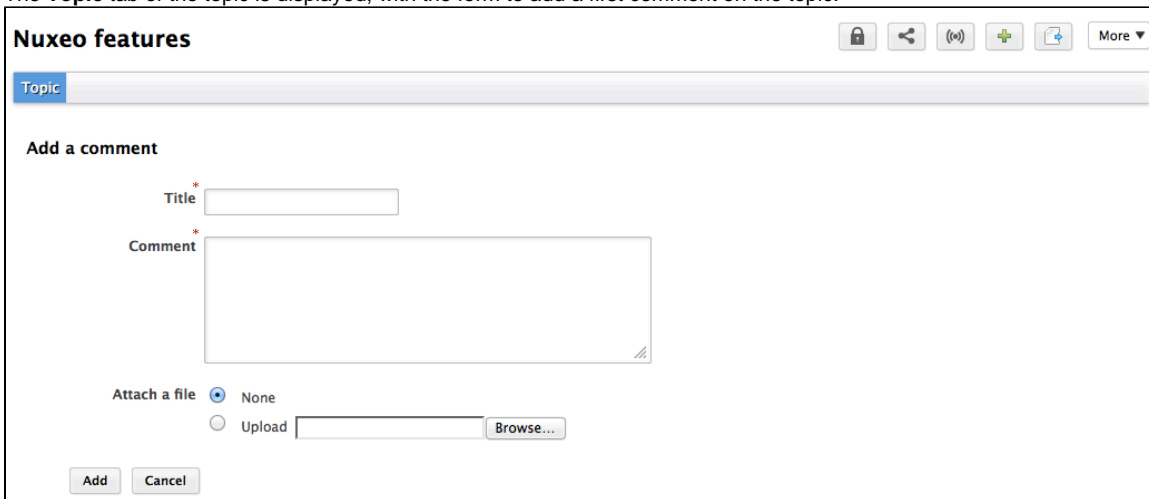
- Adding a topic
- Moderating a topic
 - Approving a comment
 - Rejecting a comment
- Deleting a comment
- Deleting a topic
 - Related pages:

Adding a topic

To add a new topic in a forum:

1. In the **Forum** tab of the forum, click on the **New Topic** button.
2. Type the topic's title and optionally add a description.
3. Select if the topic is moderated or not. If yes, search and select the moderators.
4. Click on the **Create** button.

The **Topic** tab of the topic is displayed, with the form to add a first comment on the topic.



The screenshot shows the 'Nuxeo features' forum topic page. At the top, there are navigation tabs: 'Topic' (selected), 'Comments', and 'Moderation'. Below the tabs is a form titled 'Add a comment'. The form has two required fields: 'Title' and 'Comment'. The 'Comment' field is a large text area. Below the text area, there is a section for attaching files with radio buttons for 'None' (selected) and 'Upload', followed by a 'Browse...' button. At the bottom of the form are 'Add' and 'Cancel' buttons. The top right of the page has several icons: a lock, a share icon, a speech bubble, a plus icon, a document icon, and a 'More' dropdown menu.

The list of the topics available in a forum is displayed in a table in the **Forum** tab.



The screenshot shows the 'Nuxeo Forum' page with the 'Forum' tab selected. At the top, there are navigation tabs: 'Forum' (selected), 'Edit', and 'History'. Below the tabs is a '+ New topic' button. The main content is a table listing forum topics. The table has five columns: 'Topic', 'Last message', 'Nbr. of published posts', 'Nbr. of pending posts', and 'Moderation'. There is one row of data for the topic 'Nuxeo features'. Below the table are buttons for 'Copy', 'Paste', 'Add to worklist', and 'Delete'.

Topic	Last message	Nbr. of published posts	Nbr. of pending posts	Moderation
Nuxeo features		0	0	Yes

Moderating a topic

When a user creates a topic, he or she decides if the topic is moderated or not. Moderation is a process that makes comments available to moderators only when they are created, until they approve or reject the pending comments. Approval is thus mandatory to make comments available for other forum users.

When a user creates a moderated topic, he appoints users to manage comments on the topic. Only these moderators can approve or reject pending comments.

Moderators can see if there are comments pending in the forum tab. The number of comments waiting for approval is indicated for each topic of the forum. They also have a moderation task displayed in their [dashboard](#), in their My tasks gadget.



The screenshot shows the 'Nuxeo Forum' interface. At the top, there are tabs for 'Forum', 'Edit', and 'History'. Below the tabs is a '+ New topic' button. The main content is a table with the following columns: 'Topic', 'Last message', 'Nbr. of published posts', 'Nbr. of pending posts', and 'Moderation'. There is one row in the table for the topic 'Nuxeo features?'. The 'Last message' is '10/1/2012 3:27 PM by jdoe', 'Nbr. of published posts' is '3', 'Nbr. of pending posts' is '1', and 'Moderation' is 'Yes'. Below the table are buttons for 'Copy', 'Paste', 'Add to worklist', and 'Delete'.

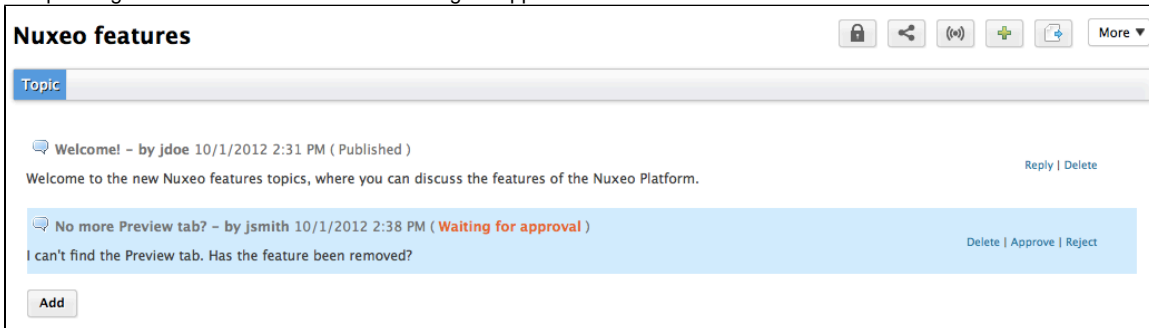
Topic	Last message	Nbr. of published posts	Nbr. of pending posts	Moderation
Nuxeo features?	10/1/2012 3:27 PM by jdoe	3	1	Yes

Approving a comment

Approving a comment means to publish it in the thread and make it available for all forum users.

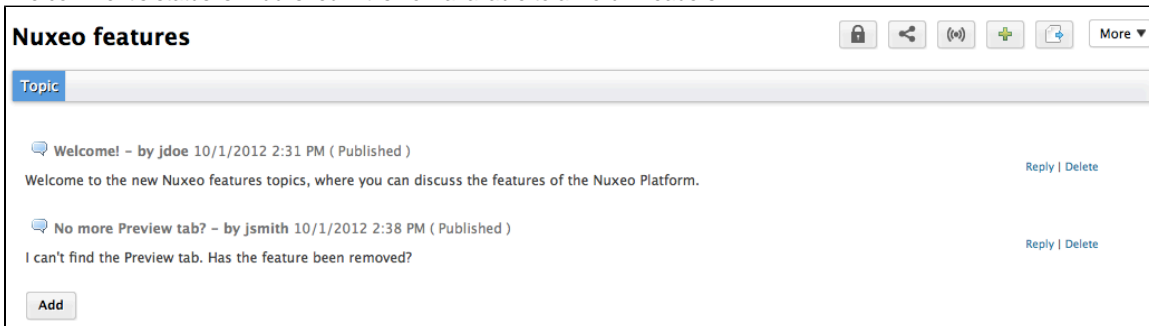
To approve a comment:

1. Open the topic that has pending comments.
The pending comments have the status "Waiting for approval".



The screenshot shows the 'Nuxeo features' topic page. The topic title is 'Nuxeo features'. Below the title is a 'Topic' tab. The first comment is 'Welcome! - by jdoe 10/1/2012 2:31 PM (Published)' with 'Reply | Delete' links. The second comment is 'No more Preview tab? - by jsmith 10/1/2012 2:38 PM (Waiting for approval)' with 'Delete | Approve | Reject' links. The comment text is 'I can't find the Preview tab. Has the feature been removed?'. There is an 'Add' button at the bottom.

2. Click on the **Approve** link in the top right corner of the pending comment.
The comment's status is "Published". It is now available to all forum readers.



The screenshot shows the 'Nuxeo features' topic page after the comment has been approved. The topic title is 'Nuxeo features'. Below the title is a 'Topic' tab. The first comment is 'Welcome! - by jdoe 10/1/2012 2:31 PM (Published)' with 'Reply | Delete' links. The second comment is 'No more Preview tab? - by jsmith 10/1/2012 2:38 PM (Published)' with 'Reply | Delete' links. The comment text is 'I can't find the Preview tab. Has the feature been removed?'. There is an 'Add' button at the bottom.

Rejecting a comment

Rejecting a comment means that you make the comment permanently unavailable for forum users.

To reject a comment:

1. Open the topic that has pending comments.
The pending comments have the status "Waiting for approval".

Nuxeo features

[Topic](#)

[More ▾](#)

Welcome! – by jdoe 10/1/2012 2:31 PM (Published)

Welcome to the new Nuxeo features topics, where you can discuss the features of the Nuxeo Platform.

[Reply](#) | [Delete](#)

No more Preview tab? – by jsmith 10/1/2012 2:38 PM (Published)

I can't find the Preview tab. Has the feature been removed?

[Reply](#) | [Delete](#)

Re:No more Preview tab? – by jdoe 10/1/2012 3:27 PM (Published)

The tab has been replaced by an "eye" icon, in the action bar, in the top right corner of the page, below the search box.

[Reply](#) | [Delete](#)

What is ECM? – by jsmith 10/1/2012 3:42 PM (**Waiting for approval**)

What does ECM stand for?

[Delete](#) | [Approve](#) | [Reject](#)

2. Click on the **Reject** link in the top right corner of the pending comment. The comment's status is "Rejected". It is now permanently unavailable.

Nuxeo features

Topic

More

Welcome! - by jdoe 10/1/2012 2:31 PM (Published)

Welcome to the new Nuxeo features topics, where you can discuss the features of the Nuxeo Platform.

No more Preview tab? - by jsmith 10/1/2012 2:38 PM (Published)

I can't find the Preview tab. Has the feature been removed?

Re:No more Preview tab? - by jdoe 10/1/2012 3:27 PM (Published)

The tab has been replaced by an "eye" icon, in the action bar, in the top right corner of the page, below the search box.

What is ECM? - by jsmith 10/1/2012 3:42 PM (Rejected)

What does ECM stand for?

Add

Deleting a comment

Only the comment's author and the topic moderators can delete comments.

To delete a comment in a topic:

1. Open the topic.
2. Click on the **Delete** link located in the top right corner of the comment to delete. The comment is immediately and permanently deleted.

Deleting a topic

Deleting a topic means deleting its content as well.

When you delete a topic, it is definitively erased from the application.

To delete a topic:

1. In the **Forum** tab of the forum, select the topic you want to delete by checking the corresponding box.
2. Click on the **Delete** button.
A confirmation window pops up.
3. Click on the **OK** button.
The topic is moved to the forum's trash. Users can then [restore the topic](#) into the forum or [erase](#) the same way as a document in a workspace.

Related pages:

- Forums
- Managing topics
- Participating to a topic

Participating to a topic

To participate to a topic, you can add comments in it. The other users will be able to answer your comment.

Adding a comment to a topic

You must have at least writing rights to add comments on a topic.

You can attach a file to your comment, that users will be able to consult. The attached file of a comment cannot be modified or removed afterwards.

To add a comment to a topic:

1. Click on the **Topic** tab of the topic.



If the topic is empty, the form to add a comment is automatically displayed in the Topic tab.

2. Click on the **Add** button to display the form to add a comment.

Add a comment

Title *

Comment *

Attach a file ☒ None ☐ Upload

3. Type the subject and the content of your comment.
4. Attach a file to your comment (this is optional).
5. Click on the **Add** button.

The comment is displayed in the **Topic** tab.


- If the topic is not moderated, the comment has the status "Published" and all the users with access rights to the forum can read it.

 No more Preview tab? - by jdoe 10/1/2012 3:54 PM (Published)

I can't find the Preview tab. Has the feature been removed?

[Reply](#) | [Delete](#)

- If the topic is moderated, the comment has the status "Waiting for approval" and is not available in the topic. A moderator is notified that you added a comment and he or she needs to approve it so that the comment becomes available for all forum users.

 No more Preview tab? - by jsmith 10/1/2012 3:55 PM (**Waiting for approval**)

I can't find the Preview tab. Has the feature been removed?

[Delete](#)

If you are the moderator of the topic, your comment is automatically published.

Replying to a comment

You must have at least writing rights to reply to comments in a topic.

When a comment has been added, you can reply to it. The answer is inserted right after the comment it replies to.

To reply to a comment:

1. In the **Topic** tab, click on the **Reply** link displayed top right corner of the comment you want to reply to.
The reply form is displayed under the comment.
2. Fill in the form.
3. Click on the **Add** button.
The reply is inserted after the comment it replies to.

No more Preview tab? – by jsmith 10/1/2012 3:55 PM (Published)

I can't find the Preview tab. Has the feature been removed?

[Reply](#) | [Delete](#)

Re:No more Preview tab? – by jdoe 10/1/2012 3:57 PM (Published)

The tab has been replaced by an "eye" icon, in the action bar, in the top right corner of the page, below the search box (see attached screenshot).

Preview-in-5.6.png

[Reply](#) | [Delete](#)

- If the topic is not moderated, the reply has the status "Published" and all the users with access rights to the forum can read it.
- If the topic is moderated, the reply has the status "Waiting for approval" and is not available in the topic. A moderator is notified that you added a reply and he or she needs to approve it so that the reply is available for all forum users. If you are the moderator of the topic, your reply is automatically published.

Related pages:

- [Forums](#)
- [Managing topics](#)
- [Participating to a topic](#)

Pictures

Pictures are usually created in a picture book, a folder adapted to pictures, that enables you to view your pictures in a slideshow, for instance. But they can be used in regular folders and in workspaces directly.

The Document Management module of the Nuxeo Platform enables users to create pictures in a picture book, in a workspace or in a folder. Pictures have some specific features available:

- rotation,
- picture specific metadata extraction,
- different size presentation.

On this page
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Managing picture books <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Creating a picture book • Editing a picture book • Viewing the content of a picture book • Managing pictures <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Related pages • Want to customize this document?

Managing picture books

Picture books are folders adapted to hold only pictures. As so, you have some specific parameters that you need to fill in when you create a picture book.

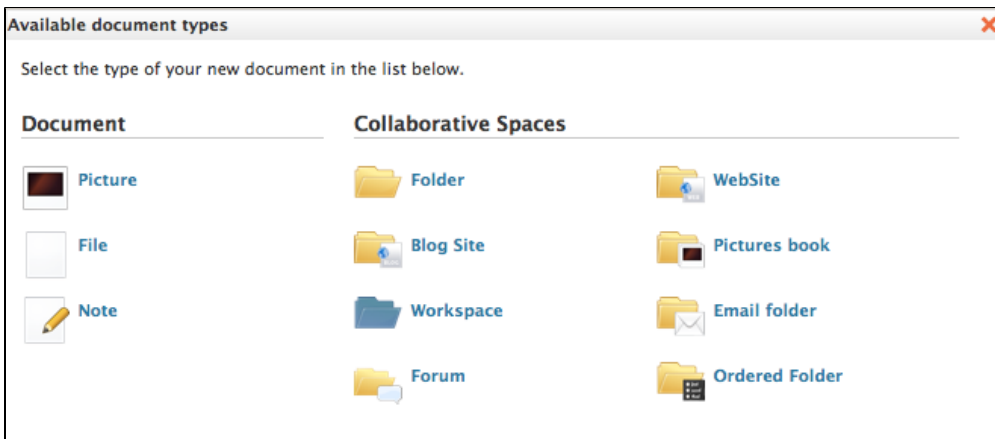
A picture book can only hold pictures and other picture books.

Creating a picture book

You need to have at least Write right to be able to create a picture book.

To create a picture book:

1. In the **Content** tab of the workspace, click on the **New Document** button.
2. On the window **Available document types**, click on the desired document.



3. Fill in the document's creation form.
4. Click on the **Create** button.

Picture book creation parameters

Field	Description
Title	Name of the picture book
Description	What the picture book is about
Slideshow duration	Time in seconds during which each picture of the pictures in the book will be displayed during the slideshow
Views	<p>Different views and formats available for the pictures available in the picture book.</p> <p>Default views available are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Thumbnail: view used for the default picture book content view, • Medium: intermediate size picture, • Original: original size picture, • OriginalJpeg: original size picture in .jpg format.

Editing a picture book

You need to have at least Write right to edit a picture book.

When you edit a picture book, you edit some of its properties: title, description and slideshow duration. You cannot edit the picture views available in the picture book.

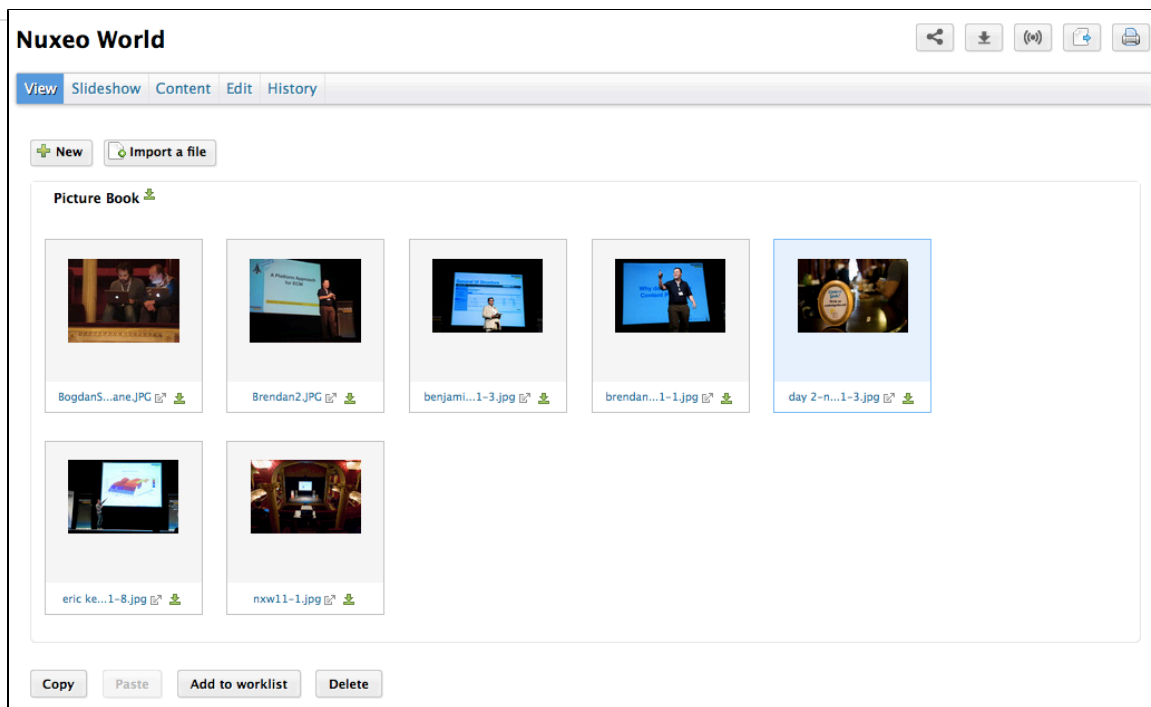
To edit a picture book:

1. Click on the **Edit** tab of the picture book.
 2. Edit the edition form's fields.
 3. Optionally type a comment to keep track of why you edited the picture book.
 4. Click on the **Save** button.
- Modifications are saved and the fact that you edited the picture book is tracked in **History** tab.

Viewing the content of a picture book

Beside the **Content** tab that enable the same features as in a workspace or a folder (selection of documents), a picture book has a **View** tab displays the book's content as thumbnails. It is the picture book's default tab. However, the regular **Content** tab used on all folderish content is available on picture book as well, to make it easy to have a synthetic view of the pictures author, versions, ect.

In the **View** tab of the picture book, click once on a picture to select it (keep CTRL touch pressed if you want to select several pictures) and click twice on it to consult it. Selected pictures are displayed on a blue background.



A **Slideshow** tab is also available on picture books, in which the pictures are displayed in a slideshow.

Managing pictures

Pictures can be created in picture book, in folders and in workspaces. You can add pictures using all document creation means:

- **New** button
- **Import a file** button
- **Drag&Drop**.

When pictures are created, the EXIF and IPTC metadata of the pictures are automatically extracted. You can consult them in the **Picture metadata** tab. EXIF and IPTC metadata are not editable.




When they are created, pictures are displayed in the **View** tab, that enables some picture management specific actions. Should the picture be wrongly oriented, you can rotate it using the right and left rotation buttons available on this tab. It is in this tab that you can see the different sizes

available for the picture (sizes available are defined for the whole picture book) and download it in the format you need. Default size is medium size.

day 2-nxw11-3.jpg

Summary Edit View Picture Metadata Publish Relations Comments History



Created by John Doe

Oct 1, 2012

VERSION 0.0

STATE

PROJECT

WORKFLOW PROCESS

No workflow process can be started on this document.

CONTRIBUTORS

John Doe

ASSOCIATED TAGS

CONTENT

Main File

day 2-nxw11-3.jpg (486 kB)

Whatever the folder they have been created in, their behaviour and the actions available are the same: you will be able to [preview](#) and [annotate](#) them, [link](#) them to other documents, [tag](#) them, [publish](#) them and subscribe to [email alerts](#). Note that workflow is not available on pictures.

Related pages

 [Digital Asset Management](#)

Want to customize this document?

No content found for label(s) override-default pictures.

Websites and blogs

The Document Management module provides additional blogs and websites documents.

[Websites](#) and [Blogs](#) are collaborative documents that are web publishing oriented. As so, they have a second interface that makes it easy to display the documents of a workspace to the public. These specific presentations are built using [Nuxeo WebEngine](#).

Websites and blogs have in common some specific behaviours, like the fact that they have some specific access rights and that comments can be moderated.

The screenshot shows a Nuxeo website interface. The header includes the Nuxeo logo and the title 'Ballet Fan'. A search bar is located in the top right. The main content area features a 'Last Blog Posts' section with a post titled 'George Balanchine Evening' by 'jdoe' from 'Monday 01 October 2012'. The post content describes an evening at the Opéra de Paris dedicated to George Balanchine, mentioning his work with Stravinsky and listing three pieces: 'Serenade', 'Agon', and 'The Prodigal Son'. A 'Remove' button is visible below the post title. On the right sidebar, there are 'Contextual links' to 'San Francisco Ballet', 'Opéra de Paris', and 'New York City Ballet', a 'Create entry' button, a 'Blog Archive' section showing '2012(1)' and 'October(1)', and buttons for 'Pages' and 'Comments'.

Websites

Websites are documents in which you can publish webpages and contextual links. To make it even easier to display your documents, they have a specific presentation, rendered using Nuxeo WebEngine.

The screenshot shows a Nuxeo website interface titled 'Nuxeo Platform Modules'. The header includes the Nuxeo logo and the title 'Nuxeo Platform Modules'. A search bar is located in the top right. The main content area features a 'Welcome to my website presenting the modules of the Nuxeo Platform.' message. Below this, there are sections for 'Contained pages' and 'Last published pages'. The 'Contained pages' section lists three items: 'Document Management remove', 'Social Collaboration remove', and 'Digital Asset Management remove'. The 'Last published pages' section lists three items: 'Social Collaboration' (01 October, jdoe | 0 comments), 'Digital Asset Management' (01 October, jdoe | 0 comments), and 'Document Management' (01 October, jdoe | 0 comments). On the left sidebar, there is a 'Menu' section with links to 'Nuxeo Platform modules', 'Document Management', 'Social Collaboration', and 'Digital Asset Management'. On the right sidebar, there are buttons for 'Add tags', 'Create page', 'Contact the author', 'Contact', 'RSS Feeds', 'Pages', and 'Comments'.

The creation of a website takes place in workspaces, in the regular Document Management interface. Content creation, edition and commenting will preferably take place in Nuxeo WebEngine interface. Website management will however take place in the Document Management interface, which is considered as the website's back-office.

Websites are accessible by a URL formed like <http://server:8080/nuxeo/site/sites/site-name>. A shortcut is also available from the top right corner of the website's "Summary" tab in the Document Management interface (website back-office).

Nuxeo Platform modules



Content Edit Preview History

New Import a file

Nuxeo Platform modules

<input type="checkbox"/>	Title	Modified	Last contributor	Version	State
<input type="checkbox"/>	Digital Asset Management	10/1/2012	John Doe		Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Document Management	10/1/2012	John Doe		Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Social Collaboration	10/1/2012	John Doe		Project

Copy Paste Add to wishlist Delete

On this page

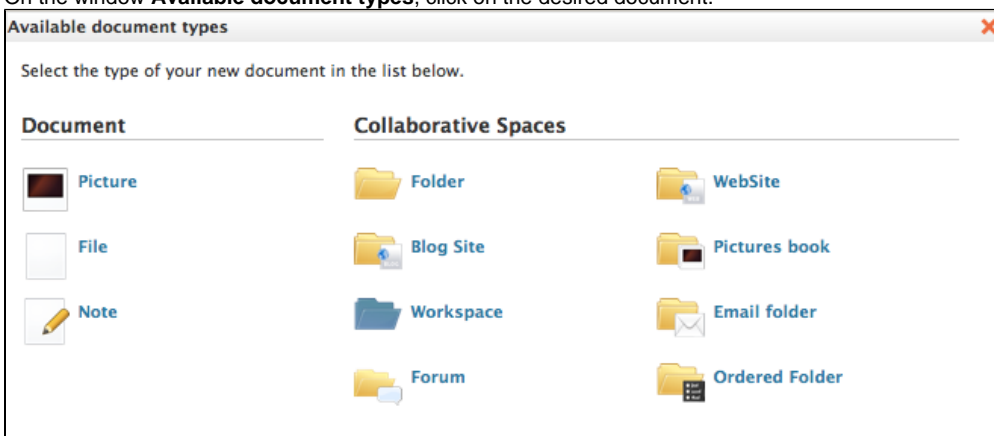
- [Creating a website](#)
- [Adding content to a website](#)
 - [Adding a webpage](#)
 - [Adding a contextual link](#)
- [Managing the access to the website](#)
 - [Related pages in this documentation](#)
 - [Customization](#)

Creating a website

Websites can be created in workspaces only. You just need to have "Write" right to be able to create a new website.

To create a website:

1. In the **Content** tab of the workspace, click on the **New Document** button.
2. On the window **Available document types**, click on the desired document.



3. Fill in the document's creation form.
4. Click on the **Create** button.

Website parameters

Field	Description
Site name	Type the name of your website. This name will be displayed on top of all website's pages.
Baseline	Type a brief description or catchphrase for your website. This baseline will be displayed on all webpages below the site's name.
Email	Type the webmaster's email address. This address will be used for the contact link.
Logo	Default logo is Nuxeo's. You can upload the logo of your choice to replace Nuxeo's logo with one adapted to your website's subject.
Welcome Text	Type a text that will be displayed on the home page of your website.

Welcome Animation/Image	You can add a swf animation or a picture on your website's home page.
Captcha	Check the box your you want users to type letters or digits from a distorted image displayed on forms, to secure content creation on your website.
Moderation Type	Select if comments posted on your website should be should be approved to be visible by user (beforehand moderation) or if they are published immediately (afterwards moderation).

Adding content to a website

In a website, you can create pages and contextual links.

Adding a webpage

Webpages can be created at the root of a website or in another page. You can create pages from the Document Management interface (which would be considered as the back-office of the website) or from the website interface.

To create a webpage:

1. In the website interface, click on the button **Create page** located in the right column.
2. Fill in the creation form:
 - Title: give your page a title
 - Description: type an optional text describing what the page is about.
 - Select the format used to present the content of the page and type the text in the editor displayed below.
 - Display this page in the webview menu: Select if you want the page to be displayed in the website menu.
3. Click on the button **Save**.
The page is created and displayed.

Adding a contextual link

Contextual links are links that are displayed from a webpage, in the right column of the website. Contextual links can only be created from the website's back-office, at the root of the application.

To create a contextual link:

1. On the **Content** tab of the website from the back-office interface, click on the **New** button.
2. On the modal window displayed, click on **Contextual link**.
3. Fill in the creation form:
 - Title: type the text on which the user will click to open the link.
 - Description: type an optional text describing why you add this link. The description is displayed on the website's interface.
 - Link: type the URL of the link.
4. Click on the button **Create**.
The link is created and its **Summary** tab is displayed.
In the website interface, the link is displayed in the right column.

Managing the access to the website

In a website, access rights can be managed on the website itself and on the webpages. The steps to grant or refuse access rights are the same as on a workspace or a folder (see [Managing access rights](#)).

However, websites have specific access rights:

- Comment
- Moderate

In a website, users with "Read" write cannot comment on pages unless they are explicitly give the right to comment.

If beforehand moderation is applied to the website, then users with "moderate" rights will have to approve comments so that they can be viewed by other users.



Users with "Write" permission can comment on pages. Comments are still submitted to moderation.
Users with "Manage everything" permission are automatically moderators.

Related pages in this documentation

- [Websites](#)
- [Blogs](#)

- Managing access rights in DAM
- Managing access rights
- Document Management concepts
- Websites and blogs

Customization

- WebEngine (JAX-RS) (Nuxeo Platform Developer Documentation - 5.6)
- WebEngine Tutorials (Nuxeo Platform Developer Documentation - 5.6)

Blogs

Along with websites, the Document Management module of the Nuxeo Platform includes blogs. Like websites, blogs are documents that make it easy to display your comments and documents, in reverse-chronological order. And like websites, they are available via a WebEngine interface, that takes into account all the characteristics of a blog.

Blogs are accessible by a URL formed like <http://server:8080/nuxeo/site/blogs/blog-name>. A shortcut is also available from the top right corner of the blog's "Summary" tab in the Document Management interface (blog back-office).

	Title	Modified	Last contributor	Version	State
<input type="checkbox"/>	George Balanchine Evening	10/1/2012	John Doe		Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	New York City Ballet	10/1/2012	John Doe		Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Opéra de Paris	10/1/2012	John Doe		Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	San Francisco Ballet	10/1/2012	John Doe		Project

On this page

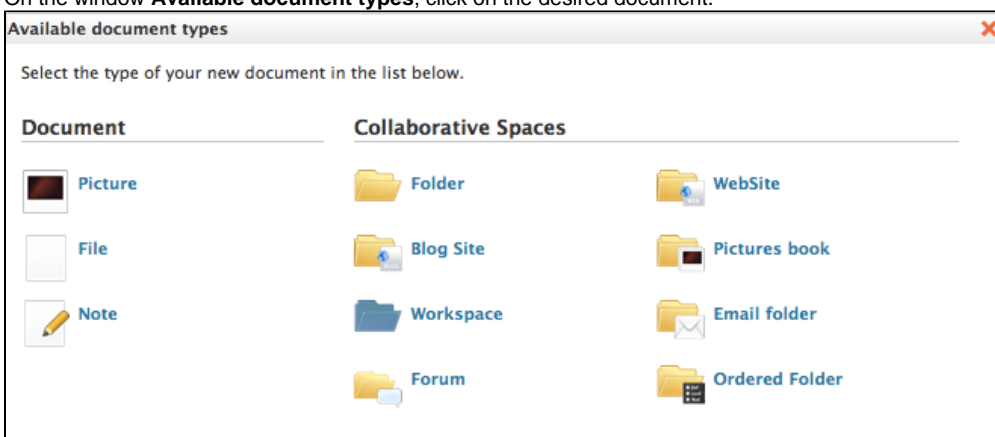
- Creating a blog
- Adding content to your blog
 - Adding a blog post
 - Adding a contextual link
 - Related pages in this documentation
 - Customization

Creating a blog

Blogs can be created in workspaces only. You just need to have "Write" right to be able to create a new blog.

To create a blog:

1. In the **Content** tab of the workspace, click on the **New Document** button.
2. On the window **Available document types**, click on the desired document.



3. Fill in the document's creation form.
4. Click on the **Create** button.

Blog parameters

Field	Description	
Blog name	Type the name of your blog. This name will be displayed on top of all blog's pages.	
Baseline	Type a brief description or catchphrase for your blog. This baseline will be displayed on all pages below the blog's name.	
Email	Type the webmaster's email address. This address will be used for the contact link.	
Logo	Default logo is Nuxeo's. You can upload the logo of your choice to replace Nuxeo's logo with one adapted to your blog's subject.	
Welcome text	Type a text that will be displayed on the home page of your blog.	
Welcome Animation/Image	You can add a SWF animation or a picture on your blog's home page.	
Captcha	Check the box your you want users to type letters or digits from a distorted image displayed on forms, to secure content creation on your blog.	
Moderation Type	Select if comments posted on your blog should be should be approved to become visible by users (beforehand moderation) or if they are published immediately (afterwards moderation).	

Adding content to your blog

In a blog, you can create blog posts and contextual links.

Adding a blog post

Blog posts are all created at the root of the blog. They are then automatically sorted by creation date in the left menu of the blog.

You need "Write" permission to be able to create blog posts. You can create them from the blog's back-office (Document Management interface)

— or from the blog's interface.

To create a blog post:

1. From the blog's homepage, click on the button **Create entry**.
2. Fill in the creation form:
 - Title: type the name of your post.
 - Description: type a text describing what the post is about.
 - Content: type the content of your post in the editor.
3. Click on the button **Save**
The post is immediately created and displayed. It is also displayed in the last blog posts.







Adding a contextual link

Contextual links are links displayed on the blog's home page.
They can be added from the blog's back-office only.



To add a contextual link:

1. On the **Content** tab of the blog from the back-office interface, click on the **New** button.
2. On the modal window displayed, click on **Contextual link**.
3. Fill in the creation form:
 - Title: type the text on which the user will click to open the link.
 - Description: type an optional text describing why you add this link. The description is displayed on the blog's interface.
 - Link: type the URL of the link.
4. Click on the button **Create**.
The link is created and its **Summary** tab is displayed.
In the blog's interface, the link is displayed in the right column.

Related pages in this documentation

-  [Websites](#)
-  [Blogs](#)
-  [Managing access rights in DAM](#)
-  [Managing access rights](#)
-  [Document Management concepts](#)
-  [Websites and blogs](#)

Customization

-  [WebEngine \(JAX-RS\)](#) (Nuxeo Platform Developer Documentation - 5.6)
-  [WebEngine Tutorials](#) (Nuxeo Platform Developer Documentation - 5.6)

Email folders


Email folders are folders in which you can fetch emails to store and share them in your Nuxeo application.

The email folder is not intended to be a webmail. It will fetch the unread emails on your email server either when you manually trigger the fetch from Nuxeo interface or automatically at regular intervals. When emails are imported in Nuxeo, some metadata are automatically extracted from the email:

- Subject
- Sender
- Sending date
- Recipients
- CC Recipients
- Text: content of the email
- Attachments

On this page:

- [Creating an email folder](#)
- [Fetching emails](#)
 - [Customization](#)

 The emails imported in the email folder cannot be modified in Nuxeo.

Creating an email folder

To create an email folder

1. In a workspace, click on the **New** button.
2. In the modal window displayed, click on **Email folder**
The email folder creation form is displayed.
3. Fill in the creation form (see parameters below) and click on the **OK** button.
The **Content** tab of the email folder is displayed.

You can now fetch emails.

Email folder parameters

Field	Description
Title	Name of your email folder
Email	Email address of the account from which the emails will be fetched.
Password	Password of the email account from which the emails will be fetched.
Protocol	Select the receive protocol used for the email account.
Host	Type the name of the host of the email account.
Port	Type the port number.\ Default value is 993, which should be ok in most cases. Check with your administrator if this value should be changed.
Socket factory fallback	Default value is set to "Yes". This parameter sets the behaviour in case the socket used to connect the Nuxeo server to the email server fails to be created using the implemented socket factory.
Socket factory port	Port used to connect the Nuxeo server to the email server. Default value is set to 993.
Start TLS (IMAP)	Default value is set to "Yes" to secure exchanges with the email server.
SSL protocols (IMAP)	Default value is "SSL". You can add other protocols, separated by whitespace.
Limit of new fetched emails	Indicate the maximum number of emails to be fetched at the same time.

The actions available on an email folder are:

- Edit the folder (see parameters above),
- Subscribe to [alerts](#),
- [Manage the access](#) to the folder,
- [Manage the trash](#) of the folder.

Fetching emails

To fetch emails:

1. In your email client, mark the emails you want to fetch as unread.
2. In Nuxeo, open the email folder.
The **Content** tab is displayed.
3. Click on the **Check email** button.
The unread emails are imported in the email folders.

Project A Official Emails

Content

Edit

Alerts

History

Manage

Check email

1/4

Subject: Re: Mockups

Sending date: 1/12/2012 6:59 PM

From: John Smith To: John Doe

Hi John, Thanks for the mockups. Here are some comments. On the anonymous screen, I'm n...

Subject: Mockups

Sending date: 1/9/2012 12:41 PM

From: John Doe To: John Smith

Hello John, Here are the mockups provided by the client for the new feature. Let me know if y...

Attachments

Screen-anonymous.png (0 B)

Screen-logged-in-user.png (0 B)

Creation-form.png (0 B)

Edition-form.png (0 B)

- To open a mail, click on its subject.

Mockups

Summary

Alerts

Comments

History

Manage

Content

Attachments

Screen-anonymous.png (40 kB)

Screen-logged-in-user.png (21 kB)

Creation-form.png (15 kB)

Edition-form.png (22 kB)

Metadata

Subject

Mockups

Sender

John Doe <jdoe@mycompany.com>

Sending date

1/9/2012 12:41 PM

Recipients

John Smith <jsmith@mycompany.com>

CC recipients

State

In progress

Version

1.1+

This document is **unlocked** | [Lock](#)

[Add to worklist](#)

Associated tags

[Add tags](#)

Emails cannot be edited, but you can [comment](#) and [annotate](#) them, [link](#) them to other documents and [follow the email folder's activity](#).

Customization

No content found for label(s) override-default.

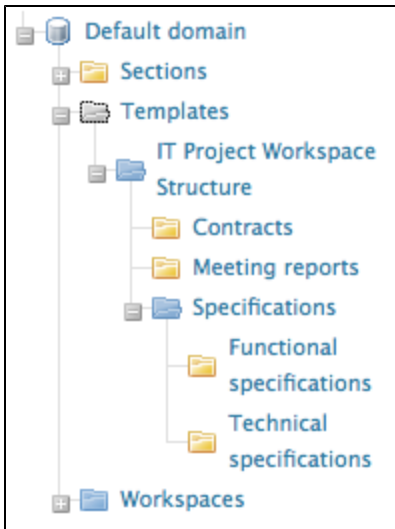
Using Workspace Templates

Templates are the easiest way to automate the creation of workspace tree structures. This is useful in many cases, for example when:

- you have many workspaces to create and want them to follow a certain structure of Folders, Files, or any type of documents (Forum, Blog, etc).
- you want to keep a consistency among different workspaces that users will create. For example, you may want each team's workspace to have a mail folder, a "projects" workspace, etc.

To create a template:

- Click on the left panel of Nuxeo DM on **Templates**.



2. From there, you can create a new Template containing any type of document, and even files, with the tree structure you want.
3. Once a new Template has been created, you can [create many workspaces from this template](#).



Templates and User Rights Management

- When you set access rights on the 1st-level workspace of a template - here mySampleStructure-, it will be inherited in the new workspaces. For example, a user who is not allowed to read "mySampleStructure" will not be able to see it when creating a workspace.
 - When you set access rights on the content of a workspace in a template, it won't be inherited in the new workspaces. For example, a user who can't read a folder like "SampleFolder" in a workspace but have reading access on the 1st-level workspace, will be allowed to see "SampleFolder"
- In a few words, don't try to manage workspaces' access rights with Templates (this can be done other ways, like using [Studio c](#) onfiguration tool).

Exporting documents


Users can export documents on their computer. It is possible to export:

- one document at a time,
- a selection of documents,
- an entire workspace, folder, section.

There are several types of export:

- the **zip export** enables users to get a zipped folder with the documents' main attachment (.pdf, .doc files);
- the **XML export** is a low level export that enables users to either get the XML definition of the document or get a folder for each exported document that contains:
 - a document.xml file holding the document's metadata and various information such as the applied access rights,
 - a .blob file that holds the binary content of the document. This blob is referenced in the document.xml file;
- the **PDF export** enables users to have a view of the main information on the document;
- the **Excel export** enables users to save the table that displays the content of a workspace or content.

Export is available from:

- the worklist
- the Export options page, available by clicking the icon  below the search box, or the **More** menu.

On this page

- Exporting attachments
 - Exporting a document's attachments
 - Exporting the attachments of a document selection
 - Exporting the content of a workspace
- Exporting the list of documents a folder
- Low-level exports
 - XML export of a single document
 - XML export of a document selection
 - XML export of a folder


Exporting attachments

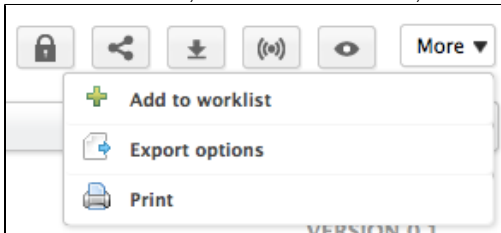
Users can easily export the attachments of a document or of a selection of documents, i.e. their main file and the additional attachments added from the **Files** tab of the documents.

Exporting a document's attachments

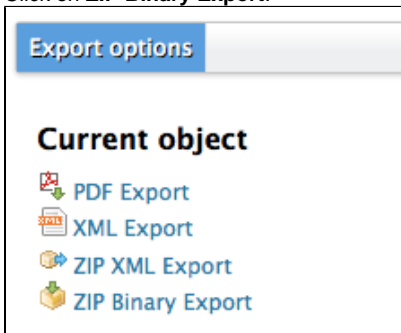
When you are on a document and you want to get its attached files, you can export them in a zipped folder.

To export the attachments of a document:

1. From the document, click on the icon  or, if the icon is not available on the action bar, on the **Export options** entry of the **More** menu.



2. Click on **ZIP Binary Export**.



You are proposed to save a "clipboard.zip" file on your computer.

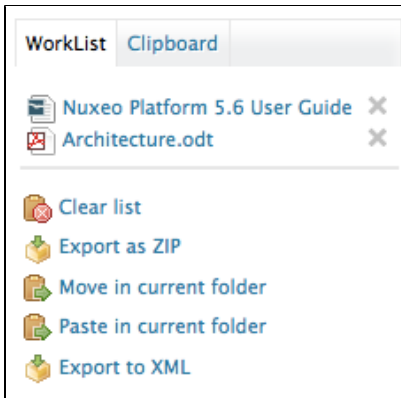
3. Save it.
When you unzip it, you get the document's attachments and an INDEX.txt file that summarizes the content of the export.

Exporting the attachments of a document selection

You can export the attachments of several documents at the same time, using the worklist.

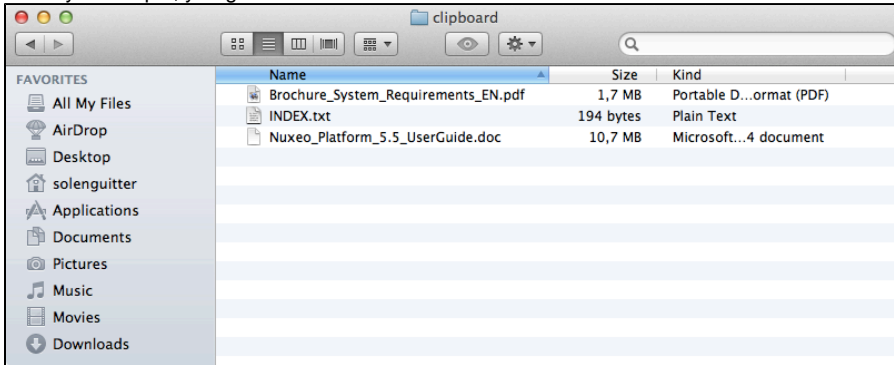
To export a selection of documents:

1. Check the box that corresponds to the documents to export to select it.
2. Click on the **Add to worklist** button.
The documents are added to your worklist, in the left part of the screen.



3. Optionally go in other folders and add other documents to your worklist.
4. In the worklist, click on the **Export as ZIP** link.
5. Save the "Clipboard.zip" folder.


When you unzip it, you get the documents' attachments and an INDEX.txt file that summarizes the content of the export.

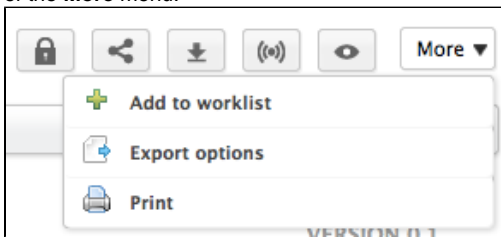


Exporting the content of a workspace

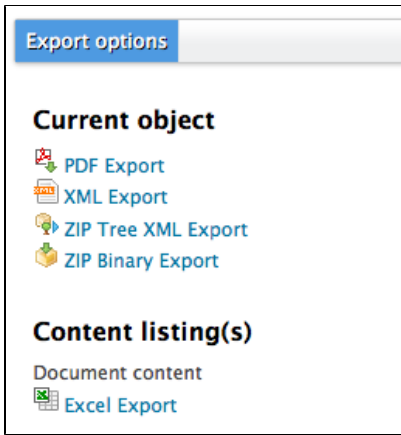
Just like you can export a selection of documents, you can easily export the content of a workspace, folder, section. In that case, the zipped folder you get recreates the structure of the exported space: workspaces and folders are exported as folders, in which you have the documents' attachments.

To export the content of a workspace:

1. From the workspace, folder or section, click on the icon  or, if the icon is not available on the action bar, on the **Export options** entry of the **More** menu.



2. Click on **ZIP Binary Export**.



You are proposed to save a "clipboard.zip" file on your computer.

3. Save it.


When you unzip it, you get a folder that represents the Nuxeo space structure and documents' attachments and an INDEX.txt file that summarizes the content structure of the export.

Exporting the list of documents a folder

Just like it is possible to [export search results](#), it is possible to export the list of documents in a workspace, section or folder. You can either use the Excel or the PDF export:


- the Excel export enables you to get the list of documents inside the folder in an Excel table,
- the PDF export enables you to get the folder metadata and history in addition to the list of documents.

To export the list of documents of a space in an Excel file:


Click on the icon  displayed in the top right corner of the **Content** tab of the workspace, folder or section.

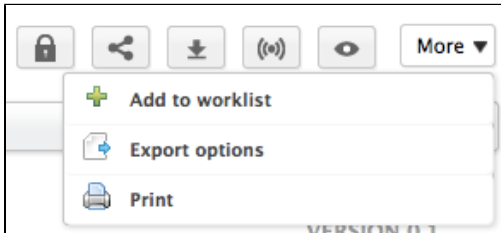
You are proposed to save a "document_content.xls" file, that displays the same information on the folder's documents as in the **Content** tab.



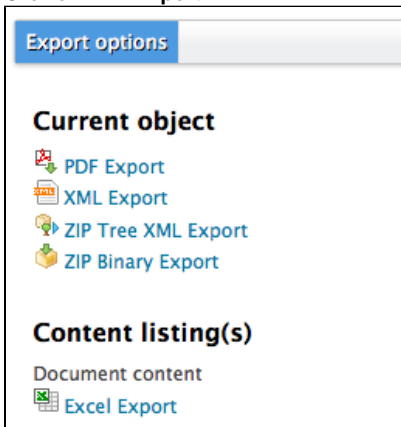
The Excel export is also available from the **Export options** page, by clicking the icon  or the **Export options** entry of the **More** menu.

To export the list of documents of a space in an PDF file:

1. From the workspace, folder or section, click on the icon  or, if the icon is not available on the action bar, on the **Export options** entry of the **More** menu.



2. Click on **PDF Export**.



The PDF view of the page opens in a new tab. It displays:

- the metadata of the folder,
- its history,
- its content list.

Low-level exports

XML export is a low level that enables users to get a set of information on documents in an XML file. This export type is useful for debugging, and as such, is mainly intended to administrators. You can export:


- a single document,
- a selection of documents,
- the structure of a folder.

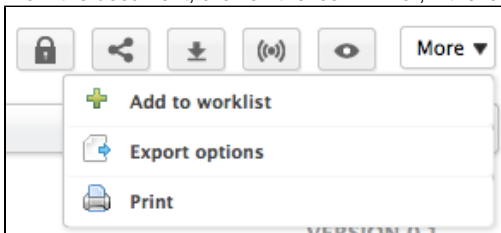
XML export of a single document

The XML export of a document enables users to get a folder for the exported document that contains:

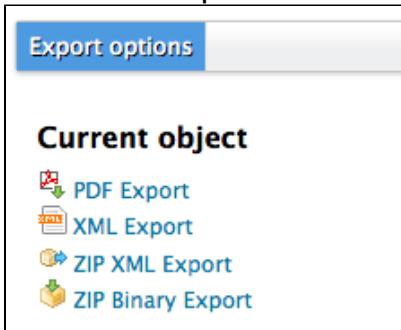
- a document.xml file holding the document's various information (the applied access rights, the document's metadata, its path),
- a .blob file that holds the binary content of the document. This blob is referenced in the document.xml file.

To get the XML export of a document:

1. From the document, click on the icon  or, if the icon is not available on the action bar, on the **Export options** entry of the **More** menu.



2. Click on **ZIP XML Export**.

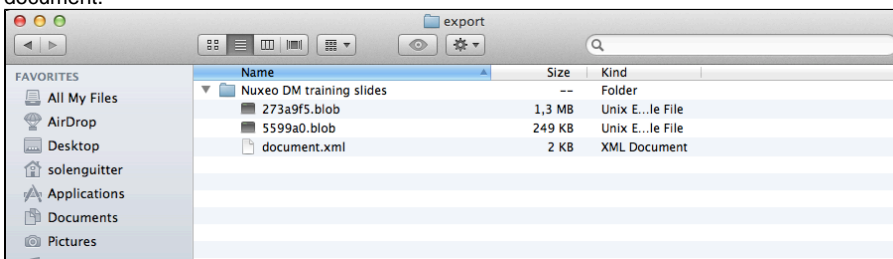


You are proposed to save a "export.zip" file on your computer.



If you're only interested in the XML file of the document, click on **XML Export**. The XML file should open in a new tab or window (depending on your browser's preferences).

3. Save the "export.zip" file.
When you unzip it, you get a folder named from the document, that contains a document.xml file and .blob for each attachment of the document.



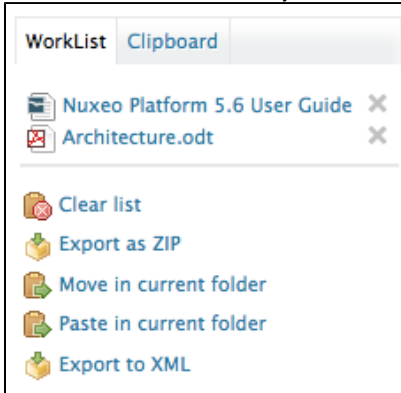
XML export of a document selection

It is possible to do an XML export of several documents in a single export, using the Worklist.

To export a selection of documents:

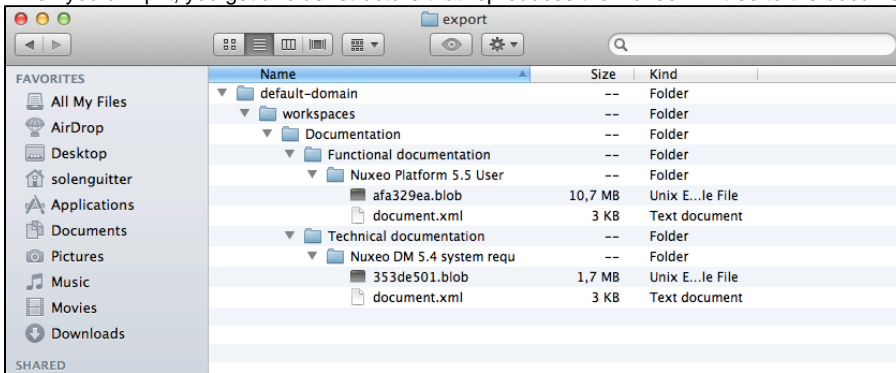
1. Check the box that corresponds to the documents to export to select it.
2. Click on the **Add to worklist** button.

The documents are added to your worklist, in the left part of the screen.



3. Optionally go in other folders and add other documents to your worklist.
4. In the worklist, click on the **Export to XML** link.
5. Save the "export.zip" folder.


When you unzip it, you get a folder structure that reproduces the Nuxeo DM tree to the document.

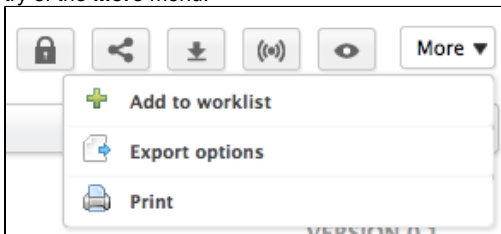


XML export of a folder

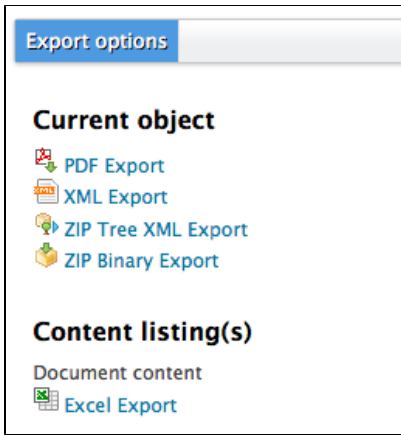
It is possible to export a whole workspace, section or folder in a zipped XML folder. This specific export enables users to import the folder back, with the same access rights definition.

To get the XML export of a folder:

1. From the folder (or workspace or section), click on the icon  or, if the icon is not available on the action bar, on the **Export options** entry of the **More** menu.



2. Click on **ZIP Tree XML Export**.



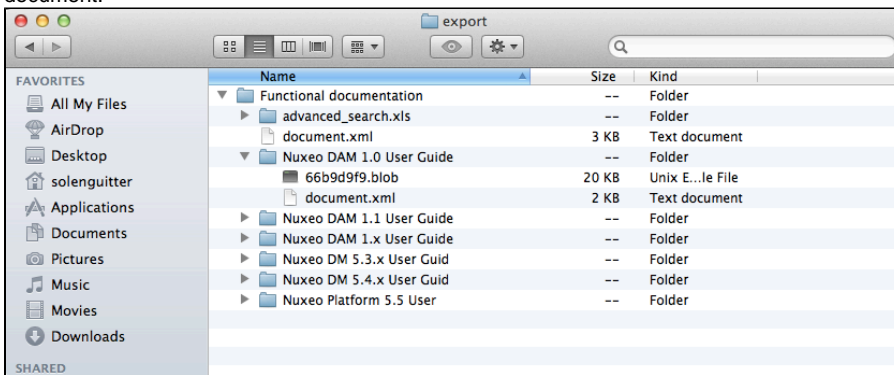
You are proposed to save a "export.zip" file on your computer.



If you're only interested in the XML definition of the folder, click on **XML Export**. The XML file should open in a new tab or window (depending on your browser's preferences).

3. Save the "export.zip" file.

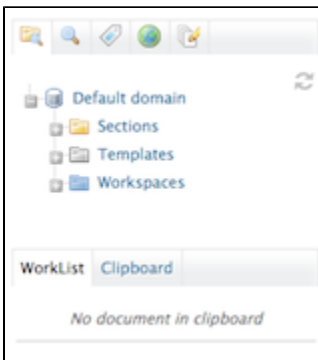
When you unzip it, you get a folder named from the document, that contains a document.xml file and .blob for each attachment of the document.



Copying and moving documents

Copying and moving documents requires to have at least Read right on the original document and Write right in the target workspace. Copy and move are possible in workspaces and workspaces templates. To copy a document in a section you need to [publish](#) it the new section. To move it from a section to another, you need to [unpublish](#) it from the first section and [publish](#) it in the second one.

Copying and Moving are done using the clipboard and worklist, which are located in the left part of the screen, below the navigation tree.



In this section

- [Clipboard? Worklist?](#)
- [Copying documents](#)
 - [Copying documents from the same workspace](#)
 - [Copying documents from different workspaces](#)
- [Moving documents](#)
 - [Moving documents from the same workspace](#)
 - [Moving documents from several workspaces](#)
- [Related sections in this documentation](#)

Clipboard? Worklist?

What is the difference between the clipboard and the worklist?

Both are used to select documents and apply actions on these documents. Possible actions are:

- copy
- move
- export

There are two differences between the clipboard and the worklist:

- the clipboard is a one-shot selection: when you select one or several documents and add them to the clipboard, it replaces the previous selection. On the contrary, putting documents to the worklist adds them to the existing selection.
- the worklist content is kept when you log out: your selection is still available when you log back in, until you remove documents from the worklist. The clipboard selection is lost when you log out.

Copying documents

There are two ways to copy documents:

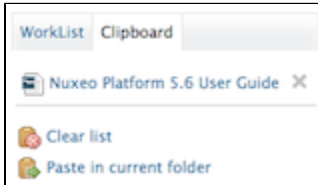
- if you need to copy only one document or documents from the same workspace, use the clipboard;
- if you need to copy several documents from different workspaces, use the worklist.

Copying documents from the same workspace

To copy one documents or several documents from a single workspace at the same time:

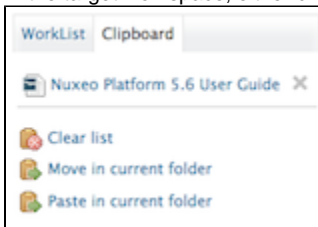
1. In the workspace **Content** tab, check the box(es) corresponding to the document(s) you want to copy.
2. Click on the **Copy** button below the table.

The selected documents are added to the clipboard, which is displayed instead of the worklist.

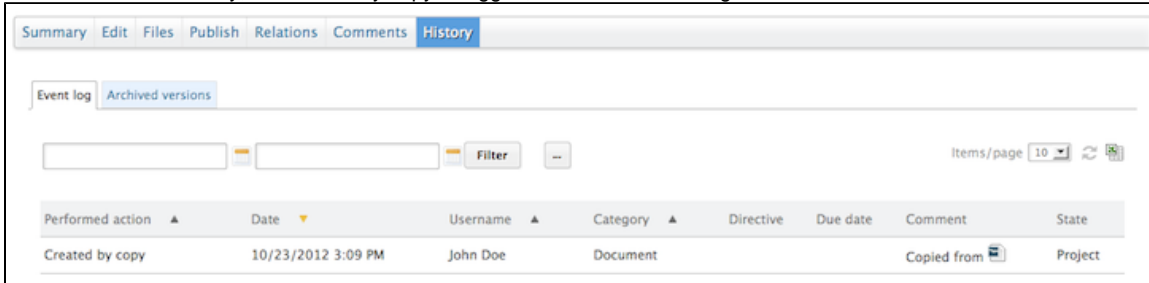


A **Paste in current folder** action is immediately available, so you duplicate the document in the current workspace.

3. Go to the workspace where you want to copy the document(s).
4. In the target workspace, either click on the **Paste** button in the **Content** tab or the **Paste in current folder** link in the clipboard.



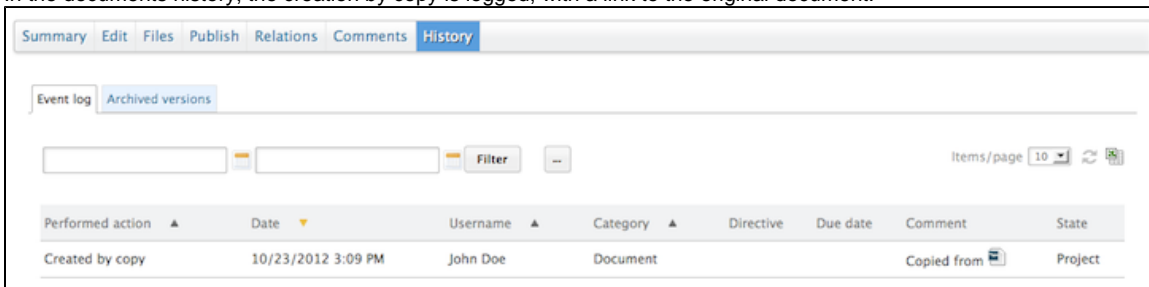
A new document is created in the current workspace, that has the same title as the original document. In the document's history, its creation by copy is logged, with a link to the original document.



Copying documents from different workspaces

You can paste documents from different workspaces at the same time. To do that, you need to add documents to your worklist instead of copying them.

1. Go in a workspace.
2. In the first workspace **Content** tab, check the box(es) corresponding to the document(s) you want to copy.
3. Click on the **Add to worklist** button below the table.
The selected documents are added to the worklist.
A **Paste in current folder** action is immediately available, so you duplicate the documents in the current workspace.
4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 as many times as you need.
5. When you have added all the documents you need to your worklist, go in the workspace where you want to paste the documents.
6. Either click on the **Paste** button in the **Content** tab or the **Paste in current folder** link in the worklist.
Documents are created in the current workspace, that have the same title as the original documents.
In the documents history, the creation by copy is logged, with a link to the original document.

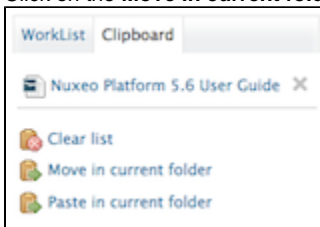


Moving documents

Moving documents from the same workspace

To move one documents or several documents from a single workspace at the same time, you can use either the clipboard or the worklist. Steps are given here to use the clipboard.

1. In the workspace **Content** tab, check the box(es) corresponding to the document(s) you want to move.
2. Click on the **Copy** button below the table.
The selected documents are added to the clipboard, which is displayed instead of the worklist.
3. Go to the workspace where you want to move the document(s).
4. Click on the **Move in current folder** link in the clipboard.



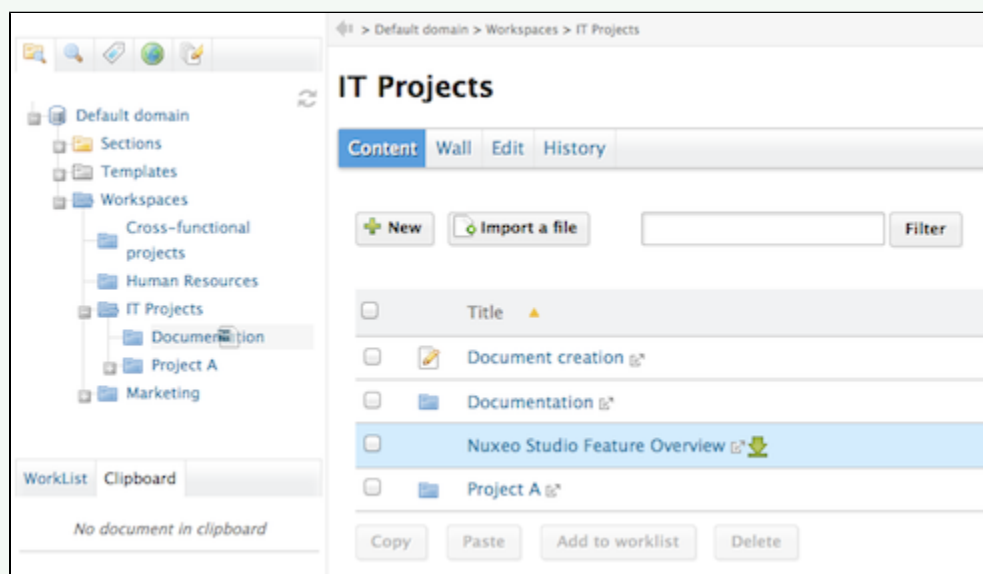
The documents are now available from this workspace. They are not available anymore from the other workspace. The Move action is logged in the documents history, with a link to the original workspace.

Summary Edit Files Publish Relations Comments History							
Event log Archived versions							
<input type="text"/> <input type="text"/> Filter <input type="button" value=""/>							
Items/page 10 <input type="button" value=""/>							
1/2							
Performed action	Date	Username	Category	Directive	Due date	Comment	State
Move	10/23/2012 6:25 PM	John Doe	Document			Moved from	Project
Modification	10/4/2012 11:49 AM	John Doe	Document				Project
Modification	10/1/2012 10:50 AM	system	Document				Project



Moving using drag and drop

You can also move documents one by one by dragging their icon from the **Content** tab to the target workspace in the navigation tree.



Moving documents from several workspaces

To move several documents from different workspaces at the same time:

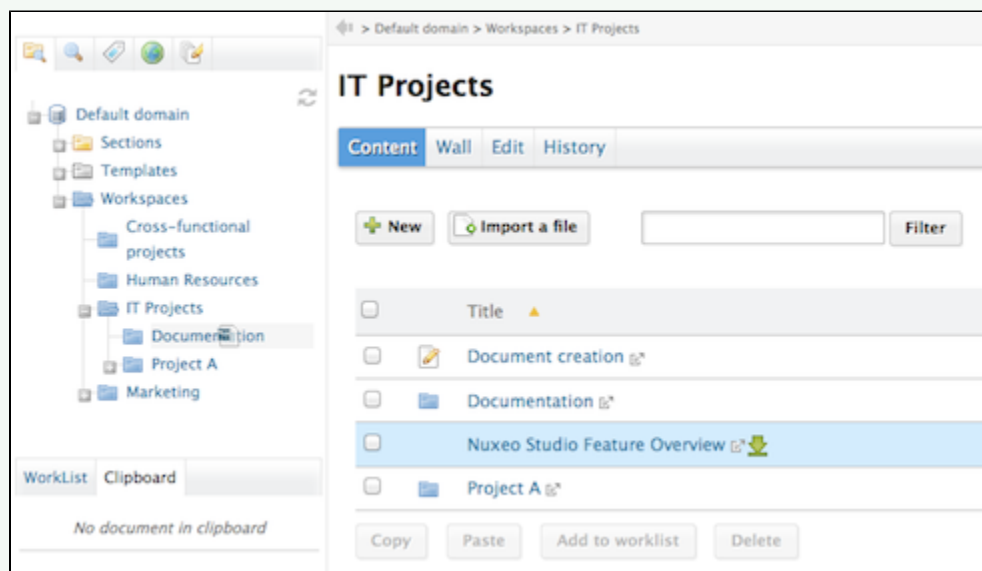
1. Go in a workspace.
2. In the first workspace **Content** tab, check the box(es) corresponding to the document(s) you want to move.
3. Click on the **Add to worklist** button below the table.
The selected documents are added to the worklist.
4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 as many times as you need.
5. Go to the workspace where you want to move the document(s).
6. Click on the **Move in current folder** link in the worklist.
The documents are now available from this workspace. They are not available anymore from the other workspaces. The Move action is logged in the documents history, with a link to the original workspace.

Summary Edit Files Publish Relations Comments History							
Event log		Archived versions					
				Filter			
					Items/page 10		
				1/2			
Performed action	Date	Username	Category	Directive	Due date	Comment	State
Move	10/23/2012 6:25 PM	John Doe	Document			Moved from	Project
Modification	10/4/2012 11:49 AM	John Doe	Document				Project
Modification	10/1/2012 10:50 AM	system	Document				Project



Moving using drag and drop

You can also move documents one by one by dragging their icon from the **Content** tab to the target workspace in the navigation tree.



Related sections in this documentation



Exporting documents



Nuxeo Diff

Working in sections

When a document is finished and ready for distribution, you must publish it in a section. Sections are spaces dedicated to the distribution of documents to a wider audience.

Sections are spaces that are managed like workspaces. Like for workspaces, there is no section that is automatically created by default, except for the sections root. You are free to organize your section the way it fits your needs or your project the best. The section tree is completely independent from workspaces. Their structure is not linked. Still, you can guide users as to where they should publish documents from a specific workspace using the [publication targets](#).

As in workspaces, the access to sections is determined by [access rights](#).

The main difference with workspaces is the fact that documents can't be edited in sections. The only actions available on published documents are:

- [relations actions](#),
- [annotation actions](#),
- [tagging](#),
- [alerts](#).

Publishing a document means publishing the version of the document as it is at the time of publication. If you modify the document in the workspace once published, it is not modified in the section. The workspace document can be deleted without the published document to be affected: section readers will still be able to consult the published document, comment it, etc.

Published documents are for consultation only and cannot be modified. If you want to modify a published document, you must modify it in the workspace and then publish the modified version of the document.

When you want to publish a document, you need to submit it to publishing. When the document is submitted to publication, the section's managers can approve the publication submission, that is to say publish the document, or reject it. In that last case, the document is not available in the section. However, it is still available in the workspace. You can modify it and submit it again.

Publishing documents

When you want to publish a document, you need to submit it to publishing. When the document is submitted to publication, the section's managers can approve the publication submission, that is to say publish the document, or reject it. In that last case, the document is not available in the section. However, it is still available in the workspace. You can modify it and submit it again.

When you publish a document, the following elements are kept from the workspace document:

- The metadata,
- All attachments,
- The document history (Event log tab only).

The following elements are not available on the published document:

- The comments,
- The relations,



It is possible to [enable the duplication of relations](#) when the document is published.

- The tags,
- The archived versions of the document.

On this page

- [Submitting a document to publishing](#)
- [Approving document publishing](#)
- [Rejecting document publishing](#)
- [Unpublishing documents](#)

Submitting a document to publishing

Only users with writing or management rights in the workspace can submit a document to publication.

You can submit a document in several sections. The publishing workflows in the different sections are independent. The document can be published in a section and rejected in another one. The list of the sections in which you can publish a document is defined by your access rights. You can submit a document in sections in which you have at least reading rights.

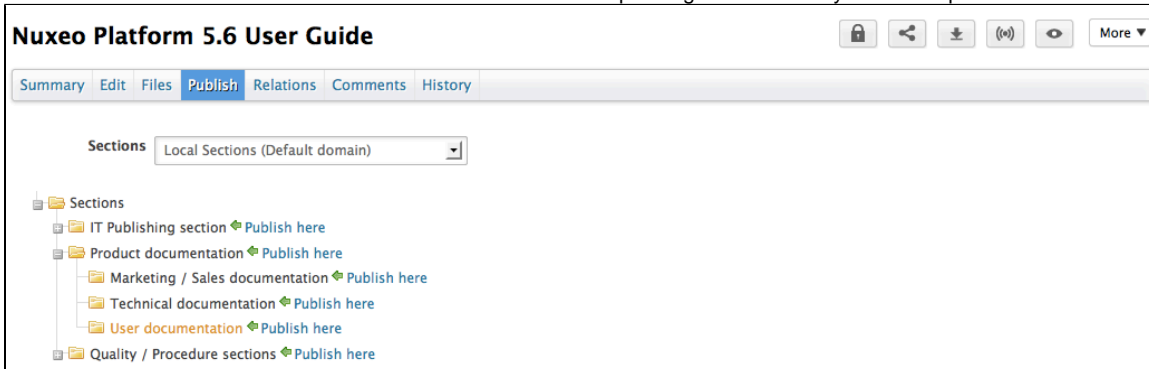
To submit a document to publishing:

1. In the workspace, open the document to publish.
2. Click on the **Publish** tab.
3. Use the drop down list to select the domain you want to publish the document in.



If you use only the default domain, the domain is selected by default.

4. Unfold the sections tree and click on the **Publish here** link corresponding to the section you want to publish the document in.



The version number of the submitted document is indicated in the publication form.

Nuxeo Platform 5.6 User Guide

Summary Edit Files **Publish** Relations Comments History

Sections: Local Sections (Default domain)

- Sections
 - IT Publishing section [Publish here](#)
 - Product documentation [Publish here](#)
 - Marketing / Sales documentation [Publish here](#)
 - Technical documentation [Publish here](#)
 - User documentation [Publish here](#)
 - Quality / Procedure sections [Publish here](#)

Title	Current version	Action
Default domain>Sections>Product documentation>User documentation	0.1	

The document is available in the section for users with write and management rights only. It is also displayed in their dashboard as a pending document. The document must be approved to be available to all section readers.



If you have write or management rights in the selected section, the document is automatically published. It doesn't need to be approved.

In the workspace, the document's minor version is automatically incremented.

Approving document publishing

Users with write and management rights in the section can approve the publishing of a document.

When a document is submitted to publication in a section in which you have management rights, it is displayed in your dashboard. You must then approve or reject the document.

To publish a document:

1. Click on the **Home** main tab.

The **Dashboard** tab is automatically selected. The pending documents are displayed in your tasks.

Task Name	Title	Directive	Comment	Due date	Start Date
Publish document	Nuxeo Platform 5.6 User Guide	Publish document			10/04/2012 11:23

2. Click on the pending document.

The document opens in the section on its **Summary** tab. It has a **Publishing** part that has a **Reject** and a **Publish** buttons.

Nuxeo Platform 5.6 User Guide

More

Summary

Relations

History

Manage

CONTENT

Main File

NuxeoPlatform-5.6-UserGuide.odt (115 kB)

Created by John Doe

Sep 19, 2012

VERSION 0.1

STATE

PROJECT

WORKFLOW PROCESS

No workflow process can be started on this document.

CONTRIBUTORS

John Doe

ASSOCIATED TAGS

Publication

This document is waiting for a publication approval

Comment *

Approve

Reject

Local Sections (Default domain)

Only users with write or management rights can see the pending document in the section.

- Type a comment (optional).
- Click on the **Publish** button.

The document is now available to all the users who can access the section.

User documentation

Content

History

Filter

--

Items/page 20

<input type="checkbox"/>	Title	Modified	Last contributor	Version	State
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo Platform 5.6 User Guide	10/1/2012	John Doe	0.1	Project

Delete

Unpublish

Rejecting document publishing

Only users with write and management rights in the section can reject the publishing of a document.

When a document is submitted to publication in your section, you must decide if it can be published in it. If you think that the document is not ready for publication or that it shouldn't be published in this section, you must reject it.



Only users with write and management rights can see the pending document in the section.

To reject a document:

- Click on the **Home** main tab.

The **Dashboard** tab is automatically selected. The pending documents are displayed in your tasks.

My Tasks

Task Name	Title	Directive	Comment	Due date	Start Date
Publish document	Nuxeo Platform 5.6 User Guide	Publish document		10/04/2012 11:23	

- Click on the pending document.
The document opens in the section. It has a **Publishing** part that has a **Reject** and a **Publish** buttons.
- Type a comment explaining why you reject the document publication. This comment is mandatory to reject the document publishing.

Nuxeo Platform 5.6 User Guide

More

Summary

Relations

History

Manage

CONTENT

Main File

NuxeoPlatform-5.6-UserGuide.odt (115 kB)

Created by John Doe

Sep 19, 2012

VERSION 0.1

STATE

PROJECT

WORKFLOW PROCESS

No workflow process can be started on this document.

CONTRIBUTORS

John Doe

ASSOCIATED TAGS

Publication

This document is waiting for a publication approval

This shouldn't be published in this section.

Comment *

Approve

Reject

- Click on the **Reject** button.

The document is not published and is deleted from section content. You are redirected on the **Content** tab of the section. In the workspace, the fact that publishing was rejected is logged in the History of the document.

Nuxeo Platform 5.6 User Guide

More

Summary

Edit

Files

Publish

Relations

Comments

History

Manage

Event log

Archived versions

Filter

Items/page 10

1/2

Performed action	Date	Username	Category	Directive	Due date	Comment	State
Publication rejected	10/4/2012 11:56 AM	Administrator	Document			Publication rejected in /default-domain/sections/Product documentation/Technical documentation (DefaultSectionsTree-default-domain) with comment -- This shouldn't be published in this section.	Project
Publication rejected	10/4/2012 11:56 AM	Administrator	Document			This shouldn't be published in this section.	Project
Publication waiting	10/4/2012 11:54 AM	John Doe	Document			Publication waiting in /default-domain/sections/Product documentation/Technical documentation (DefaultSectionsTree-default-domain)	Project

Unpublishing documents

Only users with writing or management rights can unpublish a document from a section.

When a document is obsolete or inaccurate, it shouldn't be available in sections anymore. You have to unpublish it so section readers do not have access to the document.

Unpublishing a document deletes the document from the section, but it does not delete the workspace document.

To unpublish a document from a section:

- In the **Content** tab of the section, check the box in front of the document's name.



- Click on the **Unpublish** button.
The document is unpublished and does not appear in the section. The original document in the workspace is not deleted.

Related pages

- [Setting publication targets](#)
- [Publishing documents](#)

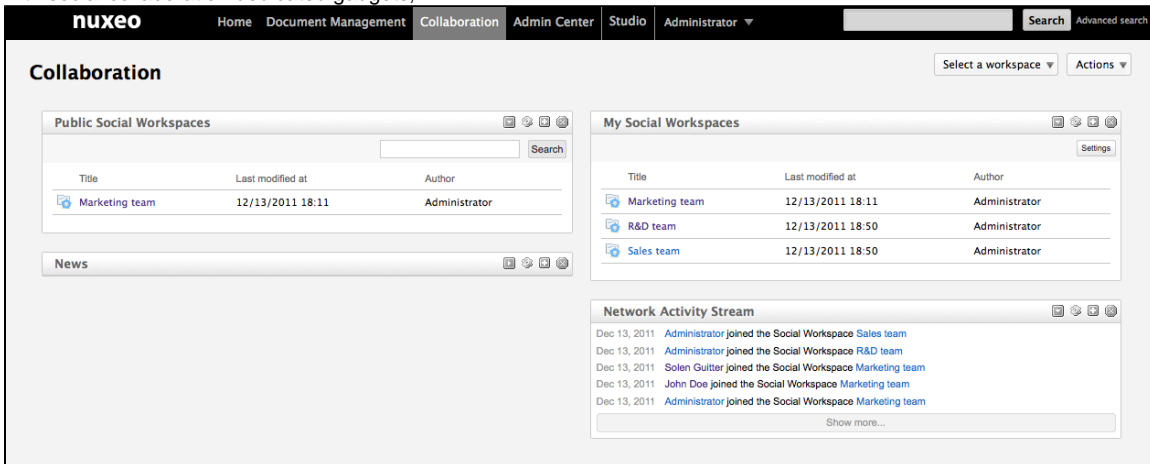
Social Collaboration

The Social Collaboration module is a user centric and subject centric view of your Nuxeo application, with extended collaboration and social features such as relations, activity stream, mini-messages, rich user profile, etc.

Social Collaboration is a module that you can decide to use or not, either when installing Nuxeo 5.5, or afterwards, using the Marketplace package.

The Social Collaboration module adds the following features to a document management application:

- social workspaces**, with **articles** and **news** documents, a dedicated tab and new dashboards with social collaboration dedicated gadgets,



- rich user profile**, with a summary of the user's activities,

The screenshot shows the Nuxeo user profile for John Doe. The left sidebar contains navigation links: Dashboard, Profile, Network, Activity Stream, Preferences, Mini Messages, Alerts, Authorized Applications, and Groups. The main content area displays the user's profile information, including Username (jdoe), First name (John), Last name (Doe), Company (My company), Email (jdoe@mycompany.com), Groups for this user (Members group), Virtual groups for this user, Avatar, Birth date (6/3/1978), Phone number, Gender (Male), and Public profile (Yes). On the right, there are sections for 'USER NETWORK' showing John's network (Solen Guitter, John Smith) and 'MINI MESSAGES' showing a list of messages from John Doe, including announcements about Nuxeo Platform 5.6 and documentation updates.

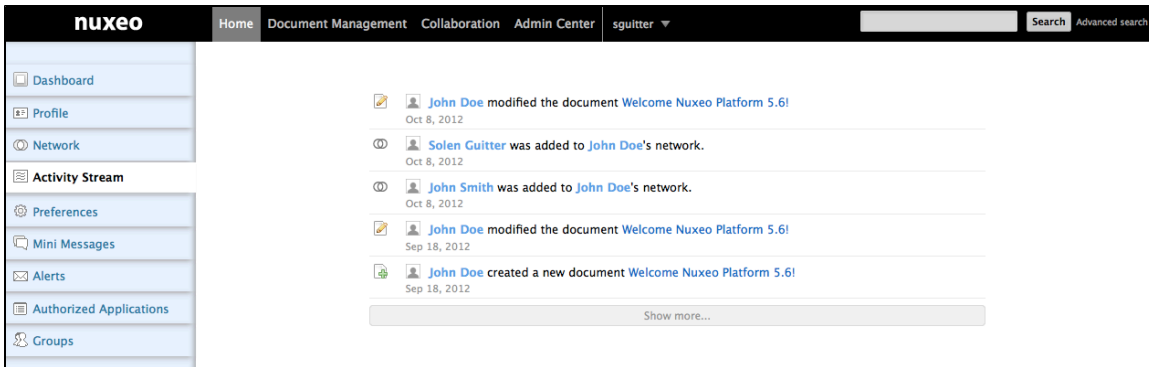
- user's network, ie all the relationships of the user

The screenshot shows the Nuxeo user network page for John Doe. The left sidebar is the same as the profile page. The main content area is divided into two sections: 'Search for contacts' and 'Network'. The 'Search for contacts' section has a search bar with 'guitter' entered, a 'Search' button, and a 'Clear' button. Below the search bar, there is a list of contacts, including Solen Guitter, with an 'Add' button. The 'Network' section shows a list of contacts, including John Smith, with a 'Modify' button. The 'Network' section also displays a message: 'John is in your network: coworkers'.

- mini-messages for micro-blogging,

The screenshot shows the Nuxeo mini-messages page for John Doe. The left sidebar is the same as the profile page. The main content area features a large text input field at the top with a 'Write' button. Below the input field, there is a list of mini-messages from John Doe, including announcements about Nuxeo Platform 5.6 and documentation updates. The list includes a 'Show more...' link at the bottom.

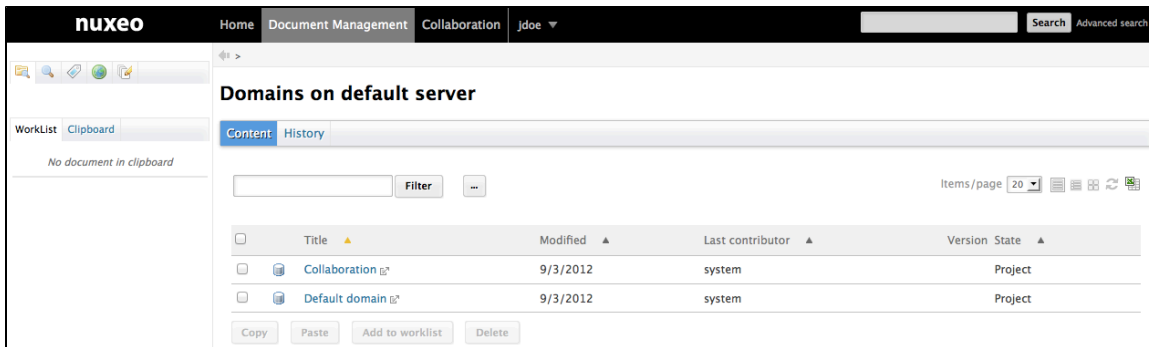
- activity streams, to follow what happens in the user's relationships and social workspaces.



In this User Guide

- Social workspaces overview
 - Creating a new social workspace
 - Editing a social workspace
 - Adding content to a social workspace
 - Editing content in a social workspace
 - Managing a social workspace
- Rich user profile overview
- Network overview
- Mini messages overview
- Activity stream overview
- Agenda overview
- Like overview
- Wall overview

The Social Collaboration module adds a new tab to the Nuxeo Platform, called **Collaboration**, and a new domain, called Collaboration as well. The Social Collaboration must be installed with the [Document Management](#) module, and can be installed with the [Digital Asset Management](#) module.



Social workspaces overview

Social workspaces are spaces that enable you to create content and share it to a community of users, using only the notion of private / public content.

Social workspaces have user friendly views of the content that enable users to access content simply and quickly and to share documents without having to understand all the hierarchical structure of the Nuxeo application. These views are dashboards, that can be configured by the workspace administrators to be consistent with the workspace purpose and members.

On this page

- Social workspace visibility
 - [Public workspace overview](#)
 - [Private workspace overview](#)
- Social workspace users
- [Browsing a social workspace](#)
 - [Related pages:](#)

Social workspace visibility

Social workspaces can be either private or public.

Public workspace overview

A public workspace is a space in which content can be shared to all users of the application, even if they are not members of the workspace. Indeed, the workspace can be seen in the workspaces directory by all users. If people are interested in the workspace's topics, they can ask to join the workspace to have access to more content.

Private workspace overview

A private workspace is a space in which content can only be accessed by workspace members. Users become members of the workspace when they are invited to the workspace. They cannot join the workspace at their own initiative.

Social workspace users

There are two types of users in a social workspaces : members and administrators.

Members can:

- create content (articles),
- edit the workspace's content,
- change the visibility of articles (public / private).

Beside members actions, social workspace administrators can:

- create news,
- customize the workspace dashboards,
- manage the members of the workspace (approve join requests, add / remove members...).


Browsing a social workspace

Social workspaces display content in a user-friendly way, independent from the usual hierarchical structure of Nuxeo, publication process etc. This Collaboration view is available for social workspaces and the documents inside it. The workspace collaboration view uses dashboards, which are composed of gadgets that display content in a transparent way. The workspace's administrators can [configure dashboards](#) to display only the gadgets they think are relevant to the workspace and its users.

There are two social workspace dashboards:

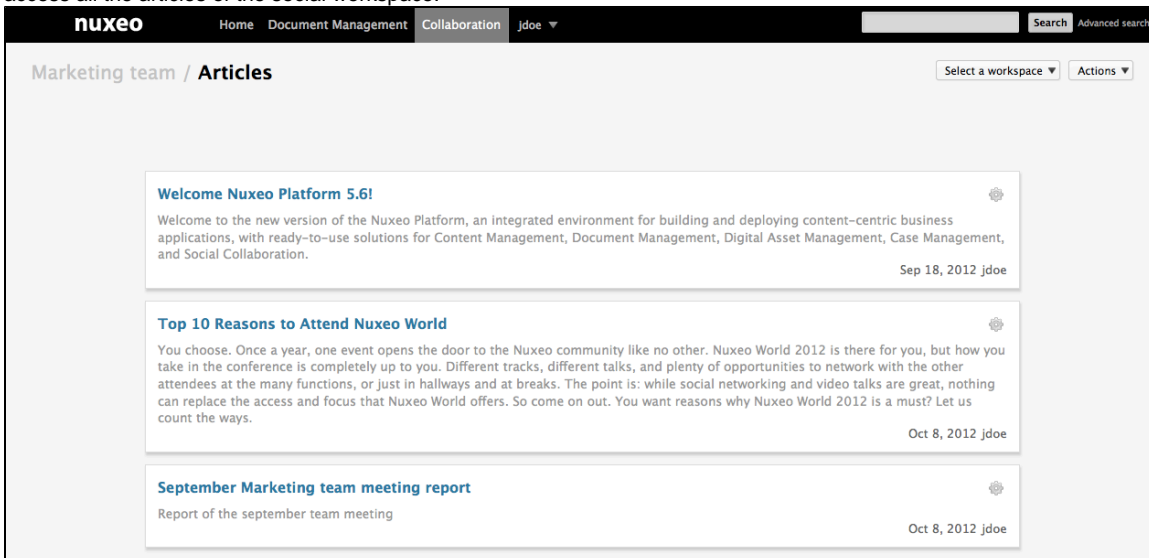
- a public dashboard which is displayed to non-members,
- a private dashboard which is displayed to the members of the space.

Workspace members also have access to a classic Document Management view of the workspace, from which they can access additional document management features such as [comments](#).

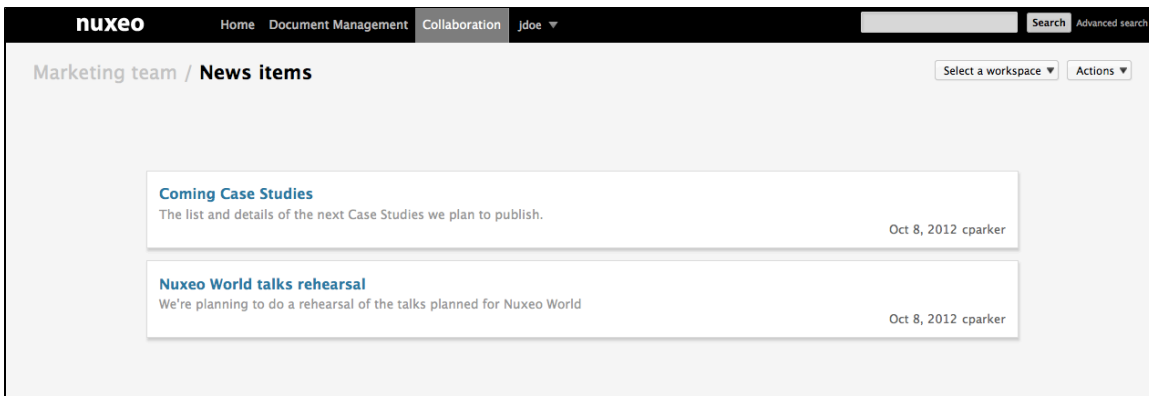
You can go to the Document Management view from any Collaboration view by clicking the **Actions** button and then **Document Management view**. Conversely, you can access the Collaboration view of documents and social workspaces at anytime by clicking the icon .

In the Collaboration tab, you can easily browse content, without having to know where the content is in the collaboration structure. For instance, you can:

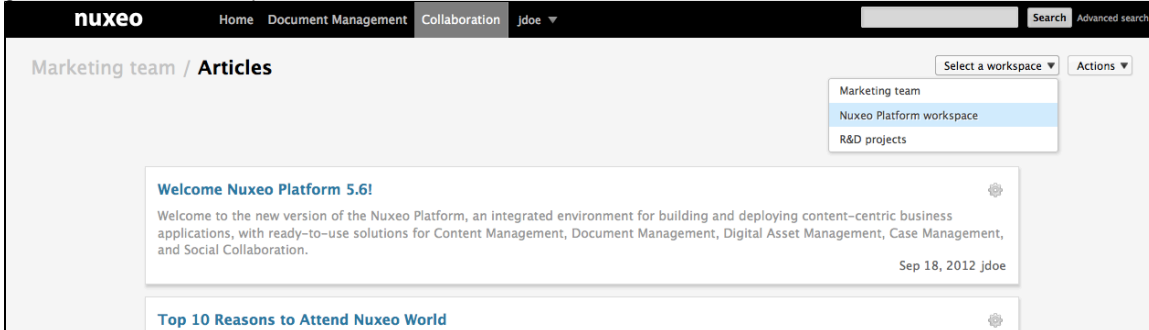
- access all the articles of the social workspace:



- access all the news of the workspace:






- go to another social workspace.



The available actions are displayed on the top right corner of the social workspace view. You can:

- select another social workspace (only the workspaces you're a member of are displayed),
- create and edit content,
- go to the articles of your social workspace,
- go to the news of your social workspace.

Related pages:

-  [Creating a new social workspace](#)
-  [Social workspaces overview](#)
-  [Editing a social workspace](#)

Creating a new social workspace

Social workspaces can only be created in the Collaboration domain added automatically by the system when you install the Social Collaboration module to your Nuxeo application.

You can create social workspace from:

- the Collaboration tab, from any social workspace's dashboard,
- the document management view of the Collaboration domain.

To create a new social workspace from the Collaboration tab:

1. Click on the **Actions** button, in the top right corner of the view.
2. Click on **Create a Social Workspace**.
The social workspace creation form is displayed.
3. Fill in the form (see below for social workspace parameters) and click on the **Create** button.

The workspace's **Wall** tab is displayed. You can then [configure the workspace's dashboards](#).

To create a social workspace from the document management view of the application:

1. In the Social domain, click on the **New** button.
2. On the **Available document types** window, click on **Social Workspace**.
3. Fill in the social workspace creation form.
4. Click on **Create** button.

The workspace's **Wall** tab is displayed. You can now [configure the workspace's dashboards](#).

Social workspace properties

Field	Description
Title	Name of the social workspace.
Description	Text that explains what the social workspace is about.
Subject	Topic(s) of the social workspace.
Public	Indicate if the social workspace is public or private.
Approval subscription workflow	For public workspaces : indicates if join request should be approved by a workspace administrator or automatically.
Expire on	Date at which the social workspace can be closed by an administrator.

Related pages:

- [Creating a new social workspace](#)
- [Social workspaces overview](#)
- [Editing a social workspace](#)

Editing a social workspace

Social workspaces can be editing from the document management view only.

To edit a social workspace:

1. If you're on the dashboard of the social workspace, click on the **Actions** button and then on **Document Management view**.
The **Wall** tab of the social workspace is displayed.
2. Click on the **Edit** tab.
3. Edit the properties of the workspace (see below).

4. Optionally, type a comment indicating what you changed on the social workspace or why you edited it.
5. Click on **Save**.
The modifications are saved.
The **Wall** tab of the social workspace is displayed.

Social workspace properties

Field	Description
Title	Name of the social workspace.
Description	Text that explains what the social workspace is about.
Subject	Topic(s) of the social workspace.
Public	Indicate if the social workspace is public or private.
Approval subscription workflow	For public workspaces : indicates if join request should be approved by a workspace administrator or automatically.
Expire on	Date at which the social workspace can be closed by an administrator.

Related pages:

- [Creating a new social workspace](#)
- [Social workspaces overview](#)
- [Editing a social workspace](#)

Adding content to a social workspace

The members of a social workspace can create and edit content in the workspace.

The documents that can be create in a social workspaces are:

- files,
- articles,
- events,
- folders.

The administrators of the social workspace can also create [News](#).

Articles are the main document type in social workspaces. All documents can be created either from the collaboration view or the document management view.

There are several ways to create articles:

- using [the complete creation form](#),
- using [the quick creation form the workspace's dashboard](#),
- using [the regular document management interface](#).



Initial versioning of documents in public social workspaces

In public social workspaces, documents created as public automatically go into version 0.1, since they are automatically published. Private documents are created in version 0.0.

To create an article using the complete form:

1. From the dashboard of the social workspace or an article, click on the **Actions** button.
2. Click on **Create an article**.
3. Fill in the article creation form (see below for article's properties).

4. Click on **Create**.
The article's collaboration view is displayed.



The same steps can be followed to create a file, by clicking **Create a file** from the **Actions** button.

Article properties

Field	Description
-------	-------------

Title	Name of the article
Description	Summary of the article. This description is displayed in the gadgets.
Publication	For public workspaces. Select who should see the article : only the space members (Restricted to the Social Workspace) or all users (public).
Picture	Upload an image to illustrate your article.
Content	Type the content of your article.
Format	Select which format should be used for the article.


To create a new document quickly from the dashboard:



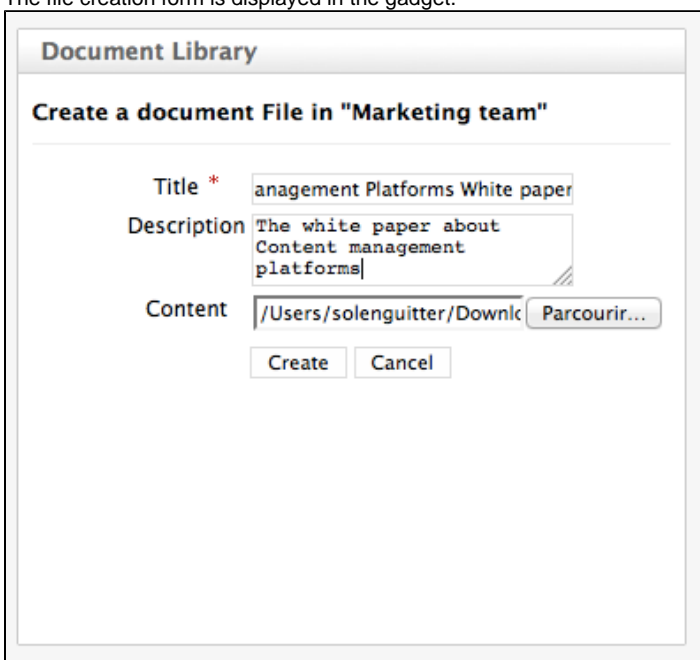
Pre-requisite

The dashboard must display the **Document library** gadget.

This view is intended to facilitate the creation of files. However, you can follow the same steps to create Articles, Files or Folders.

1. On the dashboard's Document library gadget, click on the icon .
2. Click on **File**

The file creation form is displayed in the gadget.



3. Fill in the title, description and content.
4. Click on the **Create** button.
The file is created and displayed in the Document library gadget.
By default, the file is private. You can edit the article to add a picture.

To create a new document in a social workspace, from the Document Management view:

From this view you can create all the social workspace authorized document types.

1. In the Document Management view, click on the **Collaboration** domain.
2. Click on the social workspace you want to create a new document in.
3. In the **Content** tab of the workspace, click on the **New** button.
4. On the window **Available document types**, click on the desired document.
5. Fill in the document's creation form.
6. Click on the **Create** button.
The **Summary** tab of the document is displayed.

Related topics in this documentation



Creating content **Editing content in a social workspace**

Agenda overview The workspace's members can edit the content of the workspace, even if they are not the author of the document.

Files When they edit a document, they can:

- Folders**
- change the content of the document,
 - change the visibility of the document,
 - fill in or edit its metadata,
 - create a new version of the document.

On this page

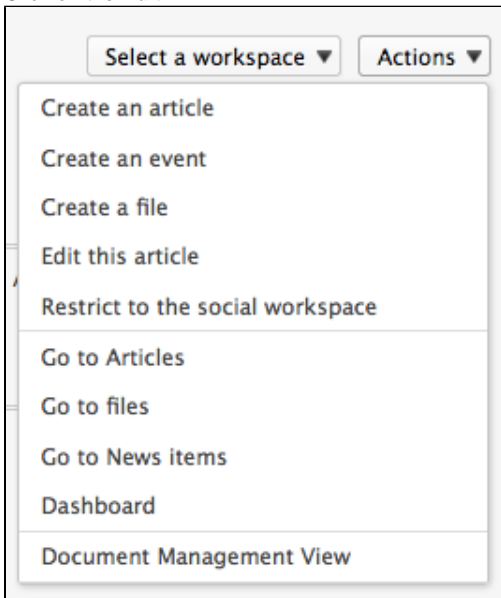
- [Editing the document](#)
- [Changing the visibility of the document](#)
 - [Related pages](#)

Editing the document

When you edit the document, you can edit its content and its metadata. You can also indicate if the modified document should be saved as a new version of the document.

To edit a document:

1. When you consult the document, click on the **Actions** button.
2. Click on the **Edit** link.



The edit form is displayed.

3. Edit the content and/or metadata of the document.

4. Indicate if you want to update the document's version.
 5. Click on the **Save** button.
- The modifications are saved. The document is displayed.

You can also [edit documents from the Document Management view](#).

Changing the visibility of the document

When you create a document, you decide if the document should be public, ie visible to all the users who can see workspace, or private, ie restricted to the workspace members. You can change this visibility at anytime. This can be done:

- from the **Document library** gadget on the workspace dashboard,
- from the collaboration view of the document,
- from the edition form of the document (for articles only).

To change the visibility of a document from the workspace dashboard:



Pre-requisite

The dashboard must display the **Document library** gadget to use the steps below.

- Click on the icon to make the document public.
- Click on the icon to make the document private.

To change the visibility when you consult the document:

1. Click on the **Actions** button.
2. Click on:
 - **Restrict to the Social Workspace** to make the document private,
 - **make it public** to make the document public.

Related pages

- [Editing a workspace](#)
- [Navigation trees](#)
- [Editing content](#)
- [Managing vocabularies](#)
- [Consulting and editing assets](#)

Managing a social workspace

The administrators of the social space can:

- manage the members of the space,
- set up the social space dashboards,
- share news to the workspace's members

Managing the workspace users

Social workspaces can be either private or public.

On public workspaces, users can ask to join the workspace to have access to more content and share articles on the workspace. The workspace administrators must then validate these join requests.

On private workspace, users have no access to the workspace unless they are a member. As a consequence, they cannot ask to join it. Only the space administrators can add new members to the workspace.

The members management actions all take place in the Document Management view.

On this page
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Adding members to a social workspace <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Adding members individually • Adding several users using email addresses • Managing join requests <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Related pages

Adding members to a social workspace

Administrators can add new members to a workspace on both public and private workspaces, at anytime.

There are two ways to add new members to a social workspace:

- you can add users one by one,
- you can import several users using their email address.

Adding members individually

To add new members one by one:

1. On the Document Management view of the social workspace, click on the **Manage** tab.
The **Membership Management** subtab is displayed.
2. In the Members group, type the name of the user you want to add.
The names of the users corresponding to the typed characters are automatically displayed as you type.

Marketing team

Wall Content Private dashboard Public dashboard Edit History **Manage**

Membership management Bulk invitation User invitation Alerts Trash User registration requests

To add new members to the social workspace, add them in the "Members group". You can also check the pending automatic subscription requests in the "Pending Subscription Requests" tab.

Administrators group

Group's members Search for users

To start the search, please type at least 3 character(s)

✗ Administrator

✗ Clark Parker

Members group

Group's members Search for users

john

✗ John Doe

John Doe

John Smith

John Gutter

Save

3. Click on the user you want to make a workspace member.
The user is added on the right of the search form.
4. Click on the **Save** button.
The user now sees the workspace displayed in his gadget **My social workspaces** and can add and edit content in the social workspace.
The other members of the workspace receive an email, informing them that new members have joined the workspace.

Adding several users using email addresses

To add users using their email address:

1. On the Document Management view of the social workspace, click on the **Manage** tab.
The **Membership Management** subtab is displayed.
2. Click on the **Bulk invitation** tab.
3. Type the email addresses of the users you want to add to the workspace.

Marketing team

Wall Content Private dashboard Public dashboard Edit History **Manage**

Membership management Bulk invitation User invitation Alerts Trash User registration requests

List of recipients *
peter@mycompany.com;logan@mycompany.com;jean@mycompany.com

Permission: Member

Comment

Send me a copy ☐

Import ☐ Do not send email notifications for members creation

4. Select the permission you want to give to these users: member or administrator of the social workspace.
5. Optionally, type a comment that will be in the email sent to new members.
6. Check the box **Do not send email notifications for members creation** if you don't want user to be notified by email that you added them on the workspace.
7. Click on the **Import** button.
The users are added to the members of the workspace in the **Membership management** tab. The users now see the workspace displayed in their gadget **My social workspaces** and can add and edit content in the social workspace.
The other members of the workspace receive an email, informing them that new members have joined the workspace.

Managing join requests

On public workspaces, user can ask to join the workspace. If the social workspace has an approval subscription workflow enabled, the administrators of the workspace must approve the request so users actually become members of the workspace.

The public dashboard of the workspace must display the **Join Us** gadget to enable users to ask to join the workspace.

To process subscription requests:

1. On the Document Management view of the social workspace, click on the **Manage** tab.
The **Membership Management** subtab is displayed.
Click on the **Pending Subscription Requests**.
The list of pending requests are displayed.

Marketing team

Wall Content Private dashboard Public dashboard Edit History **Manage**

Membership management Bulk invitation User invitation Alerts Trash User registration requests





Items/page 20

<input type="checkbox"/>	User name ▲	Email ▲	First name ▲	Last name ▲	Created at ▼	State ▲	
<input type="checkbox"/>	jsmith	jsmith@mycompany.com	John	Smith	10/10/2012	created	Accept Reject
<input type="checkbox"/>	twayne	twayne@mycompany.com	Tony	Wayne	10/10/2012	created	Accept Reject

Delete Validate Revoke

2. Check the box corresponding to the users whose request you want to process.
3. Click on the **Accept** or **Reject** button.
The users are added to the members of the workspace in the **Membership management** tab. The users now see the workspace displayed in their gadget **My social workspaces** and can add and edit content in the social workspace.
The other members of the workspace receive an email, informing them that new members have joined the workspace.

Related pages

-  [Creating a new social workspace](#)
-  [Managing users and groups](#)
-  [Social workspaces overview](#)
-  [Editing a social workspace](#)

Setting the workspace's dashboards

The Social Collaboration module adds new dashboards to the user dashboard in the Home tab, which are specifically design to enable the user to browse, create and share content without having to understand the hierarchical structure of the Nuxeo platform, the publishing process, etc.

The social collaboration dashboards are:

- The Collaboration root dashboard: the dashboard displayed when you click on the **Collaborat** **ion** tab. It gives an overview of the available content in the Collaboration part of the application. This dashboard can be customized by the application administrators.
- The social workspaces public dashboard: the dashboard that is displayed to non-members of public social workspaces. Its purpose is to enable sharing of public articles (using the **Public articles** gadget) so that users interested in joining the social workspace to access more content can ask to join (using the **Join Us** gadget). This dashboard can be customized by the social workspace administrators.
- The social workspaces private dashboard: the dashboard displayed only to the workspace members. It usually displays the **Document library** gadget which enables users to browse the content of the social workspace or search for content in the social workspace. This dashboard can be customized by the social workspace administrators.

The user Home dashboard is also automatically updated by the system to display some Collaboration gadgets and provide an overview of Collaboration activities (network mini-messages, your social workspaces, social workspaces news overview...).

On this page

- [Setting up your social workspace dashboards](#)
- [Setting up the Collaboration domain dashboard](#)
 - [Related pages:](#)




Setting up your social workspace dashboards

Social workspaces come with default public and private dashboards. However, the administrators of the social workspace can customize the workspace's dashboards from the Document Management view, following the same steps as to [customize their personal dashboard](#).

Setting up the Collaboration domain dashboard

The Collaboration domain also comes with a default dashboard, that the application's administrators can customize from the Collaboration view. They can [change the dashboard layout](#), [add or remove gadgets](#), [move them](#) just like they can on the user dashboard.

Related pages:

-  [Managing dashboards](#)
-  [Social workspaces overview](#)
-  [User home](#)

Working with News

News items are articles that enable the social workspace administrators to share information to the workspace's members. The news items are displayed in a dedicated gadget, that can be used in both social workspace dashboards, and in the user's home dashboard. Like articles, news items can be either private (visible to the space members only) or public (visible to all users).

News are automatically displayed on the different dashboards of users, providing that they display the **News** gadget:

- the Home dashboard displays the news of all the social workspaces users can access,
- the Collaboration home dashboard displays the news of all the social workspaces users can access,
- the social workspaces dashboard display the news of the workspace only.

News items can only be created by the workspace administrators.
They can be created from:

- [from any page in the Collaboration view using the Actions menu](#),
- [from the workspace dashboard using the **Document Library** gadget](#),

- from the [Document Management](#) view.

To create a news item from any page:

1. From the dashboard of the social workspace, an article or a news item, click on the **Actions** button.
2. Click on **Create a news item**.
3. Fill in the news creation form (see below for article's properties).

The screenshot shows the Nuxeo web interface for creating a new news item. The breadcrumb navigation is 'News / Create a new document News item'. The form has the following fields:

- Title ***: Text input with 'October team meeting agenda'.
- Description ***: Text area with 'Agenda for our next team meeting'.
- Publication ***: Radio buttons for 'Restricted to the Social Workspace' (selected) and 'Public'.
- Picture**: Radio buttons for 'None' (selected) and 'Upload' (with a 'Browse...' button).
- Content**: A rich text area containing a bulleted list: 'Next announcements', 'Next webinars', and 'Next newsletter planning'.

4. Click on **Create**.
The news is created in the News item container. The news collaboration view is displayed.

To create a news item quickly from the dashboard:



Pre-requisite

The dashboard must display the Document library gadget.

1. On the dashboard's Document library gadget, go in the **News** folder.
2. Click on the icon .
3. Click on **News item**.

The screenshot shows a 'Document Library' window with a title bar containing standard OS icons. Inside, the title is 'Create a document in "News"'. Below the title, it says 'Select the type of the new document from the list below:'. There is a list with one item, 'News item', which is highlighted. Below the list is a 'Cancel' button.

- The news item creation form is displayed in the gadget.
4. Fill in the title, description and content.
 5. Click on the **Create** button.
The news item is created and displayed in the Document library gadget.
By default, the news item is private. You can edit it to add a picture.

To create a News item from the Document Management view:

1. In the **Document Management** view, click on the **Collaboration** domain.
2. Click on the social workspace you want to create a news item in.
3. In the social workspace, click on the **News** folder.
4. Click on the **Create a News Item** button.
5. Fill in the document's creation form.
6. Click on the **Create** button.
7. The **Summary** tab of the news item is displayed.

News items properties

Field	Description
Title	Name of the news item
Description	Summary of the news item. This description is displayed in the News gadget.
Publication	For public workspaces. Select who should see the news item : only the space members (Restricted to the Social Workspace) or all users (public).
Picture	Upload an image to illustrate your news item.
Content	Type the content of your news item.
Format	Select which format should be used for the news item.

Rich user profile overview

The Social Collaboration module brings rich features to the user's profile.

The default user information are:

Field	Description
Username	Name the user will use to log in.
First Name	First name of the user
Last Name	Last name of the user
Company	Company or organization of the user
Email	email of the user. This address is used for alerts.
Password	User's password
Password (Verify)	User's password
Groups for this user	Groups of which the user is a member. User must be at least in 'administrators' or 'members' group, or one of their sub-groups.
Virtual groups for this user	
Avatar	Image that represents the user in the application.
Birth date	User's birth date
Phone number	User's phone number
Gender	User's gender. Default value is Male.
Public profile	Visibility of the social collaboration information of the user. By default, profiles are public.

The social collaboration user information are:

- [the user's network](#),
- [the user's activity stream](#),
- [the user's mini-messages](#).

Related pages

- Activity stream overview
- Network overview
- Mini messages overview
- Wall overview

Network overview

The Social Collaboration module provide a social network features. Users can add and remove other users of the application from their friends or coworkers network.

Adding users to your network enables you to easily follow their activities from your dashboard:

- using the **Mini Message** gadget, you can see their [mini messages](#),
- using the **Network activity stream** gadget, you can see what social workspace they join, who they add to their own network, what documents they work on, etc.

There are two network groups: friends and coworkers. You can add users in one or both network groups. There is no functional difference between these two groups.

To add new users to your network:

- In your Home, click on the **Network** tab.
The page is divided in two parts:
 - the left part enables you to search the users you want to add to your network,
 - the right part displays your network's members.
- Type the name of the user you want to add to your network.
The names of the users corresponding to the typed characters are automatically displayed as you type.

- Click on the **Add** button and check the box corresponding to the network group you want to add the user into.



Optionally you can click on the user's name to consult his profile before adding him to your network.

The user is now in your network: he is displayed in the right part of the **Network** tab and in the Network part of your profile. You can remove the user from your network at anytime.

To remove a user from your network:

1. In your **Home**, go your profile.
2. In the right Network part, click on the user you want to remove from your network.
The user's profile is displayed.
3. In the User network part of the profile, click on the **Modify** button.
4. Uncheck the network group box the user is in.
The user is immediately removed from your network.

Mini messages overview

The Social Collaboration module add a micro-blogging feature, enabling users to share 140 characters mini messages.

Mini messages are public and accessible from different places.

- from your profile: users consulting your profile can see your mini messages, even if your profile is private;
- from the user's dashboard: if the user displays the **Mini Messages** gadget on his dashboard and you are in his network, your mini messages are displayed on his dashboard;
- the social workspace's dashboards: if the dashboard (either public or private) displays the **Social workspace mini message**, users that can access the dashboard can see your mini messages.

You can post new mini message from different places:

- from your Home,
- from the dashboards gadgets.



Mini messages cannot be edited.

On this page

- [Adding a new mini message](#)
- [Deleting a mini message](#)

Adding a new mini message

To add a mini message from your Home:

From your home you can post new mini messages from your dashboard if it displays the **Min Messages** gadget, or from the **Mini Messages** tab.

1. In your Home, click on the **Mini Messages** tab.

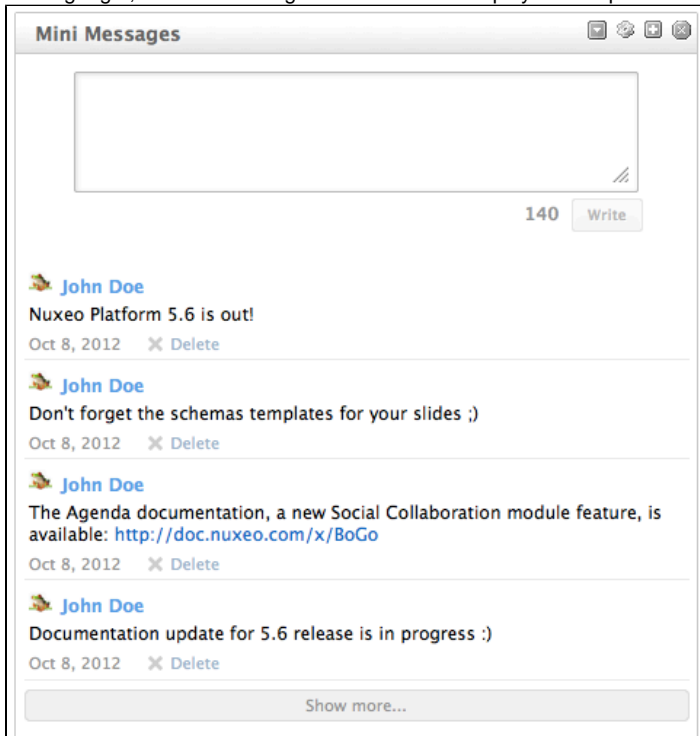
Your latest mini messages and those of people in your network are displayed, with a form to add a mini message on top.

2. Type your message in the text area.
As you type, the number of characters left is updated.
3. Click on the **Write** button.

The message is saved and displayed under the text area. It is also available in the Mini Messages gadgets of your networks' members' and social workspaces' dashboards.

To add a mini message from a Mini Message gadget:

In the gadget, the mini message creation form is displayed on top of the latest mini messages.



1. Type your message in the text area.
As you type, the number of characters left is updated.
2. Click on the **OK** button.
The message is saved and displayed in the gadget. It is also available in the Mini Messages gadgets of your networks' members' and social workspaces' dashboards.

Deleting a mini message

Only the author of a mini message can delete it.
Mini messages can be deleted from the Home's **Mini Messages** or **Profile** tab.

To delete a mini message:

1. In your Home, click on the **Profile** tab.
Your latest mini message are displayed in the Mini Messages gadget.
2. Click on the **Delete** link displayed in the bottom right corner of the mini-message you want to remove.
A confirmation window pops up.
3. Click on the **OK** button.
The mini message is immediately deleted and is not available anymore in the Mini Messages gadgets.

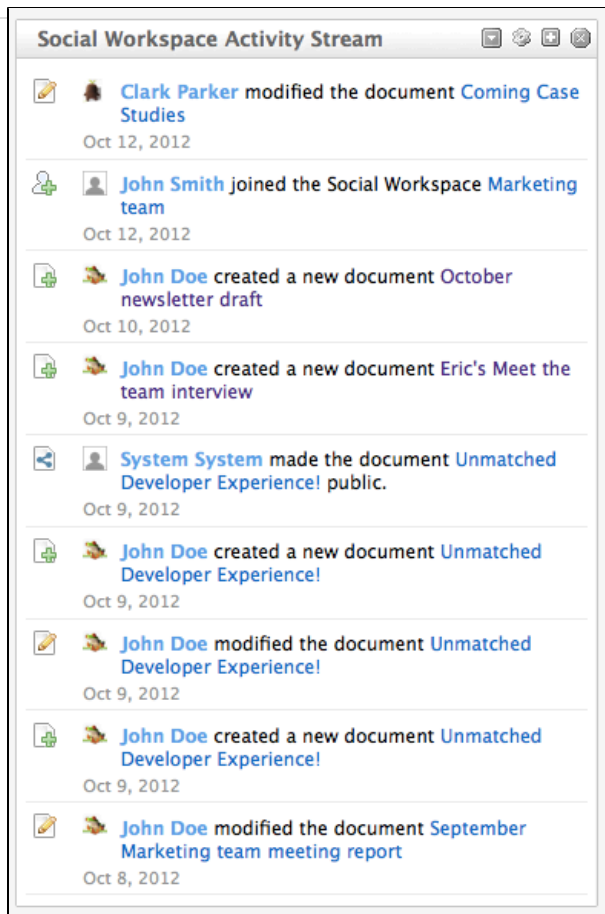
Activity stream overview

Activity streams are feeds that display the latest events done by users. There are three activity streams:

- the social workspace activity stream,
- the user's activity stream,
- the user's relations activity stream.

Social workspace activity stream

















The social workspace activity stream displays the latest events that occurred in the social workspace.
It can be displayed on the social workspace's activity dashboards only.



User's activity stream

The user's activity stream displayed the latest actions done by the user. It is displayed on the user's profile only.

ACTIVITY STREAM















-   **John Doe** created a new document **October newsletter draft**
Oct 10, 2012
-   **John Doe** created a new document **Eric's Meet the team interview**
Oct 9, 2012
-   **John Doe** created a new document **Unmatched Developer Experience!**
Oct 9, 2012
-   **John Doe** modified the document **Unmatched Developer Experience!**
Oct 9, 2012
-   **John Doe** created a new document **Unmatched Developer Experience!**
Oct 9, 2012
-   **John Doe** joined the Social Workspace **R&D projects**
Oct 8, 2012
-   **John Doe** joined the Social Workspace **Nuxeo Platform workspace**
Oct 8, 2012
-   **John Doe** modified the document **September Marketing team meeting report**
Oct 8, 2012

User's network activity stream

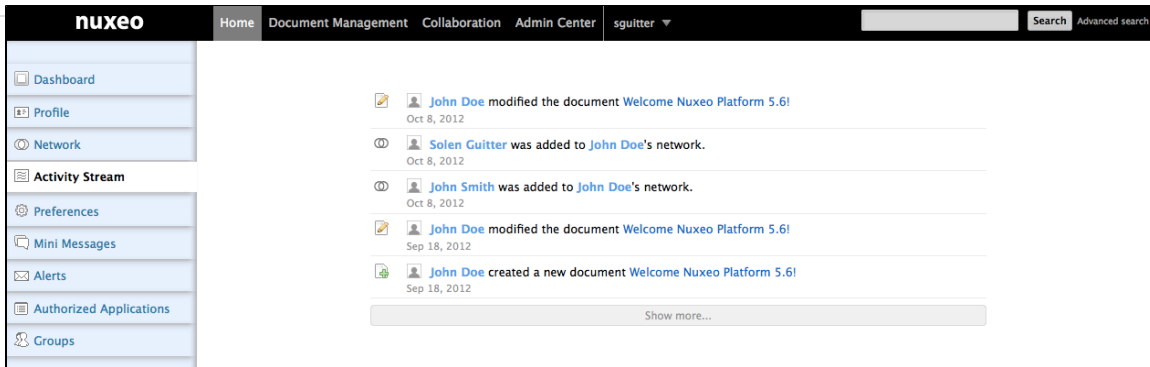
The user's network activity stream displays information about what your network members do on the application:

- which workspaces they join,
- what documents they work on (in social workspaces and in the document management area of the application),
- who they add to their network.

Network Activity Stream

-   **John Smith** joined the Social Workspace **Marketing team**
Oct 12, 2012
-   **Solen Gutter** joined the Social Workspace **Marketing team**
Oct 8, 2012
-   **John Smith** was added to **Solen Gutter's** network.
Oct 8, 2012
-   **John Doe** was added to **Solen Gutter's** network.
Oct 8, 2012
-   **Solen Gutter** modified the document **Nuxeo Platform 5.6 User Guide**
Sep 10, 2012
-   **Solen Gutter** modified the document **Nuxeo Platform 5.6 User Guide**
Sep 10, 2012
-   **Solen Gutter** modified the document **Architecture**
Sep 3, 2012

The network activity stream can be displayed on the user's dashboard and the Collaboration home dashboard, using the **Network Activity Stream** gadget in the **Nuxeo** category. It is also displayed on the Activity Stream tab of the user Home.



Agenda overview

Coming by default with the Social Collaboration module is an agenda feature. This feature enables users to create events that will be displayed to users in a dedicated agenda gadget on the different dashboards. As soon as a user can access the workspace or folder in which the event has been created, he can see the event in the agenda gadget.



Agenda package

The Agenda is available as an independent package on the [Marketplace](#), and can be installed on top of the Document Management module, without the Social Collaboration module.

On this page

- [Creating events](#)
- [Editing an event](#)
- [Browsing events](#)
- [Actions available on events](#)
 - [Related topics](#)

Creating events

Events can be created in workspaces, social workspaces and folders.

In social workspace, events can be created from the **Content** tab of the social workspace in the Document Management view, or from the Collaboration view of the social workspace.

To create an event from the Content tab of the workspace:

1. In the **Content** tab of the workspace, click on the **New Document** button.
2. On the window **Available document types**, click on the desired document.
3. Fill in the document's creation form.
4. Click on the **Create** button.

To create an event from the Collaboration view of the workspace:

1. Click on the **Actions** button in the top right corner.
2. Click on **Create an event**.
3. Fill in the creation form.

The screenshot shows a web interface for creating a new document event. The header includes the Nuxeo logo and navigation tabs: Home, Document Management, Collaboration, and a user profile 'jsmith'. A search bar is also present. The main content area is titled 'Marketing team / Create a new document Event'. It contains a form with the following fields: 'Title' (required), 'Place', 'Description', 'Start date' (required), and 'End date' (required). There are 'Create' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom of the form.

- Click on **Create**.
The **Summary** tab of the event is displayed, in the Document Management view of the social workspace.
The event is now available in the **Agenda** gadget.

To create an event from the **Agenda Gadget**:

Pre-requisite
The Agenda gadget must be displayed on the dashboard.

In the Agenda gadget, events can be created from the list view only.

- On the Agenda gadget, click on the **Add** button.
- Fill in the event creation form.

The screenshot shows the 'Agenda' gadget interface. It has a title bar with 'Agenda' and some icons. Below the title bar is a '+ Add' button and a navigation bar with 'Incoming / Month / Week / Day' and a 'See calendar' link. The main form has fields for 'Summary' (required), 'Description', 'Start date' (required), 'End date', and 'Place'. There are 'Create' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom of the form.

- Click on the **Create** button.
The event is displayed in the list of the Incoming events.

Events properties

Field	Description
Title	Name of the event
Description	What the event is about
Start date	Date and time at which the event starts
End date	Date and time at which the event ends
Place	Where the event takes place

Editing an event

Events can be modified from the **Edit** tab. Unlike other documents, they don't have additional metadata from this tab, and users cannot choose to create a new version of the event when they edit it. The system automatically creates a new version of the event when it is modified.

To modify the event:

1. Click on the **Edit** tab of the event.
2. Modify the event's properties you want.
3. Click on **Save**.

The modifications are immediately available in the **Agenda** gadget. A new version of the event is automatically created by the system.

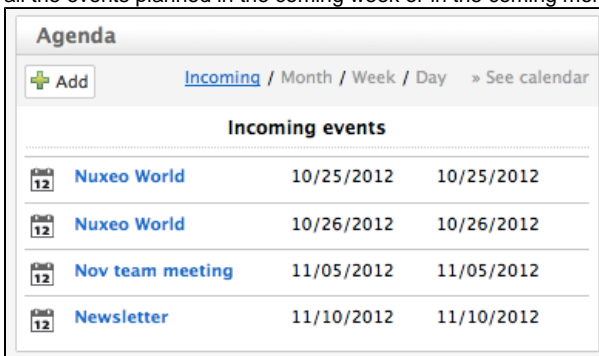
Browsing events


Events are displayed in the **Agenda** gadget. The gadget displays only the events relevant in the dashboard on which it is displayed:

- on the Home dashboard, you can see all the events you have access to;
 - on a social workspace dashboard, you can see only the events in the social workspace.
- Events are also displayed in the **Content** tab of workspaces and folders, like any other document.

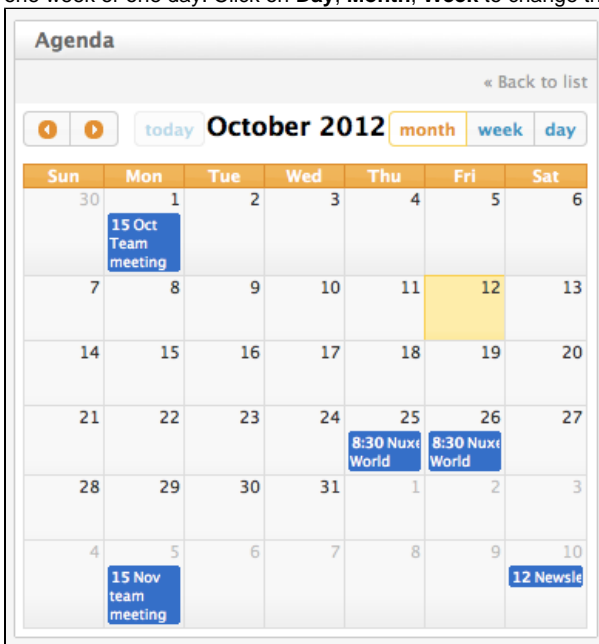
The gadget offers two views of the events list.

- The list view shows the events as a list. By default, it displays all the coming events, but you can choose to display on the day's events, all the events planned in the coming week or in the coming month. Click on **Day**, **Month**, **Week** or **Incoming** to change the list filter.



Agenda			
+ Add Incoming / Month / Week / Day » See calendar			
Incoming events			
	Nuxeo World	10/25/2012	10/25/2012
	Nuxeo World	10/26/2012	10/26/2012
	Nov team meeting	11/05/2012	11/05/2012
	Newsletter	11/10/2012	11/10/2012

- The Calendar view shows the events in a calendar. By default, the calendar shows a month calendar by default, but you can display only one week or one day. Click on **Day**, **Month**, **Week** to change the calendar view.



Agenda						
« Back to list						
« » today October 2012 month week day						
Sun	Mon	Tue	Wed	Thu	Fri	Sat
30	1 15 Oct Team meeting	2	3	4	5	6
7	8	9	10	11	12	13
14	15	16	17	18	19	20
21	22	23	24	25 8:30 Nuxeo World	26 8:30 Nuxeo World	27
28	29	30	31	1	2	3
4	5 15 Nov team meeting	6	7	8	9	10 12 Newsle




To see the details of an event, click on the event's title from the Agenda gadget or from the **Content** tab of the workspace or folder. The event's **Summary** tab is displayed. You can then edit it, link it to other documents, comment it and tag it.

Actions available on events

The features below are available on events:

- [Relations](#)
- [Comments](#)
- [Tags](#)

Related topics

-  [Managing dashboards](#)
-  [Social workspaces overview](#)
-  [User home](#)

Like overview

Included by default in the Social Collaboration module is the Like feature. This feature enables users to vote for documents using a like / unlike system. A dedicated gadget enables users to see the most popular documents, providing another way to find documents.



Like package

The Like feature is available as an independent package on the [Marketplace](#), and can be installed on top of the Document Management module, without the Social Collaboration module.

On this page:


- [Voting for a document](#)
- [Voting against a document](#)
 - [Related sections in this documentation](#)

Users can like documents, messages and activities.
For message and activities likes, see the [Wall overview](#) page.

Voting for a document


Users need the **Read** right to vote for a document. They can vote for documents from the document's Summary tab or from the Document Library gadget in social workspaces.



To vote for a document from the Summary tab:

Click on the icon .


Your vote is added to the current document rating. The icon  becomes .

To vote for a document from the Document Library gadget:





Click on the icon  displayed below the document in the gadget.

Your vote is added to the current document rating. The icon  becomes .

Voting against a document

It is not possible to vote against a document. Users can only unlike the documents they have voted for, by following the same steps as to vote for a document. Clicking icon  removes their vote from the document's rating.

Related sections in this documentation

-  [Wall overview](#)
-  [Managing dashboards](#)
-  [Social workspaces overview](#)
-  [User home](#)

Wall overview

Social workspaces have a special view that enables users to directly see what is happening in the workspace: what documents are created or modified and by who, who joins the social workspace, who added a mini message, etc.

The Wall is available on social workspaces only and only members of the workspace can access it.

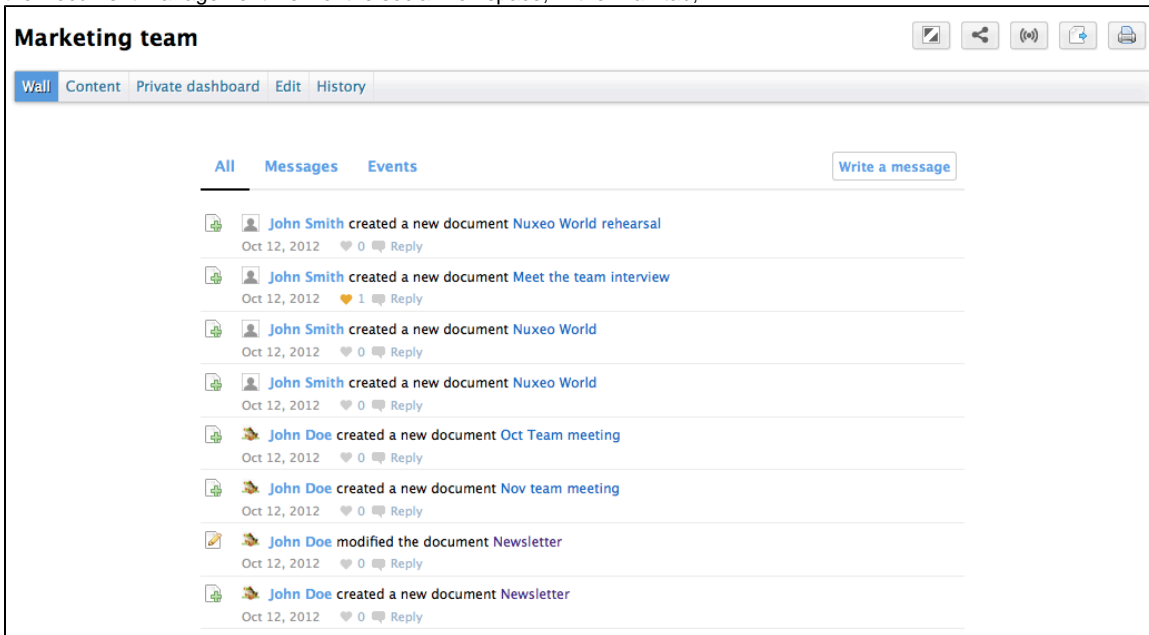
On this page

- Browsing a workspace wall
- Writing a message
- Commenting activities
- Liking
 - Related topics

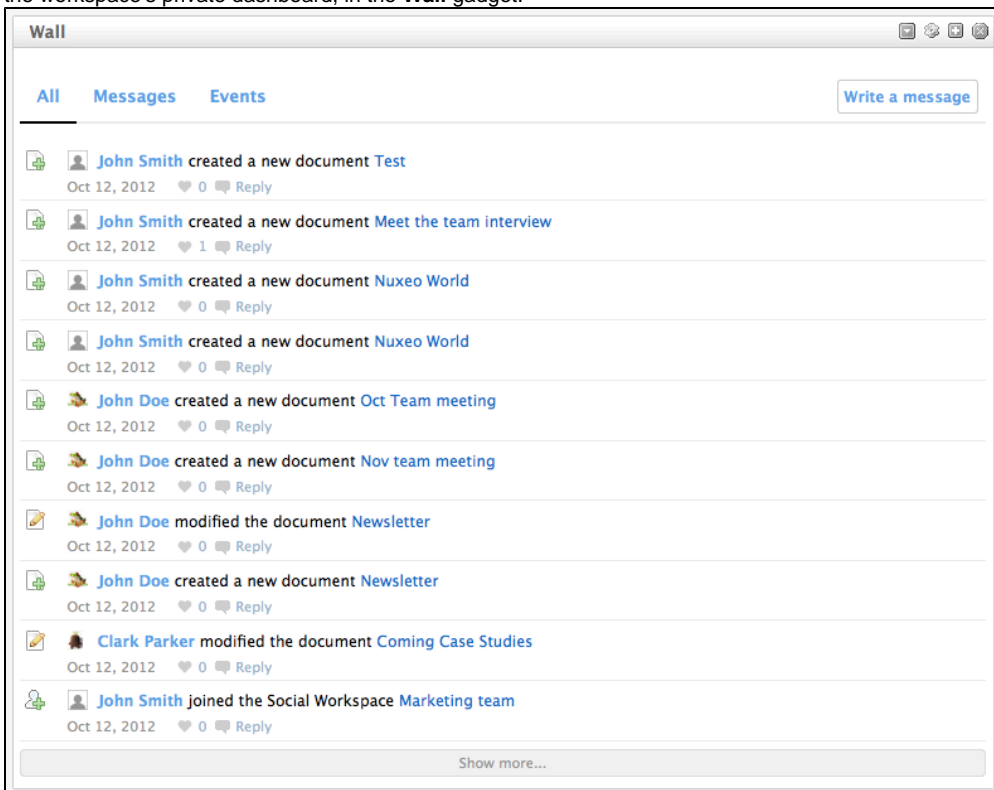
Browsing a workspace wall

The wall is available from:

- the Document Management view of the social workspace, in the **Wall** tab,



- the workspace's private dashboard, in the **Wall** gadget.



Both display the same pieces of information: the events that take place in the social workspace and the messages that are posted in the workspace. By default, the Wall displays all these information, grouped under the **All** item. To make it easier to see the activities, click on **Events**. Only the activities are displayed. To see only the mini-messages posted in the workspace, click on **Messages**. Only the mini-messages posted either from the Wall or from the **Mini messages** gadget are displayed.

Writing a message

Users can post **mini messages** from the wall directly.

To post a mini message from the wall:

1. On the wall, click on the **Write a message** button.
A text area is displayed on top of the Wall content, just below the wall tabs.
2. Type your text and click on the **Write** button.
The message is now displayed in the **All** and **Messages** tabs of the Wall.
The message is also displayed in the Mini messages gadget of the social workspace.

Commenting activities


Users can comment the activities displayed on the wall. These comments are only displayed on the wall.

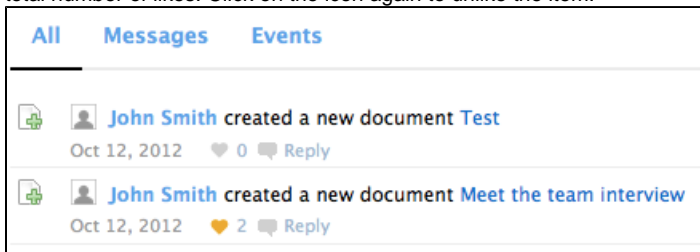
To comment an activity:

1. On the wall tab or gadget, click on the **Reply** link under the activity you want to comment.
A text area is displayed under the activity.
2. Type your comment and click on the **Reply** button.
The comment is now displayed under the activity and the activity is now on top of the wall timeline.
You can delete your comment if needed.





Liking

Users can like the items on the wall feed, both activities and messages. The total number of users who like the message or activity is displayed under the item. Liking an event that occurred on a document doesn't add this vote to the document itself, only to the event.

To like a message or an event, click on the icon . The icon is now colored, indicated that you liked the document, and your vote is added to the total number of likes. Click on the icon again to unlike the item.



Related topics

-  [Wall overview](#)
-  [Mini messages overview](#)
-  [Like overview](#)
-  [Managing dashboards](#)
-  [Social workspaces overview](#)
-  [User home](#)

Digital Asset Management



Redirection Notice

This page will redirect to [USERDOC:Digital Asset Management with the Nuxeo Platform](#).

The [Digital Asset Management module](#) of the Nuxeo Platform provides organizations with an application to manage their multimedia resources, from capture to delivery.

Like any other module of the Nuxeo Platform, Digital Asset Management (DAM) is a web application, so users don't need to install anything on their computer to access it. They just need a web browser (IE 7 or +, Firefox etc.).

You're new to Digital Asset Management? Take a look at our overview of the DAM features!

Nuxeo

This short screencast gives a short overview, with a product demonstration, of Nuxeo DAM, the open source digital asset management solution.

- [Import](#) a set of digital files (videos, images, audio)
- Search and consult the assets you need
- Edit the metadata of one or multiple assets
- [Annotate](#) documents
- [Comment](#) assets
- Export assets for delivery

Nuxeo's DAM module User Guide Content

- [Digital Asset Management Concepts](#)
- [Importing assets in DAM](#)
- [Browsing and searching assets](#)
- [Consulting and editing assets](#)
- [Annotating assets](#)
- [Commenting assets](#)
- [Exporting assets](#)
- [Managing access rights in DAM](#)
- [Supported File Formats](#)

Digital Asset Management Concepts

The Digital Asset Management module of the Nuxeo Platform is dedicated to storing, indexing, archiving, and distributing digital assets. Beside the Platform minimal features, you get a new environment specifically designed to ease the management of multimedia assets. Depending on the other modules you may have installed, you can get other additional features that will take place in their own environment.

On this page

- [Digital assets](#)
- [Available spaces](#)
- [Digital Asset Management interface presentation](#)
- [The DAM permissions](#)

Digital assets

The DAM module provides three document types, that are added to the document types provided by default by the Platform and by the other modules that may be enabled:

- pictures,
- videos,
- audio files.

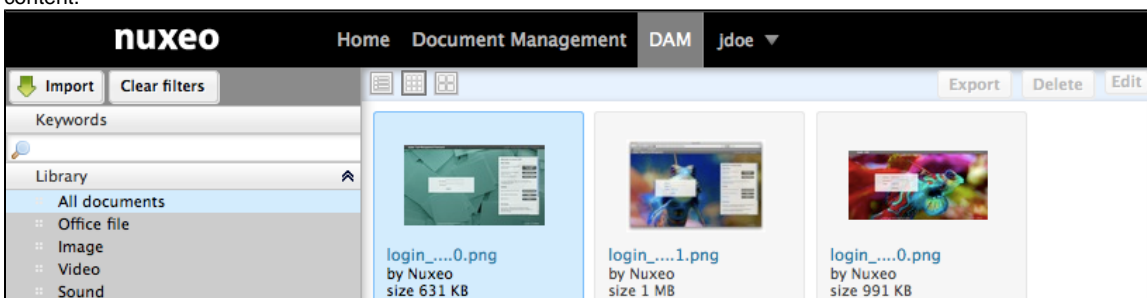
Office and PDF documents, supported by default by the Platform, can also be managed using [the DAM interface](#).

The whole list of file formats and the available actions are listed in the [Supported File Formats](#) page.

Available spaces

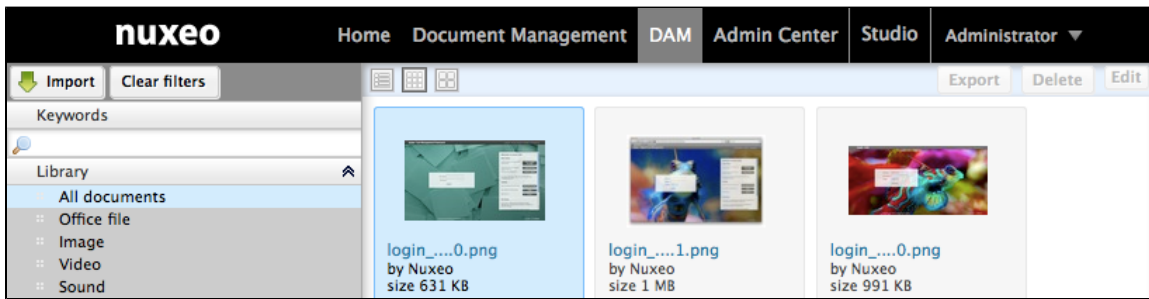
The minimal installation of the DAM module provides main tabs on top the of the page, that give access to different environments.

- The **Home** tab is where the user can find all the information that concern him: his dashboard to get a quick access to documents, and that he can customize with internal and external gadgets, the summary of his notification subscriptions, see his profile, etc.
- The **Document Management** tab from which the user can work on contents other than digital assets and manage the asset folders. This is the tab selected by default when the user logs in.
- The **DAM** tab from which he'll be able to import and browse assets. This tab enables an environment specifically designed for this kind of content.



Administrators have two extra tabs:

- The **Admin Center** tab, from which they can manage the application.
- The **Studio** tab, which provides access to [Nuxeo Studio](#), the online customization and configuration environment.



As a module of the Nuxeo Platform, DAM benefits from its standards [document management features](#), accessible from the **Document Management** tab.

The Document Management tab gives access to two domains: the Default Domain and the Asset Library.

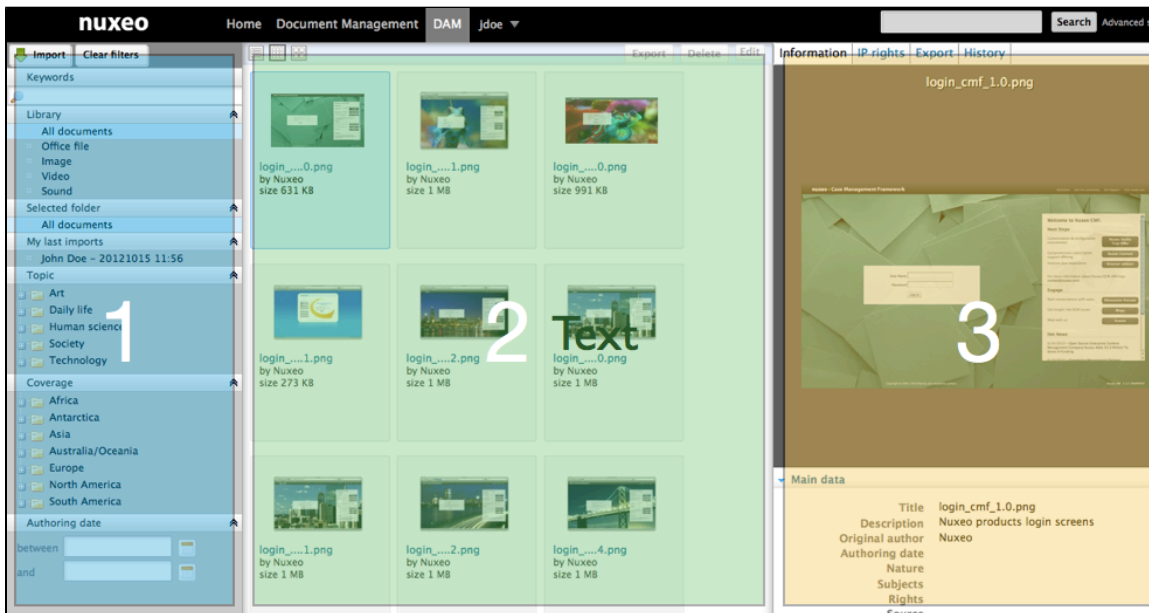
The **Default domain** is the Nuxeo Platform default environment, from which users can [create documents](#) and [publish them](#).

The **Asset Library** is where all the assets imported in DAM are stored. It is organized in folders, which contain the different import sets. You can benefit from the document management features on assets from the Asset Library.

Digital Asset Management interface presentation

The Digital Asset Management (DAM) user interface is designed for a search-based navigation in the assets lists. A list of filters is available, that you use to find assets.


The user interface is divided in three parts, as shown below:



1. On the left of the screen are the filtering options that enable you to search assets and narrow the results which are displayed in the center of the page.
2. The central main part of the screen is where the asset thumbnails are displayed so you can easily see the assets available.
3. The right part of the screen is dedicated to displaying the information of the selected asset: its metadata, a preview of the asset, the IP rights, the asset's history and the export options.

The DAM permissions

The DAM access rights are:

Right	Actions in DAM
Read	Consult content Comment documents Annotate documents
Write	Import documents Edit documents + Read actions
Everything	Manage access rights + Write and Read actions
Remove	Delete documents <div>  The Remove permission is most intended to be denied, so as to restrict the actions available to users with "Write" permission. </div>

The [management of access rights](#) to the DAM module takes place from the Asset Library's Document Management interface.

Importing assets in DAM

Assets are imported in folders. You can import either single digital files or a set of files in a zipped folder. In both cases, an import set that holds the assets is created in the target folder. You can use this import set to find the assets again. Folders can contains several import sets.

You need to have Write permission on at least one folder to be able to import assets in DAM.

To import assets in DAM:

1. In the left pane of the DAM tab, click on the **Import** button on top the filters.
The "Import Set Creation" window is displayed.
2. Select the file (zip or single digital file) to import. When you click on **Select File**, a pop-up allows to browse your drives. For large files, the percent of upload progress is shown.

3. Select the folder in which the assets are imported.

✓ If you choose **New Folder**, type the name of the new folder.

- Fill in the main metadata that will be applied to all the assets of the set (see below for information on the import set metadata).
- Click on the **Create** button.

Once the import is done, you can see the digital files as thumbnails, with the first file selected on the right side of the window.

Import set metadata

Field	Description
Import set name	Name of the set of assets you are importing. Default import set name is composed of your name and the date and time. For instance: "John Doe - 20100729 11:09". You can change this default name.
Description	A textual description of the import set content.
Author	Name of the person who created the content of this import set (photographer, graphic artist, name of a company or organization, etc.)

Authoring date	Date at which the content was created.
Coverage	Geographic or temporal coverage of the resource, the geographic applicability of the resource, or the jurisdiction under which the resource is relevant.
Language	Language used for the assets.
Topic	Subject(s) of the assets in the import set.



This is the default product metadata set, that can be adapted to your own properties.

Browsing and searching assets

Navigation in DAM is based on search and filters. By default, all the assets of the folders you can access (i.e. in which you have at least Read rights) are displayed. The principle is to narrow down the search results and so the assets displayed.

The search available is a full text search. Assets are indexed using their title, description, content (+ attached files), and metadata. You can also use filters. The available filters are:

- Library: the different asset types;
- Selected folder: the folder in which assets are imported;
- My last imports: your import sets;
- Topic: the subjects assigned to the assets;
- Coverage: the geographic reach of the assets;
- Authoring date: the date at which the assets were created (different from the date at which they are imported).

On this page

- [Finding assets using keywords](#)
- [Finding assets using the library filter](#)
- [Finding assets using metadata filters](#)

Finding assets using keywords

Full text search uses stemming. The Stemming search option will return the assets containing words that have the same stem as the word you entered into the "Keywords" field.

If you enter the word "Reading", you will find the assets containing in their text metadata "Read", "reads" etc.

This is not the same thing as a search with a wildcard like "*".

The following example shows all the assets. There are 4 pages of results.

Suppose that you would like to narrow down the results to few assets, and you are looking for an illustration of a blue item.

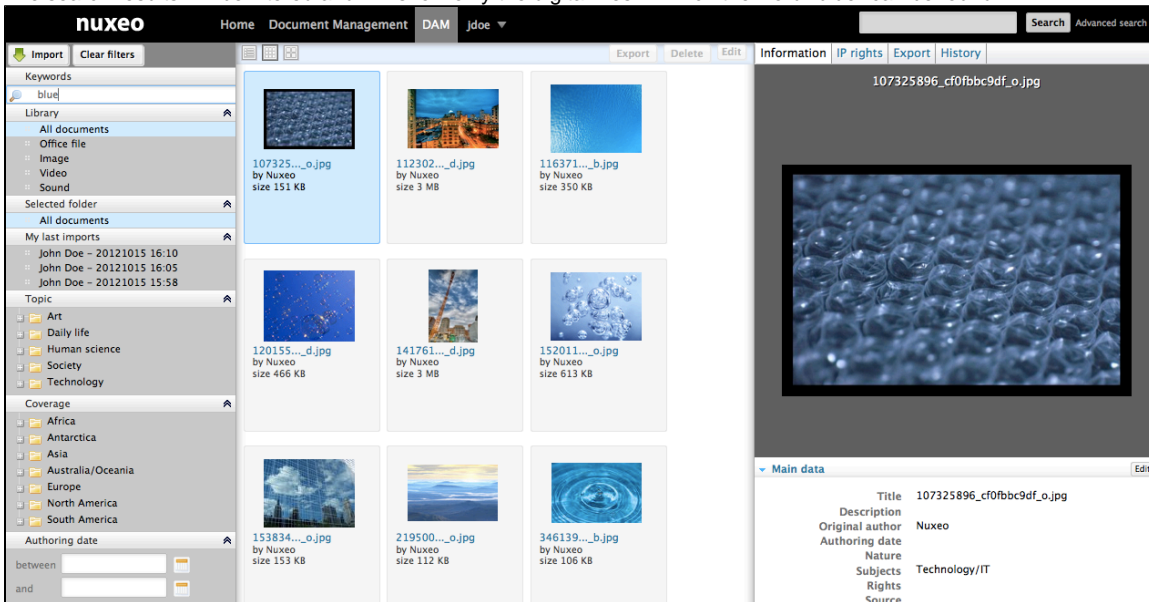
1. On the search pane, in the "Keywords" text area, enter the search term "blue".



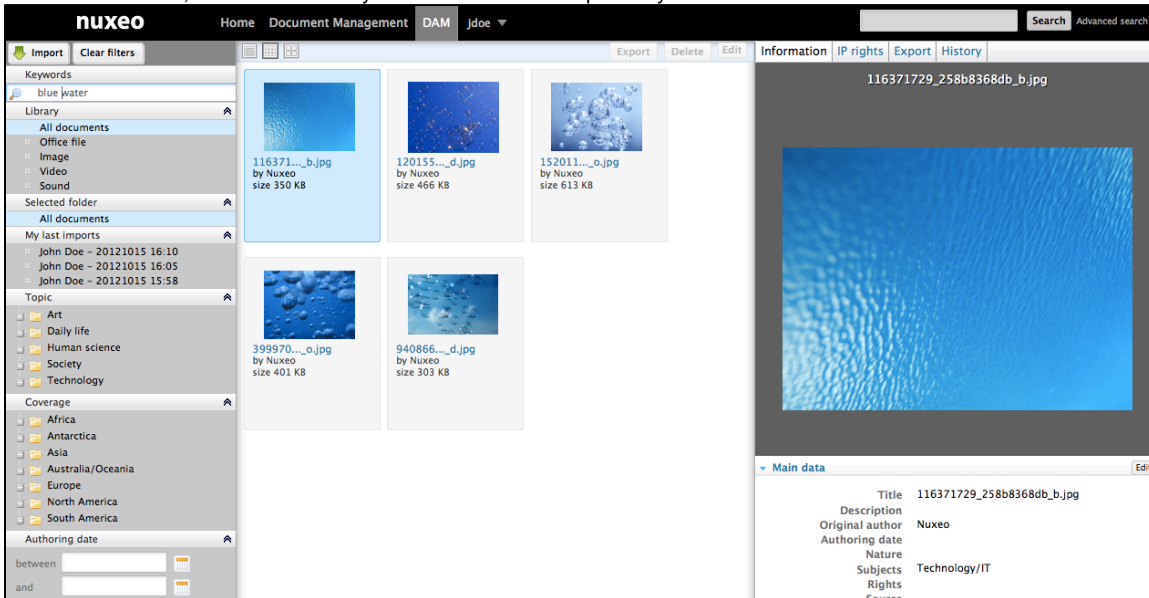
The full text search field will trigger the search 1 second after you wrote the letters in the field.

The results will be the assets containing the word "blue", "BLUE", "BIUe" or any other combination of uppercase and lowercase letters: This search is not case sensitive.

The search results will be filtered and will show only the digital files in which the word "blue" can be found:



2. Add a word in the "Keyword" full text search field, "water" for example. You will find all the assets containing in their text metadata, both "blue" AND "water", but not necessarily in that order. This will probably narrow down the search results.



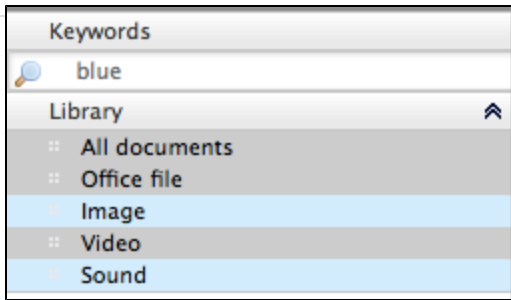
Finding assets using the library filter

This search filter allows to filter and display only one type of asset among:

- Office documents (PDF, MSO or Ooo files)
- Images
- Videos
- Audio

This search criterion can be combined with the other following criteria, to build a search query with the AND operator.

In the following example, results will be images or audio files with the word "blue" in their metadata. There won't be videos or office files:



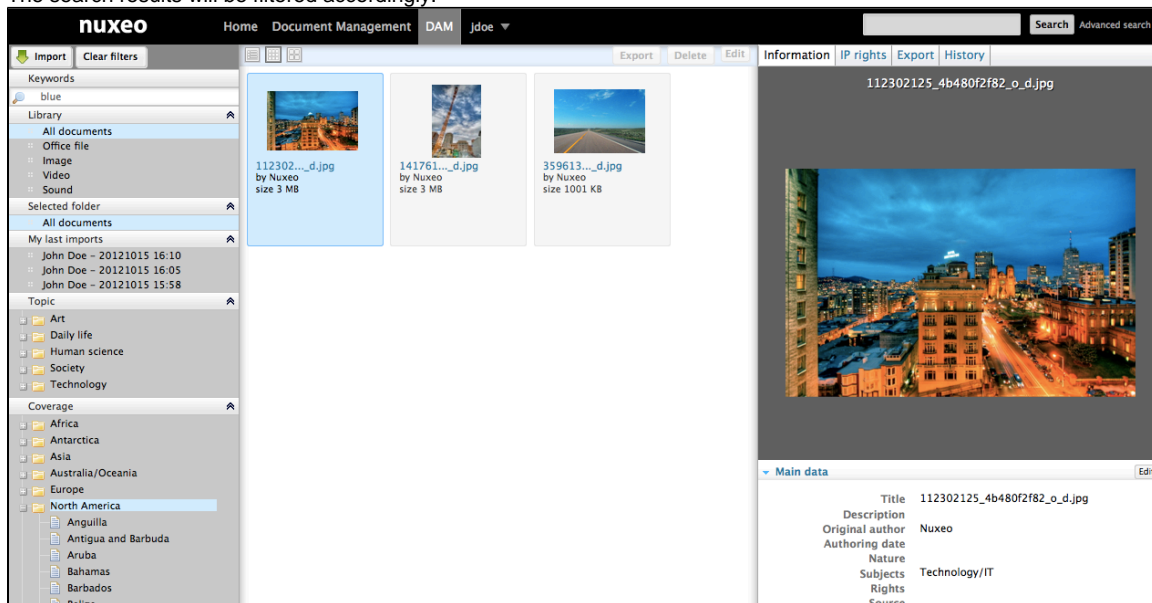
Finding assets using metadata filters

To refine your search, you can use following metadata of the assets: Coverage, Topic, Authoring date. Select one or more of these criteria to narrow down the assets displayed.

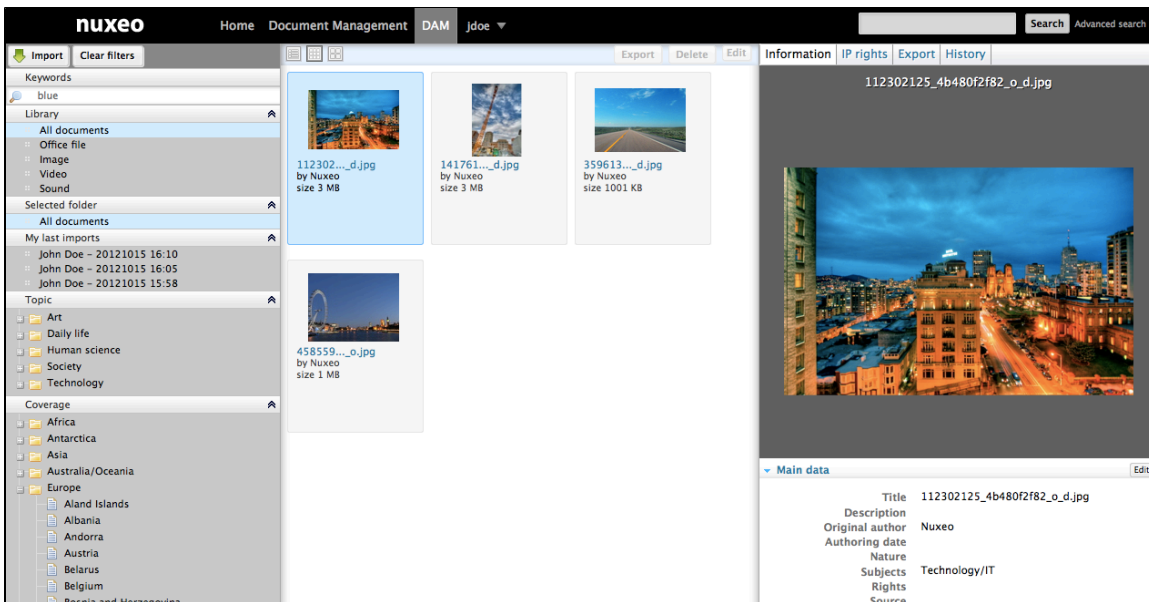
Here is an example using Coverage filter:

1. You want to find the pictures, with "blue", that were taken in the US. In the "Coverage" tree, click on "North America", and then on "United States of America".

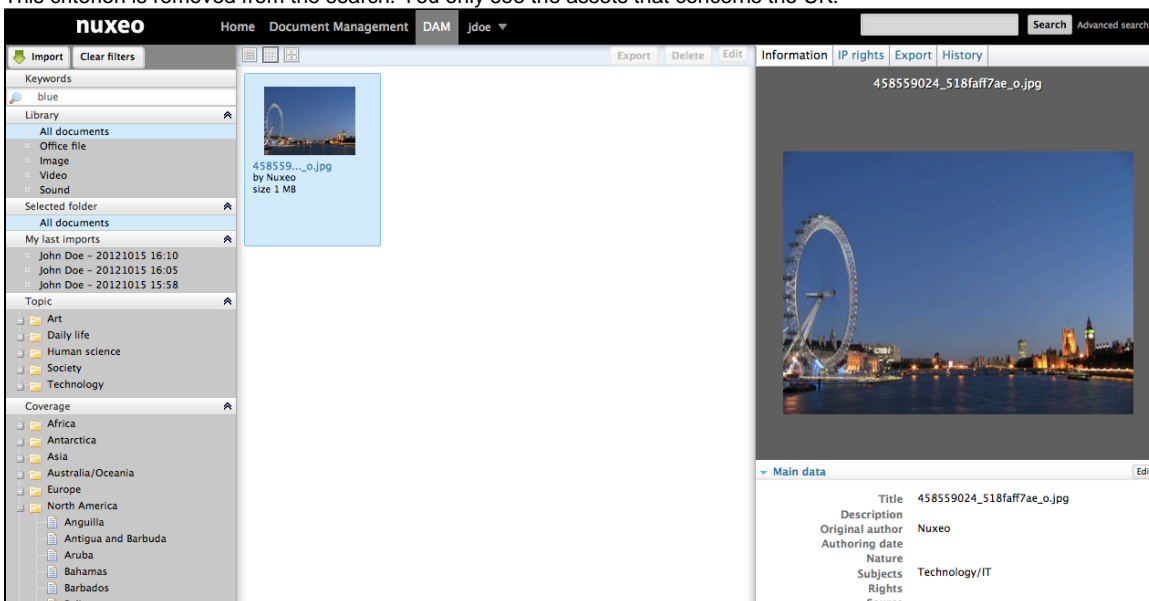
The search results will be filtered accordingly.



2. Now, you hesitate between choosing a picture of New York, or a picture from the UK. Add a new geographical coverage location in the tree by clicking on "Europe" > "United Kingdom of Great Britain and N. Ireland" entry in that tree. The results will show pictures whose coverage is the US OR the UK:



- Click again on the entry "United States of America". This criterion is removed from the search. You only see the assets that concerns the UK:



Consulting and editing assets

This page describes the information available on different assets types, and how to consult and edit them.

On this page
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Consulting assets <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Consulting a picture and office documents Consulting a video asset Main Metadata IPTC and EXIF metadata IP (Intellectual Property) Rights History Editing an asset's metadata

Consulting assets

Users can see assets when they have at least "Read" permission on the folder in which the asset is located.

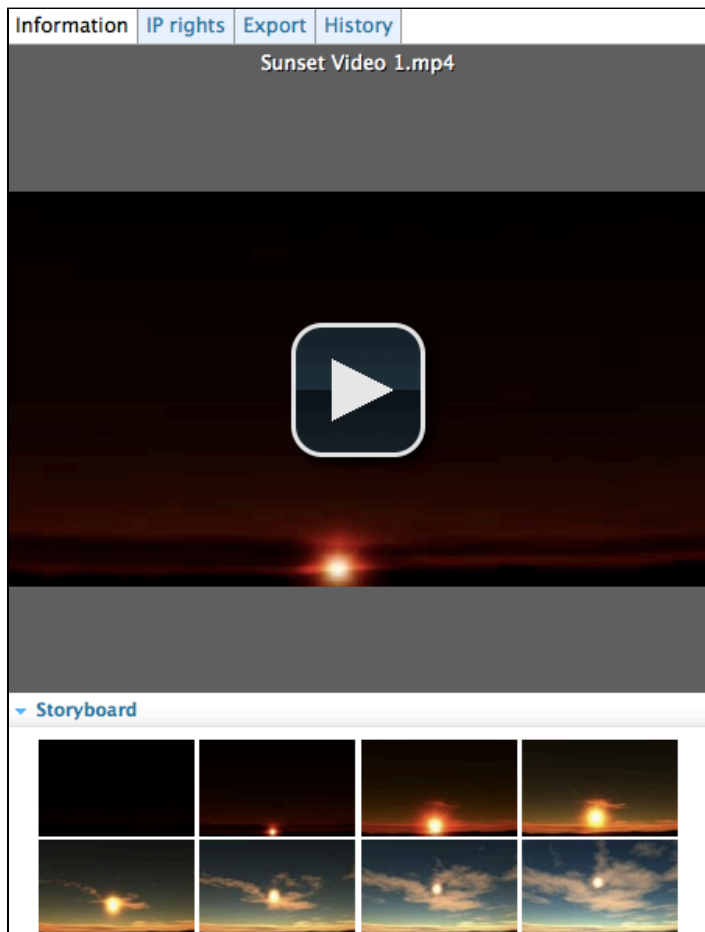
Consulting a picture and office documents

When you browse and search a picture, you just need to click on it to preview it on the right column of the page and consult its metadata. Click on the picture's preview to see the full size version.

Consulting a video asset

When a video is imported, thumbnails that segment the video are automatically created to constitute a storyboard.

You can view the chapter you were looking for by clicking on the corresponding thumbnail. The video will play in the preview, starting at the image you selected.

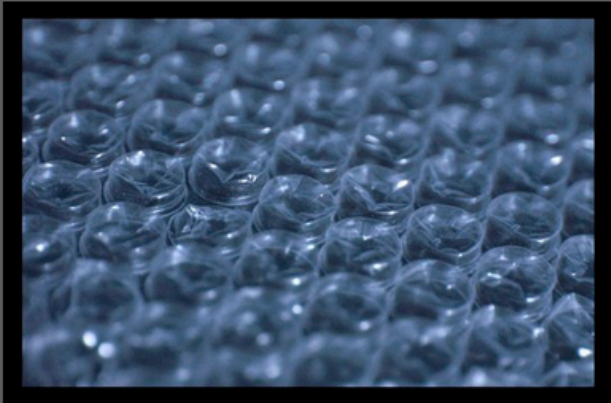


Main Metadata

The Information pane shows the main metadata, which were partially filled in when you imported the resources. Some of the asset's metadata are automatically filled in by the system.

Information
IP rights
Export
History

107325896_cf0fbbc9df_o.jpg



Main data
Edit

Title

Description

Original author

Authoring date

Nature

Subjects

Rights

Source

Coverage

Created at

Last modified at

Format

Language

Expiration date

Author

Contributors

Last contributor

Size

Width

107325896_cf0fbbc9df_o.jpg
Nuxeo

Technology/IT

10/15/2012 3:58 PM
10/15/2012 3:58 PM

John Doe
John Doe
system
151 KB
2256 px

Title	Description
Title	Name of the asset, displayed under the preview
Description	Description of the asset
Original Author	Person who created the asset, manually indicated when the asset was imported.
Nature	Type of the asset, selected in a list
Subject	Topic(s) of the asset
Rights	Information about the reproduction rights of the document. Detailed rights are available in the IP Rights tab of the asset.
Coverage	Geographic or temporal coverage of the resource, the geographic applicability of the resource, or the jurisdiction under which the resource is relevant
Created at	Date automatically filled in by the system when the asset is imported.
Last modified at	Date automatically filled in by the system when the asset is modified.

Format	Format of the asset, if any is preferred
Language	Language of the asset
Expiration date	End of the asset's validity
Author	User who imported the document. This field is automatically filled in by the system. The author can be different from the original author.
Contributors	Users who modified the asset. This field is automatically filled in by the system.
Last contributor	Last user who modified the asset. This field is automatically filled in and updated by the system.
Size	Size of the asset
Height	Height of the full size asset
Width	Width of the full size asset
Duration	Duration of the video and audio assets. This is only displayed on video and audio assets.

IPTC and EXIF metadata

When assets are imported, the system extracts the metadata embedded in the resource if it exists:

- EXIF (Exchangeable image file format) is a specification for the image file format used by digital cameras.
- IPTC defines a set of metadata attributes that can be applied to text, images and other media types. These metadata are displayed in the Information pane and cannot be edited.

Information
IP rights
Export
History

35961302_c681511cd5_o_d.jpg

Main data
Edit

Comments (0)
Add

EXIF

Date 5/12/2005
Width 1280
Height 898
Orientation TOP_LEFT
Equipment Canon Canon PowerShot S30
F-Number 5.6
Exposure time (s) 1/1000
ISO

IPTC

Filename WY/NE Sunrise 6
Headline
Keywords
Date created 5/13/2005
Country
Province/State NE
City
Caption Early morning in westernmost Nebraska. Just left I-80 and heading south on Hwy 61. Straight road and blue sky.
By line pfly
By line title
Copyright
Credit Line pfly
Source
Writer pfly

IP (Intellectual Property) Rights

Assets also have an **IP Rights** tab, in which you can specify permissions for use of the file.

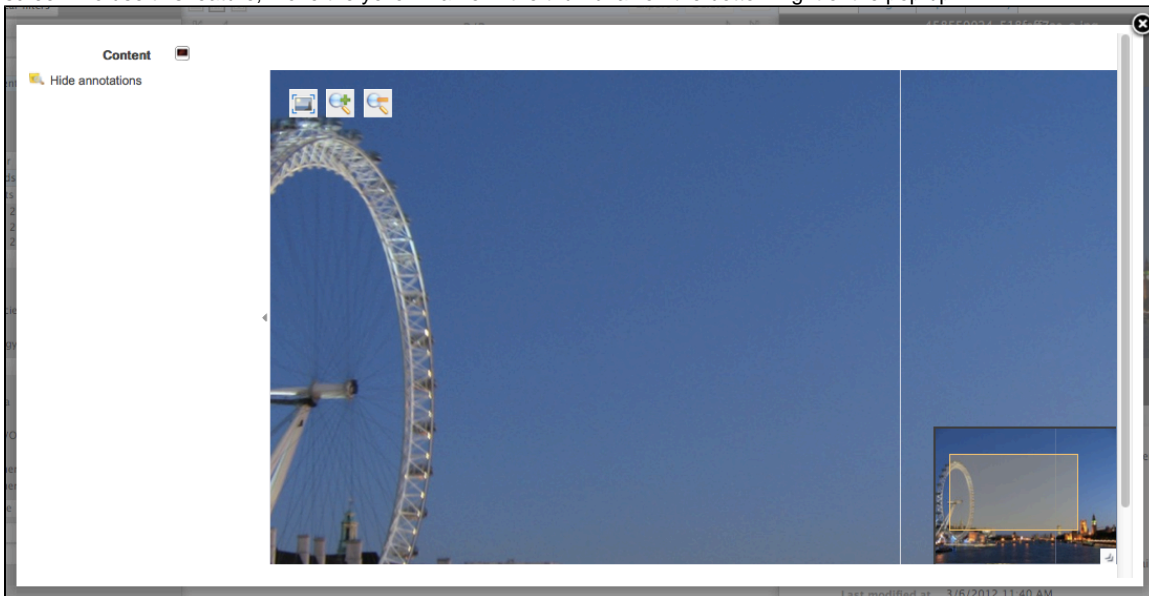
You can specify geographical restrictions for broadcast, copyright, [Creative Commons](#) Licence, embargo and expiration date.



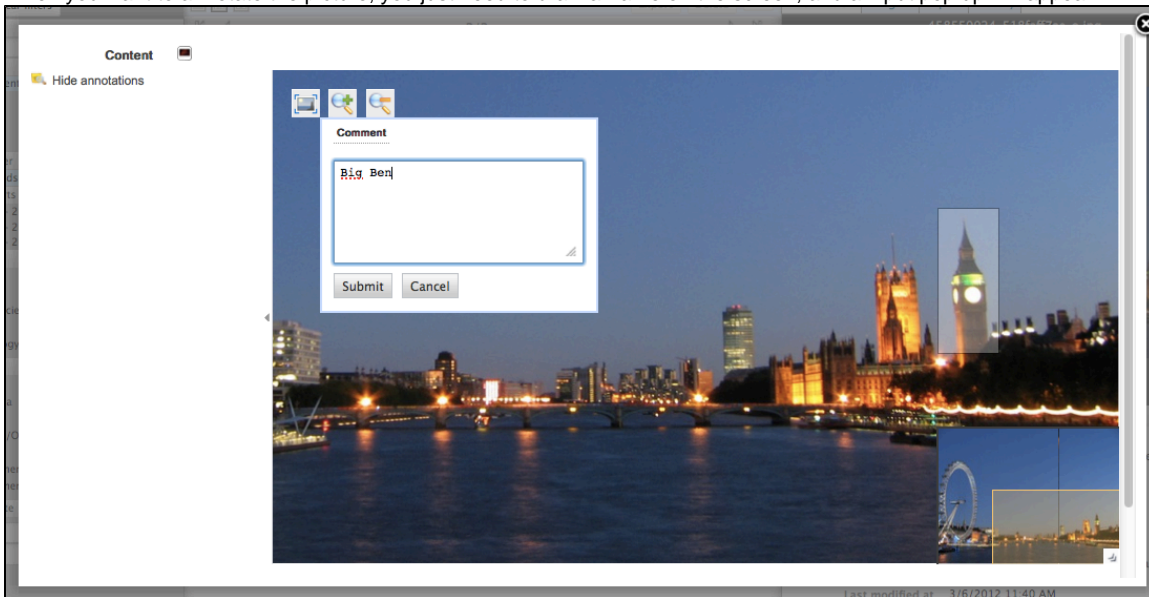
The embargo and expiration date are only informative fields, there is no automatic process on those dates.

To add an annotation on a picture:

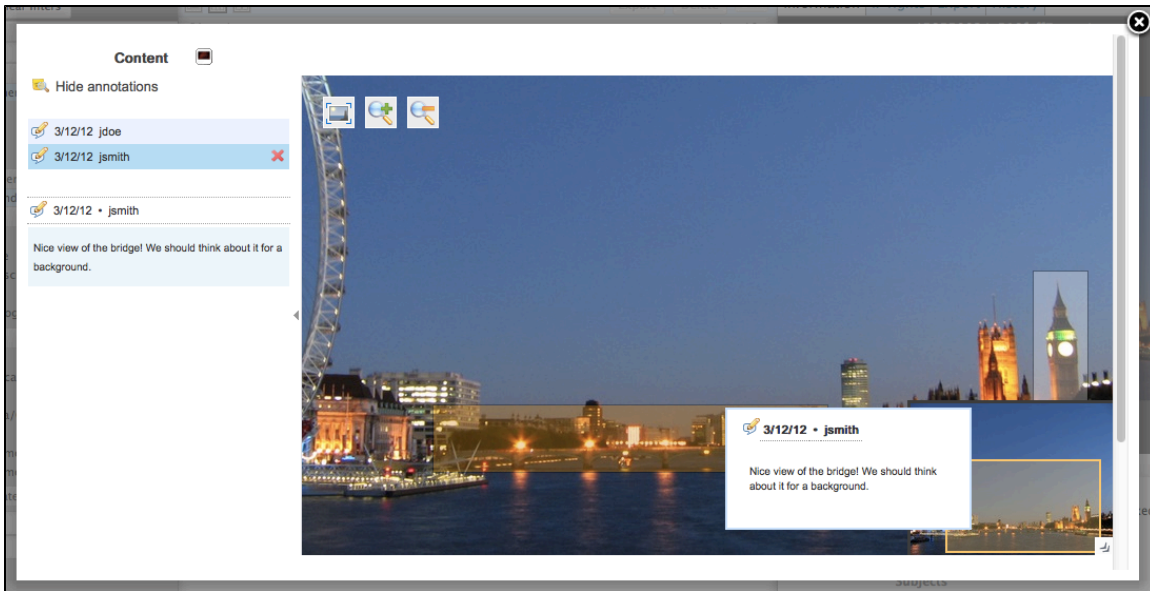
1. To access to the image view, just click on the picture's preview, on the right part of the screen.
A pop up opens.
2. You can zoom in, zoom out, and move within the picture thanks to the tiling feature, that enables visualization of very big pictures on your screen. To use this feature, move the yellow frame in the thumbnail on the bottom right of the pop up.



3. When you want to annotate the picture, you just need to draw a frame on the screen, and a input pop up will appear.



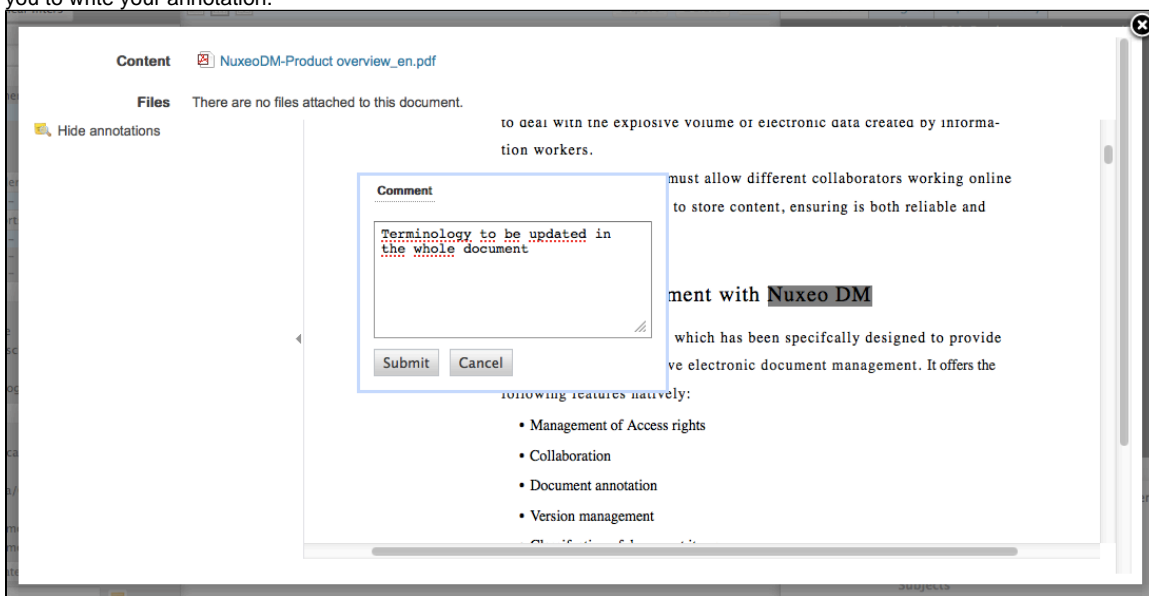
4. Once you click on **Submit**, the annotation is saved.
Then, you can see your annotation when the mouse is over the zone you selected, and, in the margin, the list of annotations, and for each, the author, date and time of annotation and the text.



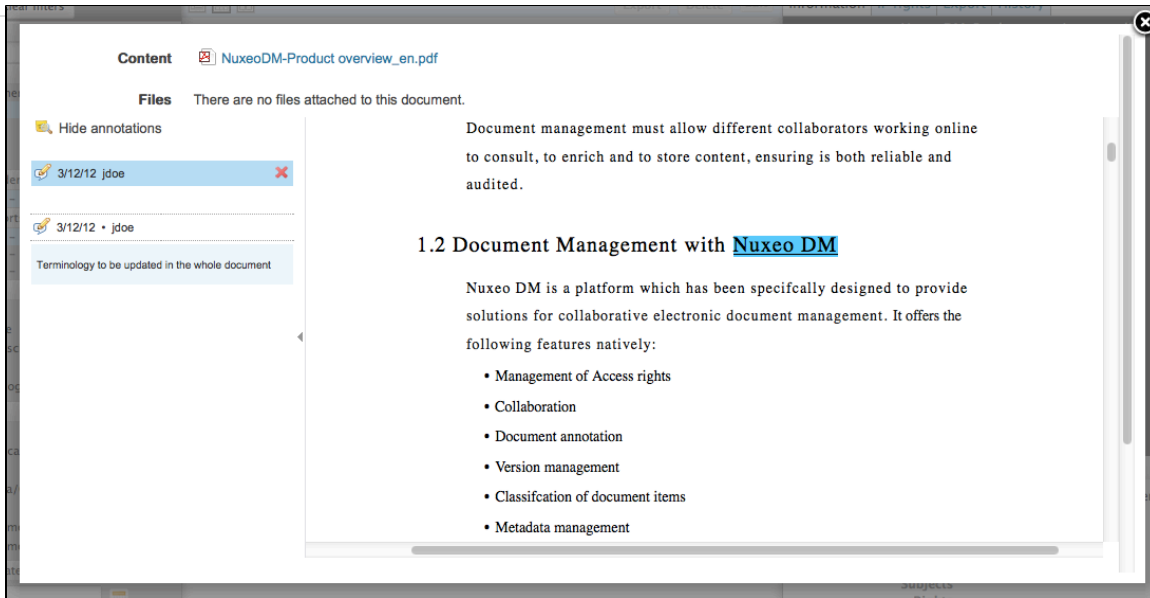
Annotating a document

You can preview an office document, and review all the pages. You can also annotate it.

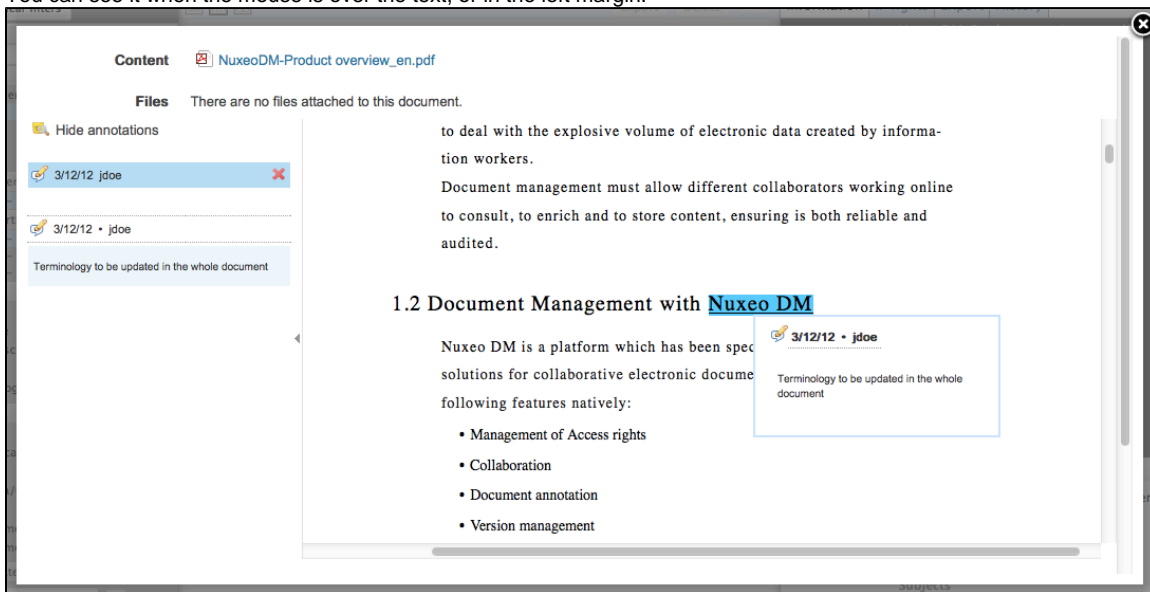
The process is exactly the same as for picture annotation: On the document preview, select text instead of part of a picture. A pop up will allow you to write your annotation.



Once you click on **Submit**, the annotation is saved.



You can see it when the mouse is over the text, or in the left margin.



Related pages



• Commenting assets



Annotating assets

Annotations

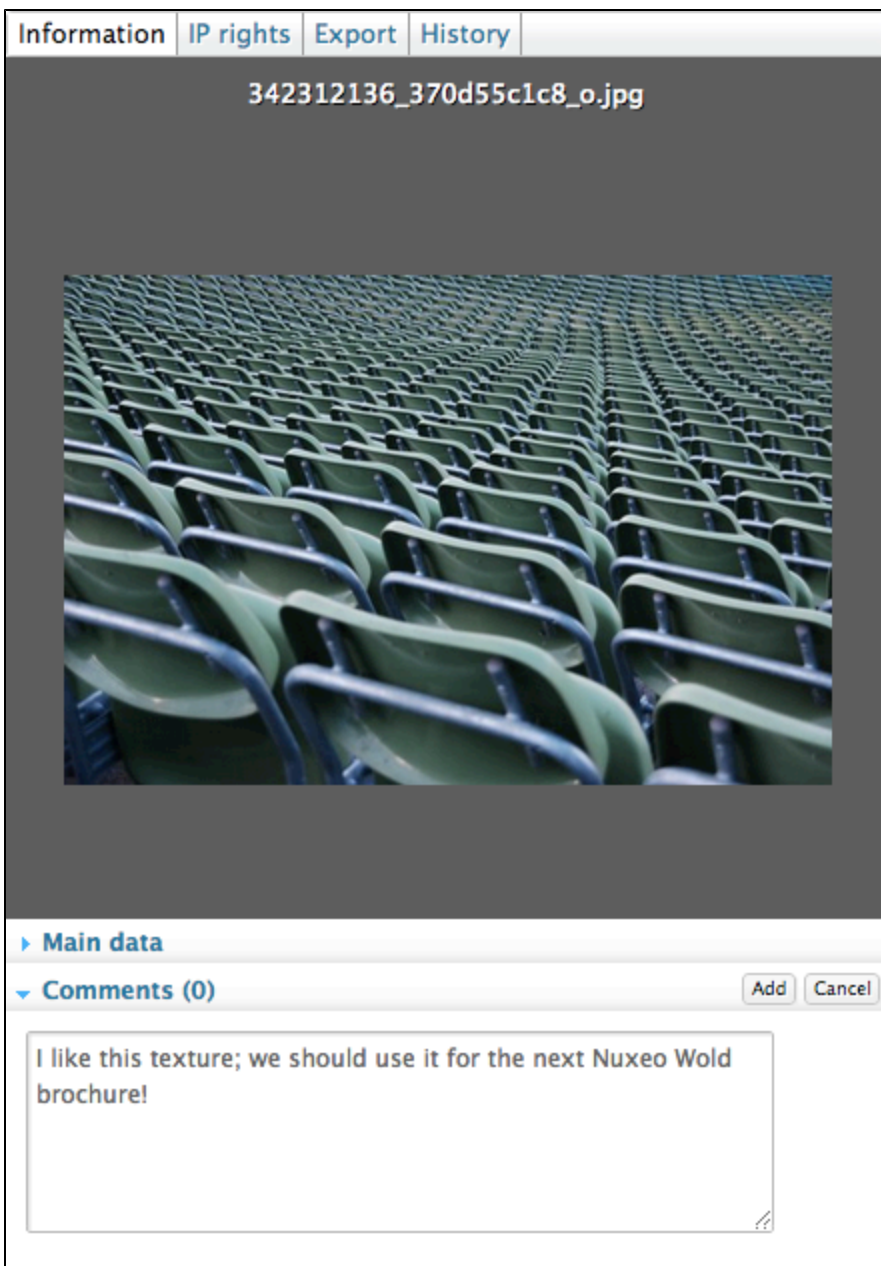
Comments enable users to discuss the asset and its evolution.

You can view comments that have been added to the digital file, with the date and author of the comments, and add your own comments.

Adding a comment on an asset

To add a comment on an asset:

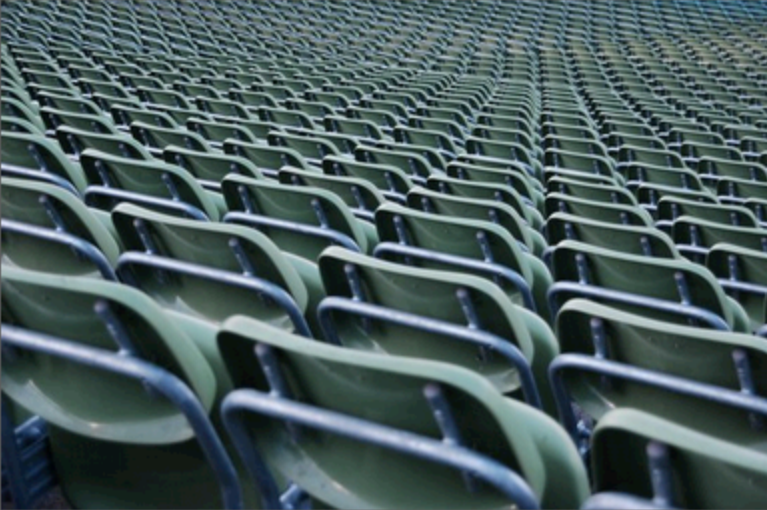
1. In the information tab, in the **Comments** section, click on the **Add** button.
2. Fill in the text area with your comment.



3. Clicking "Add".
Your comment can now be consulted with the asset.

Information
IP rights
Export
History

342312136_370d55c1c8_o.jpg



Main data
Comments (1)
Add

10/15/2012 – John Smith wrote:
(Delete)

I like this texture; we should use it for the next Nuxeo Wold brochure!

Deleting a comment

Only the author of the comment and users with **Management** permission can delete the comments of a document.

⚠ Deleting a comment is a permanent action. You cannot restore deleted comments.

To delete a comment:

1. Click on **Comments** in the Information pane of the asset.
2. Click on the **Delete** link displayed in the top right corner of the comment.
The comment is immediately erased.

Related pages



Comments



Commenting assets

• Exporting assets

There are several ways to export your assets:

- Exporting assets individually
 - Sending a link to download the asset

Exporting assets individually

Assets have an **Export** tab, from which you can export the asset.

For pictures, you may be able to select the size of the exported file:

- original: size of the imported picture
- medium: 550 px for height or width
- thumbnail: 100px for height or width



The original and medium pictures can be the same size when you download them if the original is smaller or equal to medium size.

To export the asset:

1. Click on the **Export** tab of the asset.
2. For pictures, select the export size from the drop down list.
3. Click on the button **Download**.

The system will ask if you want to download those pictures on your desktop.

Sending a link to download the asset

It's possible to send a link to your contact, so that he or she can directly download the asset.

To get the link the person can use to download the asset:

1. Click on the **Export** tab of the asset.
2. Copy the URL displayed in the tab and send it.

Managing access rights in DAM

Access to documents and the actions allowed are determined by access rights on the DAM folders (import folders, import sets, folders inside import sets). Some users will then be allowed to only read documents, when others will be able to edit documents or to manage folders and documents. The management of the access rights is done from the **Document Management** tab of the application, in the **Asset Library** domain that contains the DAM folders.

The DAM permissions are:

Right	Actions in DAM
Read	Consult content Comment documents Annotate documents
Write	Import documents Edit documents + Read actions
Everything	Manage access rights + Write and Read actions
Remove	Delete documents

The Remove permission is most intended to be denied, so as to restrict the actions available to users with "Write" permission.

To manage access rights on a DAM folder, in the **Document Management** tab, browse the **Asset library** domain to the space (import folder, import set, folder...) you want to grant or deny access to and follow the [same steps as on a workspace](#).

Supported File Formats

The Platform Digital Asset Management module supports a large number of file formats.

Format	Import in DAM	Mimetype recognition	Thumbnail & preview	Metadata Extraction	Transcode, delivery, watermarking
Pictures					
JPG	X	X	X	X	X
PNG	X	X	X	X	X
GIF	X	X	X	X	X
RAW	X	X	X	X	X
JPG2000	X	X	X	X	
TIF	X	X	X	X	X
BMP	X	X	X		X
PSD	X	X	X		X
AI	X				
EPS/PS	X	X			
PCX	X				
PICT	X				
SVG	X				
WMF	X				
EMF	X				
QXD	X				
INDD	X				
Video					
ogg	X	X	X	X	X (transcode)
avi (divx, ...)	X	X	X	X	X (transcode)
mp4	X	X	X	X	X (transcode)
flv/fla	X	X	X	X	X (transcode)
QT/mov	X	X	X	X	X (transcode)
mpeg/mpg/mpe	X	X	X	X	X (transcode)
WMV	X				
swf	X				
Audio					
ogg	X	X	X (only preview)		
mp3	X	X	X (only preview)		
wav	X	X	X (only preview)		
m4a/aac	X	X	X (only preview)		
ac3	X				

aif/aiff/ aifc	X				
au/snd	X				
asf	X				
Office					
pdf	X	X	X		X
Microsoft Office (c)	X	X	X (only preview)		X
Open Office	X	X	X* (only preview)		X
RTF	X	X	X (only preview)		X
Microsoft Access (c)	X				
Microsoft publisher (c)	X				

*Client browser must have the associated plugin installed

Managing your Nuxeo application

Administrators can configure some elements directly from the Nuxeo Platform's user interface, using the Admin Center.

As an administrator, you are in charge of [managing users and groups](#). You can create news users and groups, edit their properties, or even delete users or groups.

You can also [manage vocabularies](#), i.e. the labels displayed in drop down lists.

The default Home dashboard is also [predefined](#) by administrators. Users can then customize it.

At a space level, space managers are in charge of [managing access rights](#).

Managing access rights

Only users with management rights can manage the access rights of a space.

Managing access rights means granting or denying access rights in a space. The access rights management screen is available as a sub-tab in the **Manage** tab of the space.

The access rights management sub-tab is accessible composed of three parts:

Content Wall Edit History **Manage**

Access rights Local configuration Alerts Publication targets Trash User invitation Bulk invitation User registration requests

Inherited rights

Type	Username	Granted permissions	Denied permissions
	Administrator	Manage everything	
	Solen Gutter	Manage everything	
	Members group	Read	

☐ Block permissions inheritance

Local rights

<input type="checkbox"/>	Type	Username	Granted permissions	Denied permissions
<input type="checkbox"/>		John Doe	Write	

Add a new security rule:

Search for users or groups

To start the search, please type at least 3 character(s)

Action
Permission




1. the **Inherited rights** part displays rights that were granted or denied in a parent space;
2. the **Local rights** part displays the rights that were granted or denied in the current space;
3. the form to grant or deny access rights in the current space.

On this page

- [Rights prioritization](#)
- [Granting access rights](#)
- [Denying access rights](#)
- [Removing a user from local rights](#)
- [Blocking rights inheritance](#)
 - [Want to add your own access rights?](#)

Rights prioritization

The access rights available are:

Right	Actions in workspaces	Actions in sections
Read	Consult content Comment documents Annotate documents Tag documents	Consult content Comment documents Annotate documents Tag documents + Can ask for publishing actions
Version	Manage the archived versions of a document (view, restore, delete) + Read actions	
Write	Create documents Edit documents Add / remove relations Start a workflow + Remove actions + Version actions + Read actions	Create sections Approve document publishing Unpublish documents + Read actions + Remove actions
Manage	Manage access rights Set alerts to other users Apply a preset look on documents Manage deleted documents + Write actions + Read actions	Manage access rights Set alerts to other users Apply a preset look on documents Manage deleted documents + Write actions + Read actions
Remove	Delete documents (this permission is included in Write right)  The Remove permission is most intended to be denied, so as to restrict the actions available to users with "Write" permission.	Delete sub-sections (this permission is included in Write right)  The "Remove" permission is intended to be denied, so as to restrict the actions available to users with "Write" permission.
Can ask for publishing		Submit documents for publishing (this permission is included in Read right)  The "Can ask for publishing" permission is intended to be denied, so as to restrict the actions available to users with "Read" permission, typically to enable users to see the content of a section without being able to publish in the section.
Comment	Add comments on websites	
Moderate	Moderate comments on websites and blogs if moderation is set to "Beforehand".	

As you can see, some rights include more permissions than others, and sometimes include other rights. That's the case for "Write", that includes "Remove".

Beside the fact that some rights are stronger than others, you should be aware, when you set up rights on a space, that some rights have priority over others:

- local rights have priority over inherited rights,
 - granted rights have priority over denied rights.
- The fact that the rights are given or denied to a single user or a group doesn't have any influence.

Granting access rights

To grant access rights:

1. Click on the **Manage** tab of the space.
The **Access Rights** sub-tab is displayed.
2. In the form, type the username of the user you want to grant rights to.
To give access rights to a group, type the group's name.
The names of the users or groups corresponding to the typed characters are automatically displayed as you type.

3. Click on the user you want to give access rights to.
4. Select the right to grant in the **Permission** drop down list.

5. Click on the **Add permission** button.
The user and its rights are displayed in the **Local Rights** part of the screen.

Type	Username	Granted permissions	Denied permissions
<input type="checkbox"/>	John Doe	Write	

6. Save local rights modification by clicking on the **Save local rights** button.
Local rights are saved and applied.

Denying access rights

If a user has inherited rights that you don't want him to have in the current space, you can deny him these rights. If you want to deny access rights to a large number of users, block rights inheritance and give access rights only to the users you want to be able to access the workspace or section.

To deny access rights:

1. Click on the **Manage** tab of the space.
The **Access Rights** sub-tab is displayed.
2. In the form, type the username of the user you want to grant rights to.
To deny access rights to a group, type the group's name.
The usernames corresponding to the typed characters are automatically displayed.

3. Click on the user you want to deny rights to.
4. Select the right to deny in the **Permission** drop down list.
5. Click on the **Add permission** button.
The user is in the **Local rights** form. The denied rights is displayed in the **Denied permissions** column.

Type	Username	Granted permissions	Denied permissions
<input type="checkbox"/>	John Doe	Write	
<input type="checkbox"/>	John Smith		Read

Remove permission(s)

Save local rights

6. Save local rights modification by clicking on the **Save local rights** button.
Local rights are saved and applied.

Removing a user from local rights

If you want to refuse rights to a user, and that these rights have been granted in the current space, you can remove the user from the local rights.

To remove a user from the local rights:

1. Click on the **Manage** tab of the space.
The **Access Rights** sub-tab is displayed.
2. In the **Local Rights** part of the screen, check the box corresponding to the user you want to remove.
3. Click on the **Remove permission(s)** button.
The user is removed from the **Local Rights** table.

4. Save local rights modification by clicking on the **Save local rights** button.
Local rights are saved and applied.

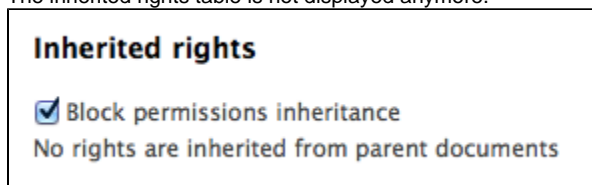
Blocking rights inheritance

The rights that are granted or denied in a space are applied to the space's content, including its sub-spaces. You thus have the same rights in the sub-spaces as in the parent space. That is called rights inheritance.

You can block this inheritance. It enables you to block the access of a sub-workspace to the workspace's users, for instance, or to deeply modify the access rights in the sub-workspace.

To block rights inheritance:

1. Click on the **Manage** tab of the space of which you want to the access rights.
The **Access Rights** sub-tab is displayed.
2. Check the box **Block permissions inheritance** located under the **Inherited Rights** table.
The inherited rights table is not displayed anymore.



You are added in the list of the local rights, like the administrators group.

Local rights			
<input type="checkbox"/>	Type	Username	Granted permissions
<input type="checkbox"/>		Administrators group	Manage everything
<input type="checkbox"/>		John Doe	Manage everything
Remove permission(s)			

In the **Access Rights** tab of the possible sub-spaces, a group Everyone is denied all rights.

Inherited rights			
Type	Username	Granted permissions	Denied permissions
	Administrators group	Manage everything	
	John Doe	Manage everything	
	Everyone		Manage everything
<input type="checkbox"/> Block permissions inheritance			

You can now grant access rights to users.

Want to add your own access rights?

No content found for label(s) permissions.

Managing users and groups

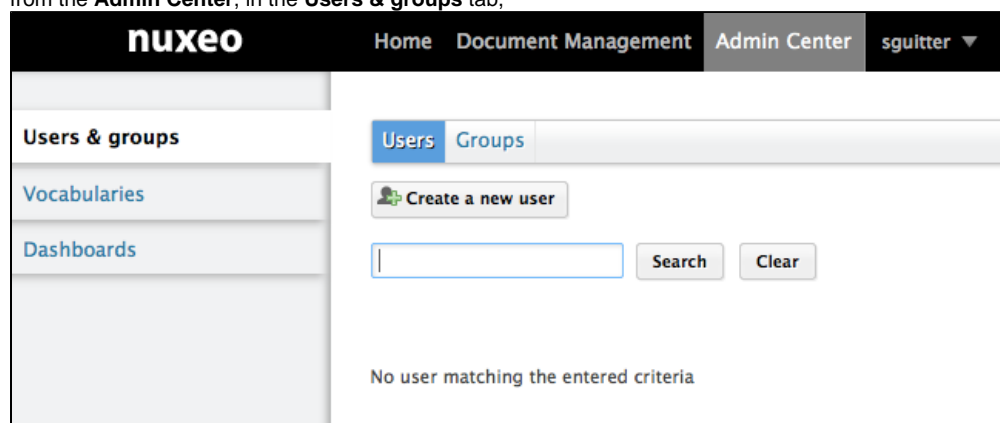
Administrators and power users can manage users and groups. They can create new users and groups, modify their properties or delete them. It is also possible to connect the Platform to an external directory (LDAP directory for instance).

Users can only consult users and groups directories. Administrators and power users can create, edit and delete users and groups.

i When you use an external directory for users and groups, the actions available on users and groups are limited, even to administrators.

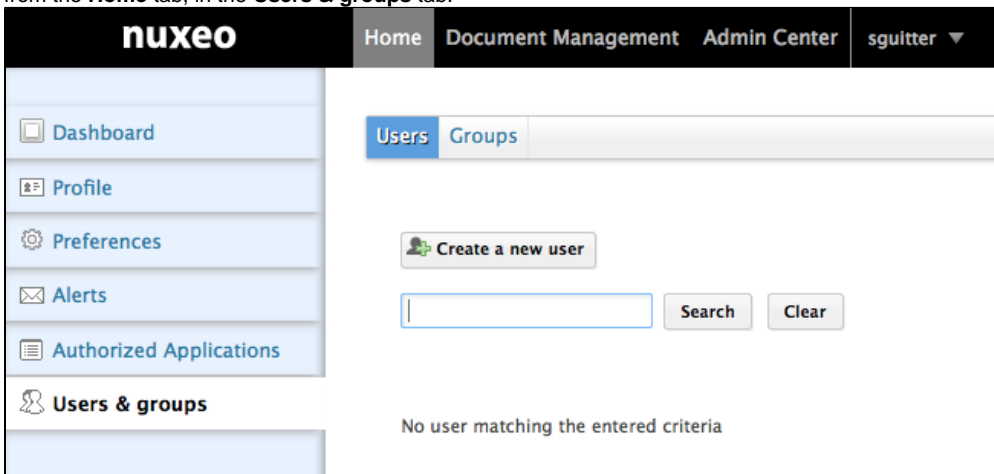
Users and groups management is available:

- from the **Admin Center**, in the **Users & groups** tab,



DM module Admin Center view for a power user

- from the **Home** tab, in the **Users & groups** tab.



On this page

- Managing users
 - User's parameters
 - Creating a user
 - Editing a user's properties
 - Changing a user's password
 - Deleting a user
- Managing groups
 - Groups parameters
 - Creating a group
 - Editing a group
 - Deleting a group
 - Related pages
 - Other Admin Center related pages
 - Want to customize users?

Managing users

User's parameters

Field	Description
Username	The name the user will use to log in.
First Name	First name of the user
Last Name	Last name of the user
Company	Company or organization of the user
Email	email address of the user. This address is used for alerts .
Password	User's password
Password (Verify)	User's password
Groups for this user	Groups of which the user is a member. User must be at least in 'administrators' or 'members' group, or one of their sub-groups.
Virtual groups for this user	
Avatar	Image that represents the user in the application.
Birth date	User's birth date
Phone number	User's phone number
Gender	User's gender. Default value is Male.

Public profile

Visibility of the information about the user. By default, profiles are public.

Creating a user

Only administrators and power users can create new users.

By default, the Nuxeo Platform has one user, called Administrator. This user is the administrator. You must use this user to create new users and delegate them access rights.



Users must be at least in "administrators" or "members" group, or one of their sub-groups to be able to access the application's content.

To create a user:

1. Click on the **Admin Center** main tab, and then on the **Users & groups** tab.
The members management interface opens on the user directory search form.
2. Click on the **Create a new user** button.
3. Fill in the user creation form.
Mandatory fields are indicated by a red asterisk.
4. Click on the **Save** button.
The card of the new user is displayed. You can modify its properties and its password.



If you need to create several users click on the **Save and create** button. The user is saved and the user creation form is displayed so you can immediately create another user.

The user can immediately connect to the Nuxeo application using his or her username and password.

jdoe

Delete

View Edit Change password

Username
jdoe

First name
John

Last name
Doe

Company
My company

Email
jdoe@mycompany.com

Groups for this user
Members group

Virtual groups for this user

Avatar

Birth date

Phone number

Gender
Male

Editing a user's properties

Only administrators and power users can modify other users' properties. But every user can modify his own properties from the **Profile** tab of his

[Home](#).

You cannot edit the username, as it is the ID of the user on the application.

jdoe

✖ Delete

View

Edit

Change password

Username

jdoe

First name

John

Last name

Doe

Company

My company

Email *

jdoe@mycompany.com

Groups for this user

Members group

Virtual groups for this user

Save

When you are using an external directory for users management, the **Edit** tab is not displayed as you cannot edit the users' properties (managed directly from the directory).

To modify a user's properties:

1. Click on the **Admin Center** main tab, and then on the **Users & groups** tab.
The members management interface opens on the user directory search form.
2. Search a user and click on the user's name to open his or her card.
The user's card is displayed.
3. Click on the **Edit** tab.
4. Modify the fields in the modification form.
5. Click on the **Save** button.
The **View** tab is displayed with your modifications.

Changing a user's password

Only administrators and power users can modify other users' password. However every user can modify his or her own password.

When you use an external directory for users management, the **Change password** tab is not displayed as you cannot edit your password.

jdoe

Delete

View Edit Change password

Password *

Password * (Verify)

Save

To modify a user's password:

1. Click on the **Admin Center** main tab, and then on the **Users & groups** tab.
The members management interface opens on the user directory search form.
2. Search a user and click on the user's name to open his or her card.
The user's card is displayed.
3. Click on the **Change password** tab.
4. Type the new password and confirm it.
5. Click on the **Save** button.
The **View** tab is displayed.
The user must use his or her new password the next time he or she logs in.

Deleting a user

Only administrators and power users can delete users.

⚠ Deleting a user is a permanent action.

To delete a user:

1. Click on the **Admin Center** main tab, and then on the **Users & groups** tab.
The members management interface opens on the user directory search form.
2. Search a user and click on the user's name to open his or her card.
The user's card is displayed.
3. Click on the **Delete** button.
A window pops up.
4. Click on the **OK** button.
The user is deleted. He or she cannot log in to the Nuxeo application.

Managing groups

Groups of users can be created and their properties modified directly in the Nuxeo Platform.

To make access rights management easier, you can [create groups of users](#). Instead of giving (or denying) access rights to single users and repeat the same operations several times, you can give several users the same right in one single manipulation by using a group.

Default groups are:

- **members**: users in this group are the end-users users of the application.
- **powerusers**: users in this group are the functional administrators of the application. They have a restricted access to the Admin Center, the administration user interface of the Nuxeo Platform, from which they can manage users and groups, edit the vocabularies and define the default dashboard of users.
- **administrators**: users in this group are the technical administrators of the application. They have access to all the Admin Center features and are in charge of managing the application. Beside the functional administration features, they can edit the application configuration, install packages on the application, consult the application's statistics, restart the server, etc.

Default groups

Users must be in one of the groups "members" or "administrators" to be able to access content. Power users must be in both the "powerusers" and "members" groups.

Groups can be composed of users and of sub-groups. Sub-group's members automatically become members of the parent group. Thus, they are granted all the access rights you give to the group. You can create as many groups as needed.

Groups parameters

Field	Description
Group name	The ID of the group. The ID cannot be modified.
Group label	The name of the group displayed to users.
Group's members	Users that belong to the group.
Sub-groups	Groups that belong to the group.

Creating a group

Only administrators and power users can create groups of users.

To create a group of users:

1. Click on the **Admin Center** main tab, and then on the **Users & groups** tab.
The directory opens on the **Users** tab.
2. Click on the **Groups** tab.
A search form and the list of the existing groups is displayed.
3. Click on the **Create a new Group** button.
4. Fill in the creation form.
5. Click on the **Save** button.



If you need to create several groups, click on the **Save and create** button. Your group is saved and the group creation form is displayed so you can immediately create another group

The **View** tab of the group's card is displayed.

Editing a group

Only administrators and power users can modify groups.

Modifying groups most often consists in adding or removing members of the group. The name of the group cannot be changed.

members

Delete

View Edit

Group label
Members group

Group's members
Search for users

To start the search, please type at least 3 character(s)

John Doe
John Smith
Clark Parker

Sub-groups
Search for groups

To start the search, please type at least 3 character(s)

Power users group

Save

To edit a group:

1. Click on the **Admin Center** main tab, and then on the **Users & groups** tab.
The directory opens on the **Users** tab.
2. Click on the **Groups** tab.
A search form is displayed.
3. Search a group and click on its name to open its card.
The card displays the members and sub-groups of the group in the **View** tab.
4. Click on the **Edit** tab.
The modification form is displayed.
5. Modify the group's members and click on the **Save** button.
The **View** tab of the group is displayed with the modifications you just made.
The new group members are immediately granted the group's access rights.
The users who are no longer members of the group are denied group's access rights. However they still have their individual access rights.

Deleting a group

Only administrators and power users can delete groups.












To delete a group:

1. Click on the **Admin Center** main tab, and then on the **Users & groups** tab.
The directory opens on the **Users** tab.
2. Click on the **Groups** tab.
A search form is displayed.
3. Search the group to delete and click on its name to open its card.
The card displays the members and sub-groups of the group in the **View** tab.
4. Click on the **Delete** button.
A window pops up.
5. Click on the **OK** button.
The group search form is displayed. The group is displayed and its members lose the group's access rights.


Related pages

 [User home](#)

Other Admin Center related pages

-  [Admin Center overview](#) (Nuxeo Installation and Administration - 5.6)
-  [Uninstalling a package](#) (Nuxeo Installation and Administration - 5.6)
-  [Updating your instance with Studio configuration](#) (Nuxeo Installation and Administration - 5.6)
-  [Installing a new package on your instance](#) (Nuxeo Installation and Administration - 5.6)
-  [Registering your Nuxeo instance](#) (Nuxeo Installation and Administration - 5.6)
-  [Configuration examples](#) (Nuxeo Installation and Administration - 5.6)
-  [Setup](#) (Nuxeo Installation and Administration - 5.6)
-  [Managing users and groups](#) (Nuxeo Platform User Documentation - 5.6)
-  [Managing authentication with other applications](#) (Nuxeo Platform User Documentation - 5.6)
-  [Managing dashboards](#) (Nuxeo Platform User Documentation - 5.6)
-  [Managing vocabularies](#) (Nuxeo Platform User Documentation - 5.6)

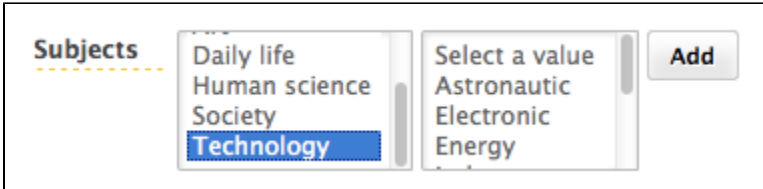
Want to customize users?

 [Add predefined users and groups](#) (Nuxeo Online Services)

Managing vocabularies

Only administrators and power users can consult and manage vocabularies.

Vocabularies are the lists of labels used in the application, for instance in drop down lists. A vocabulary is composed of several entries, that are the options in the drop down lists. Some vocabularies are hierarchical, i.e. they have several levels. For instance, the **Subjects** metadata uses a two level vocabulary. First level is **Topic**. Second level is **Subtopic** and each entry is linked to a **Topic** entry.



Administrators and power users can only modify or delete vocabularies. They cannot create a new vocabulary from the user interface.

On this page

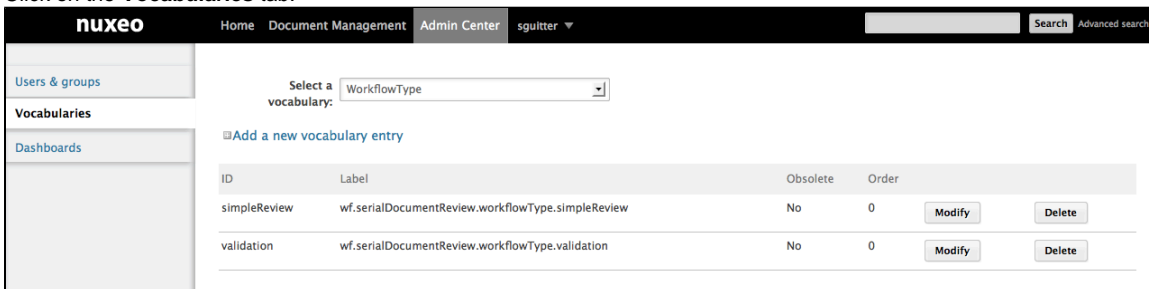
- Consulting vocabularies
- Vocabulary entries parameters
- Editing vocabularies
 - Adding a new vocabulary entry
 - Editing a vocabulary entry
 - Deleting a vocabulary entry
- Vocabularies related sections
- Admin Center related pages
- Want to know more about vocabularies configuration?

Consulting vocabularies

All vocabularies editable from the user interface are listed in the vocabularies management interface.

To consult a vocabulary or its entries:

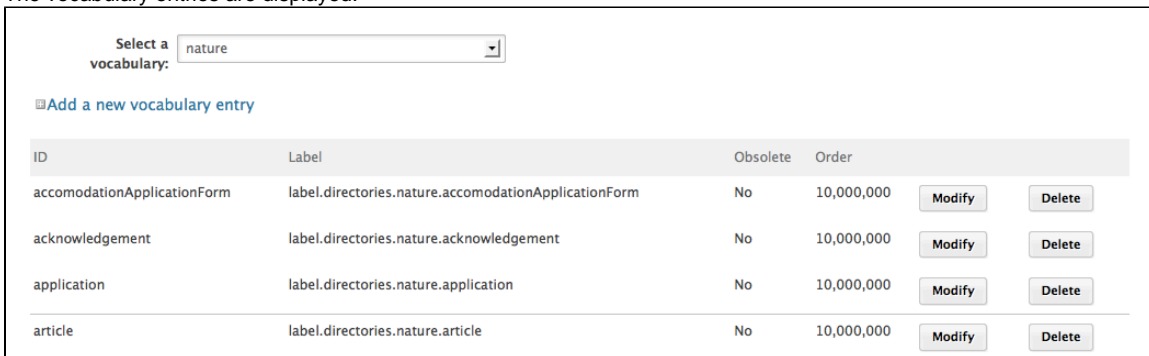
1. Click on the **Admin Center** main tab.
2. Click on the **Vocabularies** tab.



The vocabularies drop down list is displayed. The first vocabulary's entries are displayed.

3. Select the vocabulary you want to consult in the drop down list.

The vocabulary entries are displayed.



By default, the labels of default vocabularies entries are the IDs of labels in properties files of source code.

Vocabulary entries parameters

Field	Description
ID	Unique identifier for the vocabulary entry. The ID is not displayed to users.
Parent	This field is only displayed on hierarchical vocabularies second level. It indicates to which 1st level entry the current value is linked.
Label	Value of the entry that will be displayed to users on the application.
Obsolescence	Indicates if the entry should be displayed in the available values on edition.
Order	Indicates the rank of the entry in the vocabulary. Order is set at "10,000,000" by default.

Editing vocabularies

When you modify a vocabulary, you can add new entries, edit or delete them.

Adding a new vocabulary entry

To add an entry to a vocabulary:

1. Consult the [vocabulary](#) to add an entry to.
2. Click on the **Add a new vocabulary entry** link.
The entry creation form is displayed under the link.
3. Fill in the entry creation form.

4. Click on the **Add** button.
The new entry is displayed in the list of the vocabulary entries.

Editing a vocabulary entry

Editing a vocabulary entry can be:

- change its label,
- make it obsolete,
- change its order.

When you make an entry obsolete, it means that it will not be displayed in the available choices when you edit a document. But the value is still displayed on **Summary** tab of documents.


To modify a vocabulary entry:

1. Consult the [vocabulary](#) in which you want to edit the entry.
Click on the **Modify** button corresponding to the entry you want to modify.
The entry modification form is displayed.
2. Edit the entries properties.

ID	notice
Label	<input type="text" value="label.directories.nature.notice"/>
Obsolete	<input checked="" type="radio"/> No <input type="radio"/> Yes
Order	<input type="text" value="10,000,000"/>
<input type="button" value="Save"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>	

- Click on the **Save** button.
The list of the vocabulary entries is displayed.






Deleting a vocabulary entry

 Deleting a vocabulary entry is a permanent action.












To delete vocabulary entry:

- Consult the [vocabulary](#) to delete an entry from.
- Click on the **Delete** button of the entry to erase.
- On the window that pops up, click on the **OK** button.
The entry is permanently erased. The list of the vocabulary entries is displayed.

Vocabularies related sections

-  [Consulting and editing assets](#)
-  [Navigation trees](#)
-  [Editing a workspace](#)
-  [Managing vocabularies](#)
-  [Editing content](#)

Admin Center related pages

-  [Admin Center overview](#) (Nuxeo Installation and Administration - 5.6)
-  [Uninstalling a package](#) (Nuxeo Installation and Administration - 5.6)
-  [Updating your instance with Studio configuration](#) (Nuxeo Installation and Administration - 5.6)
-  [Installing a new package on your instance](#) (Nuxeo Installation and Administration - 5.6)
-  [Registering your Nuxeo instance](#) (Nuxeo Installation and Administration - 5.6)
-  [Configuration examples](#) (Nuxeo Installation and Administration - 5.6)
-  [Setup](#) (Nuxeo Installation and Administration - 5.6)
-  [Managing users and groups](#) (Nuxeo Platform User Documentation - 5.6)
-  [Managing authentication with other applications](#) (Nuxeo Platform User Documentation - 5.6)
-  [Managing dashboards](#) (Nuxeo Platform User Documentation - 5.6)
-  [Managing vocabularies](#) (Nuxeo Platform User Documentation - 5.6)

Want to know more about

vocabularies configuration?

No content found for label(s) vocabularies.

Managing dashboards

The administrators of a Nuxeo application can set up the dashboards that will be displayed to users. On a default Nuxeo instance, administrators can:

- define the default user dashboard, which is the dashboard displayed to authenticated users by default and which they can [customize](#);
- add external gadgets that users will be able to display on their dashboard by [customizing it](#).



When [anonymous access to Nuxeo DM is enabled](#), administrators can define the anonymous dashboard, which is the dashboard displayed to users that are not logged in. The configuration of the anonymous dashboard works exactly [like the default user dashboard](#).

On this page

- [Defining the default user dashboard](#)
- [Managing external gadgets](#)
 - [Adding external gadgets](#)
 - [Modifying an external gadget](#)
 - [Deleting an external gadget](#)
 - [Dashboard related pages](#)
 - [Other Admin Center related pages](#)

Defining the default user dashboard

The user default dashboard is used to generate the user's dashboard the first time the user logs in, and when the user clicks on the "Restore default" button on his dashboard. Both administrators and power users can define this default dashboard.

The Nuxeo Platform includes a dashboard that is proposed as the default user dashboard. You can edit this default user dashboard to make it adapted to your organization and users. Editing the default user dashboard works the same way users can edit their dashboard. You can:

- [change the dashboard layout](#),
- [add or remove gadgets](#),
- [edit widgets](#).

Social Collaboration default dashboard management by a power user

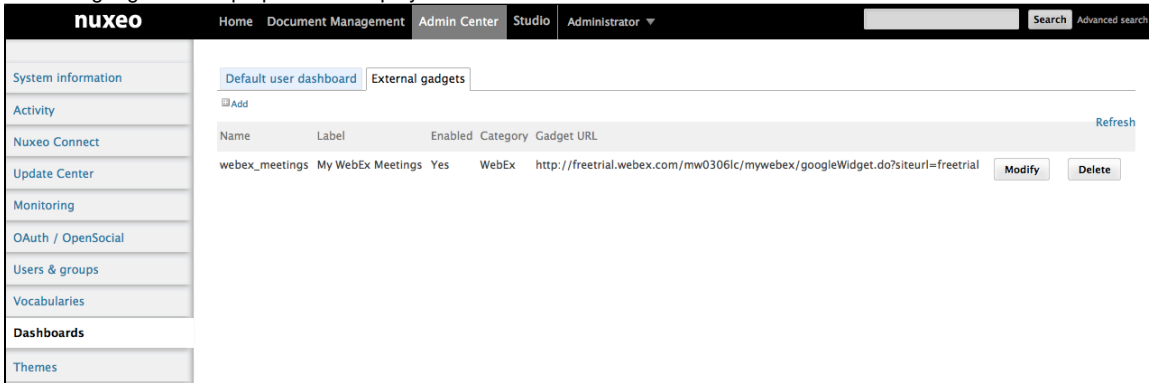
Managing external gadgets

As an administrator, you can add and manage gadgets from other applications or websites so that they are available for users when they click on the "Add gadget" button.

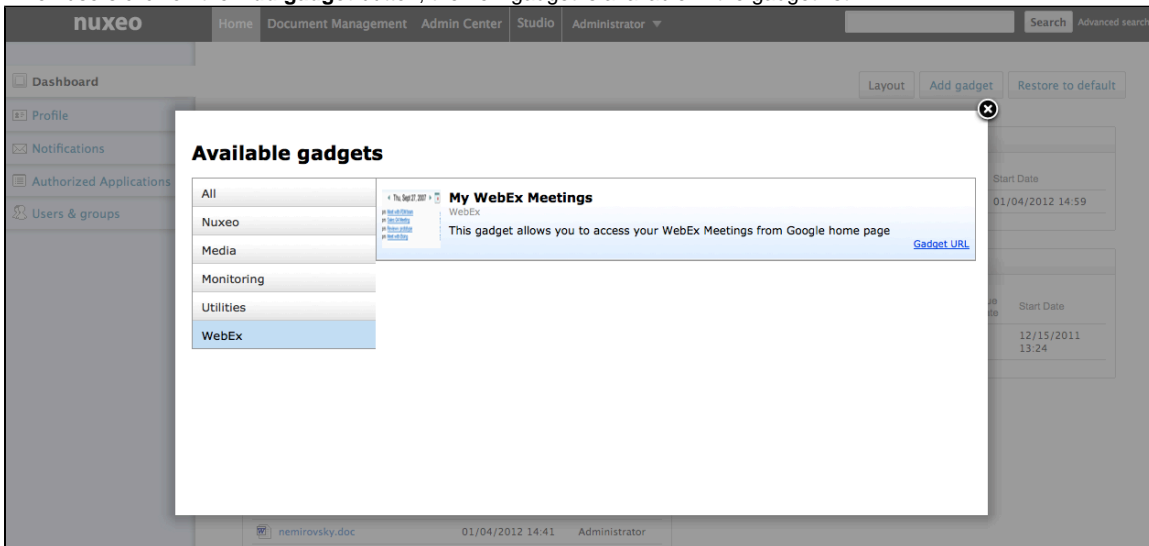
Adding external gadgets

To add an external gadget:

1. On the website which provides the external gadget, copy the gadget's URL.
2. Log in to Nuxeo.
3. In the Admin Center, click on the **Dashboards** tab.
4. Click on the **External gadgets** tabs.
The **Add** link is displayed.
If you already added some external gadgets, the list of configured gadgets is displayed.
5. Click on the **Add** link
The form to add a gadget is displayed.
6. Fill in the form (see below for gadget parameters).
7. Click on the **Create** button.
The new gadget and its properties is displayed in a table.



When users click on the **Add gadget** button, the new gadget is available in the gadget list.



External gadget properties

Field	Description
Name	The technical name of the gadget, that can used by the administrator.
Label	Title of the gadget displayed in its title bar when it's used on the dashboard.
Enabled	Select if your gadget should be displayed in the list of gadgets.
Category	Category in which the gadget will be available. You can either type the name of an existing category or type the name of a new category. Default categories are: Nuxeo, Media, Monitoring, Utilities, Collaborative.
Gadget URL	Type the URL of the widget
Icon URL	URL of the icon to be displayed on the gadget selection pop up if the external gadget has no icon provided by default.

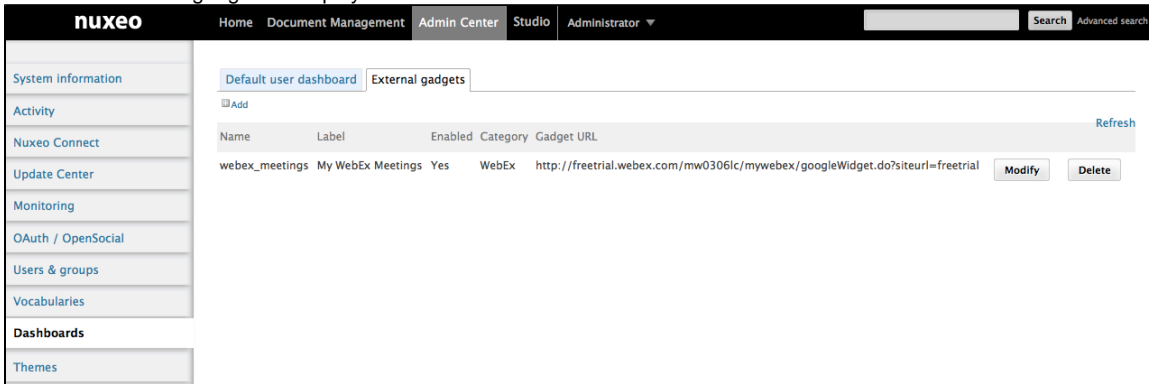
Modifying an external gadget

You can edit the external gadgets you have added at any time. Editing an gadget means changing its properties (for instance updating it).

To edit an external gadget:

1. In the Admin Center, click on the **Dashboards** tab.
2. Click on the **External gadgets** tabs.

The list of available gadgets is displayed.



3. Click on the **Modify** button of the widget to edit.
The gadget edit form is displayed.
4. Modify the properties you want to change.
5. Click on the **Save** button.

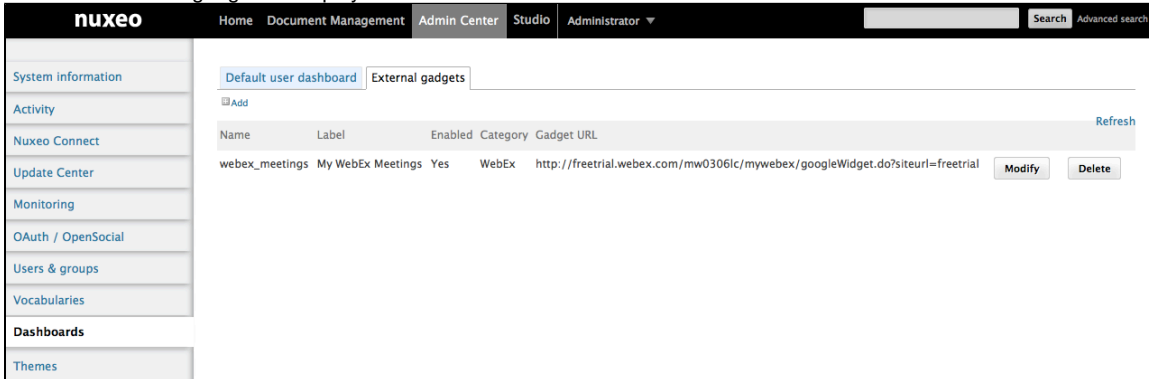
Deleting an external gadget

When you delete an external gadget, it is **not** removed from the dashboard of the users who already added it.

To delete an external gadget:

1. In the Admin Center, click on the **Dashboards** tab.
2. Click on the **External gadgets** tabs.

The list of available gadgets is displayed.



3. Click on the **Delete** button of the gadget to remove.
A confirmation window pops up.
4. Click on **OK** to confirm gadget deletion.
The gadget is deleted and is not in the gadget list anymore. However it is still displayed on the dashboard of users who added it to their dashboard.

Dashboard related pages

- [Managing dashboards](#)
- [Social workspaces overview](#)
- [User home](#)

Other Admin Center related pages

- [Admin Center overview](#) (Nuxeo Installation and Administration - 5.6)

-  [Uninstalling a package](#) (Nuxeo Installation and Administration - 5.6)
-  [Updating your instance with Studio configuration](#) (Nuxeo Installation and Administration - 5.6)
-  [Installing a new package on your instance](#) (Nuxeo Installation and Administration - 5.6)
-  [Registering your Nuxeo instance](#) (Nuxeo Installation and Administration - 5.6)
-  [Configuration examples](#) (Nuxeo Installation and Administration - 5.6)
-  [Setup](#) (Nuxeo Installation and Administration - 5.6)
-  [Managing users and groups](#) (Nuxeo Platform User Documentation - 5.6)
-  [Managing authentication with other applications](#) (Nuxeo Platform User Documentation - 5.6)
-  [Managing dashboards](#) (Nuxeo Platform User Documentation - 5.6)
-  [Managing vocabularies](#) (Nuxeo Platform User Documentation - 5.6)

Managing authentication with other applications

The Platform offers the possibility to [use external gadgets in the Nuxeo Platform](#) from the user interface and to use Document Management's gadgets in other websites or applications.

External gadgets can be from public websites and applications, but you can also add gadgets from websites or applications that require you to log in, like a gadget from your email provider. If you want to use Nuxeo's gadgets in other applications, authentication is required as well.

OAuth is a protocol that enables external applications and Nuxeo DM to access each other's data. Users can allow "consumer" (ie external) applications and websites to access the Nuxeo DM data, Nuxeo DM being the "provider".

In this section, we will take the example of iGoogle, that we want to authorize to display Nuxeo's data in a gadget.

To authorize external application to access Nuxeo DM content:

1. In the Admin Center tab, click on the **OpenSocial / OAuth** tab.
2. Click on the **Consumer** tab.
3. Click on the **Add** link.
The form to add a new consumer is displayed.
4. Fill in the form with the parameters below.
5. Click on the Create button.

Google consumer parameters

Field	Parameter
Consumer Key	www.google.com
Consumer Secret (HMAC Signature)	Leave empty
Consumer Public Key (RSA Signature)	<div style="border: 1px solid #add8e6; height: 300px; width: 100%;"></div>

```
-----BEGIN CERTIFICATE-----
MIIDBDCCAm2gAwIBAgIJAK8dGINfkS
THMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBBQUAMGAcCzAJ
BgNV
BAYTA1VTMQswCQYDVQQIEwJDQTEWMB
QGA1UEBxMNTW91bnRhaW4gVmllldzET
MBEG
A1UEChMKR29vZ2x1IEluYzEXMBUGA1
UEAxM0d3d3Lmdvb2dsZS5jb20wHhcN
MDgx
MDA4MDEwODMyWhcNMDkxMDA4MDEwOD
MyWjBgMQswCQYDVQQGEwJVUzELMAkG
A1UE
CBMCQ0ExFjAUBgNVBAcTDU1vdW50YW
luIFZpZXcxZzARBgNVBAoTCkdvb2ds
ZSBJ
bmMxZzAVBgNVBAMTDnd3dy5nb29nbG
UuY29tMIGfMA0GCSqGSIb3DQEBAQUA
A4GN
ADCBiQKBgQDQUV7ukIfIixbokHONGM
W9+ed0E9X4m99I8upPQp3iAtqIvWs7
XCbA
bGqzQH1qX9Y00hrQ5RRQj8OI3tRiQs
/KfzGW0dvLpIk5oXpdT58tg4F1Yh5f
bhIo
VoVn4GvtSjKmJFsoM8NRtEJHL1aWd+
+dXzkQjEsNcBXwQvfDb0YnbQIDAQAB
o4HF
MIHCMB0GA1UdDgQWBBSm/hlpNY91bN
fW08ac9riYzs3cxzCBkgYDVR0jBIGK
MIGH
gBSm/hlpNY91bNfW08ac9riYzs3cx6
FkpGIwYDELMakGA1UEBhMCMVVMxZAJ
BgNV
BAGTAkNBMRywFAYDVQQHEw1Nb3VudG
Fpb1BwWV3MRMwEQYDVQQKEwphb29n
bGUg
SW5jMRcwFQYDVQQDEw53d3cuZ29vZ2
xlLmNvbYIJAK8dGINfkSTHMAwGA1Ud
EwQF
MAMBAf8wDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEFBQADgY
EAYpHTr3vQNsHHUm4MkYcDB20a5Kv
cFoX
gCcYtmdyd8rh/FKeZm2me7eQCXgBfJ
qQ4dvVLJ4LgIQiU3R5ZDe0WbW7rJ3M
9ADQ
FyQoRJP8OIMYW3BoMi0Z4E730KSLRh
6kfLq4rK6vw7lkH9oynaHHWZSJLDap
17cP
j+6znWkN9/g=
-----END CERTIFICATE-----
```

Description	Leave empty
Allow 2 legged auth	Leave default value.
Callback URL	http://oauth.gmodules.com/gadgets/oauthcallback
Allow OAuth verifier check bypass	Check "Yes".
Enabled	Check "Yes".

For more information, take a look at these pages:

- [How OpenSocial and OAuth are integrated in the Nuxeo applications](#),
- [How to use OAuth](#).

Other Admin Center related pages

- [Admin Center overview](#) (Nuxeo Installation and Administration - 5.6)
- [Uninstalling a package](#) (Nuxeo Installation and Administration - 5.6)
- [Updating your instance with Studio configuration](#) (Nuxeo Installation and Administration - 5.6)
- [Installing a new package on your instance](#) (Nuxeo Installation and Administration - 5.6)
- [Registering your Nuxeo instance](#) (Nuxeo Installation and Administration - 5.6)
- [Configuration examples](#) (Nuxeo Installation and Administration - 5.6)
- [Setup](#) (Nuxeo Installation and Administration - 5.6)
- [Managing users and groups](#) (Nuxeo Platform User Documentation - 5.6)
- [Managing authentication with other applications](#) (Nuxeo Platform User Documentation - 5.6)
- [Managing dashboards](#) (Nuxeo Platform User Documentation - 5.6)
- [Managing vocabularies](#) (Nuxeo Platform User Documentation - 5.6)

Case Management with the Nuxeo Platform

The Nuxeo Platform used to feature a module dedicated to case management, called Case Management Framework. From the version 5.6 of the platform, the technology on which CMF was based, called Content Routing, has been integrated in the Platform by default to enable users to create their own routes without installing a specific module and leaving their regular content management environment.

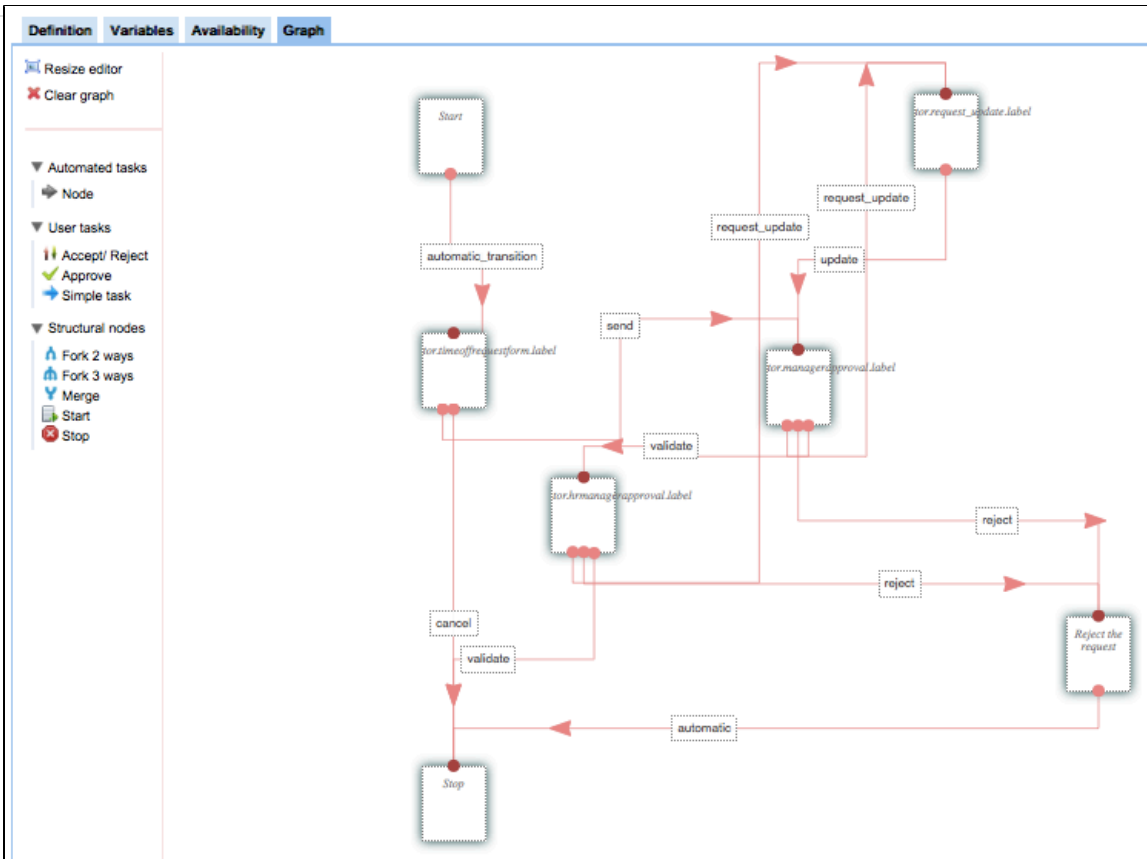
So how to do case management with the Nuxeo Platform?

It takes two steps:

1. Developers design the different workflows you need in [Nuxeo Online Services](#).
2. End users select the workflow they want to start and which users participate.

On the Studio side, developers can define the different steps of the workflow, how to go from a step to another, the different branches of the workflow, the actions available to users, their tasks etc. Their can also choose what information the Workflow tab of document should present, and how.

Documentation: [Workflows in Studio](#)



After the Studio customizations have been deployed, users can make the documents go through the workflows from their usual Nuxeo Platform environment. An example of workflow is available by default on the Nuxeo Platform

Documentation: [Default Nuxeo Platform Workflow](#)

Summary

Edit

Files

Publish

Relations

Workflow

Comments

History

YOUR TASKS

Serial document review – Choose participants: This task is assigned to sguitter

Due date: Sep 15, 2012

Please select some participants for the review

Participants on the review

Search for users or groups

To start the search, please type at least 3 character(s)

Validation or simple review

Select a value

Comment

Cancel the review

Start the review

SERIAL DOCUMENT REVIEW

Created by system

Sep 10, 2012

Show graph view

Abandon

OPEN TASKS

Choose participants: This task is assigned to sguitter

Due date: Sep 15, 2012

Please select some participants for the review

Past workflow steps

Marketplace addons

The Nuxeo Marketplace is Nuxeo's ECM application store. It offers plugins and packages that enable you to easily add features to your Nuxeo

application. Packages are listed by module (Nuxeo DM, Nuxeo DAM), and by categories (workflow, collaborative tools...). The list of available packages is available to everyone, but some packages require a Nuxeo Connect account to be able to install packages.

Each package has a dedicated page on the Marketplace, that describes the feature the package enables, if there are prerequisites, etc. Here is the information available about the packages from the Marketplace:

- **Production state:** Indicates if the package is approved by Nuxeo or is still in testing phase.
- **Certification status:** Indicates if the packages has been certified by Nuxeo or not.
- **Vendor support:** Indicates if the package is covered by Nuxeo Connect support contracts.
- **Type:** Possible types are: addons will provide new features, hot-fixes provide corrections, and studio packages install your Studio customizations in your instance.
- **Last version:** Most recent version number of the plugin.
- **Updated:** Date on which the package was last updated.
- **Target platforms:** Nuxeo applications on which you can install the package.
- **License:** License applied to the package.
- **Categories:** List of categories the package belongs to.
- **Rating:** Comments on the package.
- **Vendor:** Name of the person or company who developed the package.
- **Package dependencies:** indicates if there are some requirements for the package to be correctly installed.
- **Hot-reload support:** Indicates if the plugin is immediately functional (ie, no server reboot required).

Here is the list of Nuxeo packages available on the Nuxeo Marketplace:

Display email in user suggestion

Package name	Public / Registered access	Comment
Amazon S3 Online Storage	Registered access	
Automated Document Categorization	Public	Not yet released for 5.6
Bulk document importer	Registered access	
Configuration Management	Registered access	Not yet released for 5.6
Digital Signature	Registered access	Not yet released for 5.6
Display email in user suggestion	Registered access	
Document access tracking	Public	
Easy Bookmark Plugin	Public	Not yet released for 5.6
Frequently Asked Questions	Public	Not yet released for 5.6
Multi-tenant	Registered access	
Nuxeo - BIRT Integration	Registered access	
Nuxeo Diff	Public	
Nuxeo GSA Connector	Registered access	Not yet released for 5.6
Nuxeo jBPM	Registered access	
Nuxeo Platform User Registration	Public	Included in the Social Collaboration module
Nuxeo Poll	Registered access	Not yet released for 5.6
Nuxeo Quota	Registered access	
Semantic entities	Public	Not yet released for 5.6
Smart Search	Public	Not yet released for 5.6
Template Rendering Addon	Public	
Unicolor Flavors Set	Public	
Validator resolved by permission workflow	Public	Not yet released for 5.6

Multi-tenant

The Multi-tenant addon enables to have [domains](#), or tenants, that are independent from each other, with their own users, vocabulary values etc.

It is possible to have several tenants on the default Nuxeo Platform, but they all share the same [vocab](#)

ularies definition and users. This means that when users [configure the access to a workspace](#), for instance, and search for users, they can see all the users of the application. The multi-tenant addon modifies this behavior and enables domains to be completely isolated from each other, including their users and vocabulary values.

The tenant structure is the same as the default domain on a default Nuxeo Platform application.

On this page

- [Global administrator Vs tenant administrator](#)
- [Creating a new tenant](#)
- [Defining the tenant administrator](#)
- [Giving access to the tenant](#)
- [Defining the tenant specific vocabulary values](#)

Global administrator Vs tenant administrator

The multi-tenant addon adds the notion of global administrator and tenant administrator to the Nuxeo Platform.

Global administrators are technical administrators in charge of the configuration of the whole application through the Admin Center. The Administrator default user is a global administrator. For instance, they can install updates and new modules to the Platform, restart the server, configure the Platform so it can be accessible from other applications, etc.

Tenant administrators are functional administrators who have access to a "light" version of the Admin Center. From there, they can create and edit users and group, modify vocabularies and configure the default dashboard. Their changes are applied to their tenant only, instead of the whole application.

Creating a new tenant

Only global administrators can create new tenants.

When a global administrator creates a new tenant, he needs to define some elements of local configuration.

To create a new tenant:

1. On the page "Domains of the default server", click on **Create a new domain**.
2. Fill in the creation form.
 - Give the tenant a title and optionally a description.
 - Select the presentation of content lists in the domain.
 - Select which document types should be available or not in the tenant.
 - Select the advanced and faceted search forms that should be used in the tenant.

Create a new domain

Title *

Description

Documents content configuration

Bind document types and Content View

+ Add

Document types configuration

Select the document types that can be created

Existing types

Blog Post

Blog Site

Contextual Link

Forum

Email folder

Enabled types

CommentRoot

Faceted search

File

Folder

Note

Deny all types

☐

Default type

File

3. Click on **Create**.
The **Content** tab of the new tenant is displayed.
The tenant is accessible by administrators only. You now need to define who the tenant administrator(s) is or are.

Copyright © 2010-2016 Nuxeo.
This documentation is published under Creative Common BY-SA license. More details on the [Nuxeo Documentation License page](#).

194

Defining the tenant administrator

Tenant administrators can create new users and manage access to the tenant. They can also edit vocabularies to customize the metadata values.

When the tenant is just created, the global administrator should define at least one tenant administrator, who will then be able to delegate access rights and possibly define other tenant administrators.

It takes two steps to make a user a tenant administrator.

Step 1: Edit the user's properties to associate him with a tenant:

1. Click on the Admin Center main tab, and then on the Users & groups tab.
The members management interface opens on the user directory search form.
2. Search a user and click on the user's name to open his or her card.
The user's card is displayed.
3. Click on the Edit tab.
4. In the **Tenant ID** list, select the domain you want the user to be an administrator of.

The screenshot shows the 'Edit' tab of a user card for 'jdoe'. At the top, there is a 'Back to the list' link and a 'Delete' button. Below these are tabs for 'View', 'Edit', and 'Change password', with 'Edit' being the active tab. The form contains the following fields:

- Username:** jdoe
- First name:** John
- Last name:** Doe
- Company:** Nuxeo
- Email *:** sg+jdoe@nuxeo.com
- Tenant ID:** A dropdown menu currently showing 'Client 1 tenant'.
- Groups for this user:** A search bar with the placeholder text 'Search for groups' and a note below it: 'To start the search, please type at least 3 character(s)'.
- Virtual groups for this user:** A section for displaying virtual groups.

 At the bottom of the form is a 'Save' button.

5. Click on the **Save** button.
The **View** tab is displayed with your modifications.
The user now has access to the tenant. You now need to declare him as an administrator of the tenant.

Step 2: Declare the user as a tenant administrator:

1. On the domain root, click on the **Tenant administration** tab.
2. In the first tab **Tenant isolation**, type the username, first name or last name of the user you want to be an administrator.
To make all the members of a group administrators, type the group's name.
The names of the users or groups corresponding to the typed characters are automatically displayed as you type.

Client 1 tenant

Content
Edit
Tenant administration

Tenant isolation
Access rights
Local configuration
Audit log
Trash

Tenant ID Client 1 tenant

Tenant administrators
Search for users

John Doe
 John Smith

Save

3. Click on the user you want to give access rights to.

4. Click on **Save**.

The user now has access to the tenant administration and to the **Users and groups**, **Dashboards** and **Vocabularies** tabs of the Admin Center.

nuxeo
Home
Document Management
Admin Center
jdoe

Users & groups
Vocabularies
Dashboards

Users
Groups

Create a new user

Search
Clear

No user matching the entered criteria

The user is automatically added in two virtual groups: a **powerusers** groups for functional administration and a tenant administrators group for administration features.

View Edit Change password

Username jdoe

First name John

Last name Doe

Company Nuxeo

Email sg+jdoe@nuxeo.com

Tenant ID Client 1 tenant

Groups for this user

Virtual groups for this user

tenant-Client 1 tenant_tenantAdministrators

powerusers

Giving access to the tenant

On a default installation of the Nuxeo Platform, access rights are configured so members have read access to the content. This behavior can be modified by changing the access rights.

Users created by the tenant administrators automatically have "Read" access to the tenant. Indeed, they are automatically members of a virtual group that has "Read" right on the tenant. They don't need to be part of the default "members" group, being a member of the tenant is enough to access content.

Tenant administrators can then [delegate access rights](#) in the tenant, which will define what the user can do in the tenant.

Defining the tenant specific vocabulary values

Tenant administrators can edit the vocabularies to customize the metadata values displayed to the tenant users. See the [Managing vocabularies](#) page.

Related user documentation

- Defining the authorized document types
- Managing access rights in DAM
- Managing access rights
- Managing vocabularies
- Changing the presentation of document lists
- Local search configurations
- Document Management concepts

Related customization documentation

- Content views (Nuxeo Platform Developer Documentation - 5.6)
- Documents (Nuxeo Online Services)

Nuxeo - BIRT Integration

The Nuxeo - BIRT Integration package leverages the reporting features of [Eclipse BIRT](#), enabling users to create reports on the application's activity, directly from the Nuxeo Platform.

When the Nuxeo - BIRT Integration package is installed on the Nuxeo Platform, users can create and

generate reports, defining what statistics they want to compute. To help them, the application's administrators create report models, that already set up some parameters. The report models are based on BIRT report files that have been imported in the Nuxeo Platform. All the parameters defined in the BIRT report file are extracted and administrators can edit them in the Nuxeo Platform using the edit form of the Report Model. Then, users can create reports in the Platform, based on this model. Reports are bound to the document context, allowing to automatically get and use information on the report (like where the report is in the application's tree, etc).

Before you start / Prerequisites

The whole process to make reports available and use them takes places in two places:

- in BIRT designer, to prepare the models,
- in Nuxeo Platform, where administrators can create report models and users can create and generate reports.

As a consequence, you need to install and set up:

- the Nuxeo Platform (no module is required),
- BIRT designer (version 2.6),
- the Nuxeo - BIRT Integration package.

Nuxeo Platform

The Nuxeo - BIRT Integration package requires the Document Management module of the Nuxeo Platform.

The Nuxeo Platform must run with PostgreSQL. You can see and edit the database settings from the [Admin Center](#).

BIRT designer

Of course, the administrators who will prepare report models need to have the BIRT designer installed to be able to create BIRT report files and use them in the Nuxeo Platform to create the models. However, it doesn't need to be installed on the same computer as the Platform. The BIRT engine required to generate reports from the Nuxeo Platform is included in the Nuxeo - BIRT Integration package.

Nuxeo - BIRT Integration package

The Nuxeo - BIRT Integration package is available from the [Nuxeo Marketplace](#).

After you installed the Nuxeo - BIRT Integration package, here are the changes you get in the Nuxeo Platform:

- the Admin Center has a new vertical tab, called **Reporting**;
- A new document type is available in workspaces and sections, called **Report**.

In this section
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Before you start / Prerequisites <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Nuxeo Platform • BIRT designer • Nuxeo - BIRT Integration package • Working with BIRT reports <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Setting up the BIRT report data sources • Creating a report parameter • Sample BIRT Reports

- Working with reports models and reports
 - Report models
 - Creating a report model
 - Editing a report model
 - Making a report model available
 - Reports
 - Creating a new report
 - Editing a report
 - Managing access to the report
 - Generating a report
- Parameters

Related resources

Check out the [Nuxeo – BIRT integration screencast](#) to get an overview of the package's features.

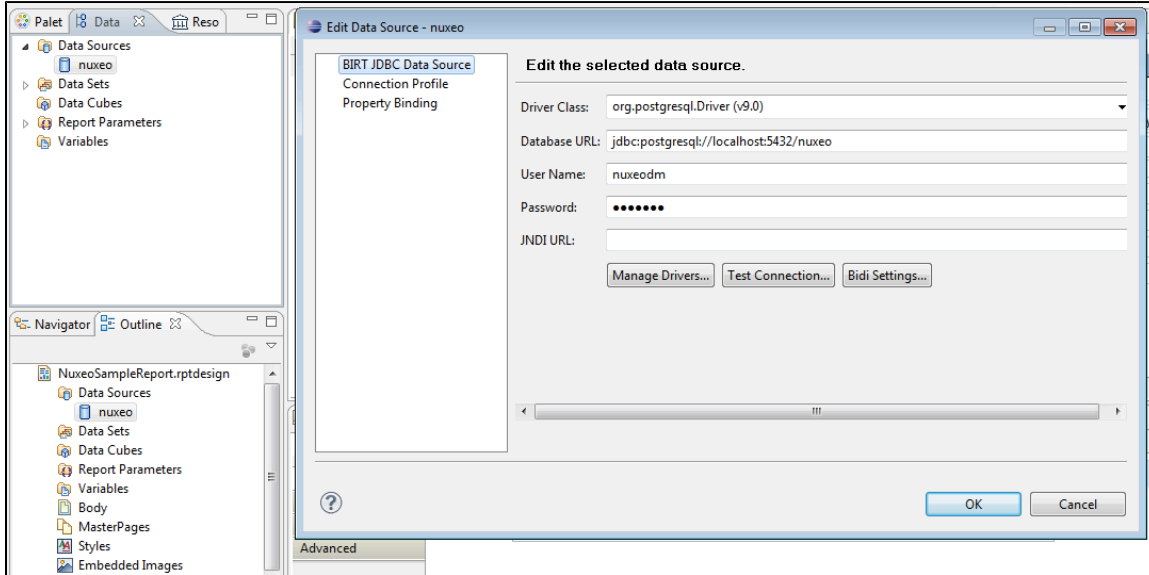
Working with BIRT reports

This section is about what needs to be changed in the BIRT configuration to have report files that can be imported successfully in the Nuxeo Platform. For information about how to create reports in BIRT and its features, you can report to the tutorials, FAQ and examples from the [Eclipse BIRT website](#).

Setting up the BIRT report data sources

To automatically use Nuxeo data sources, the data sources you define in your BIRT report should follow a name convention. You have two possibilities:

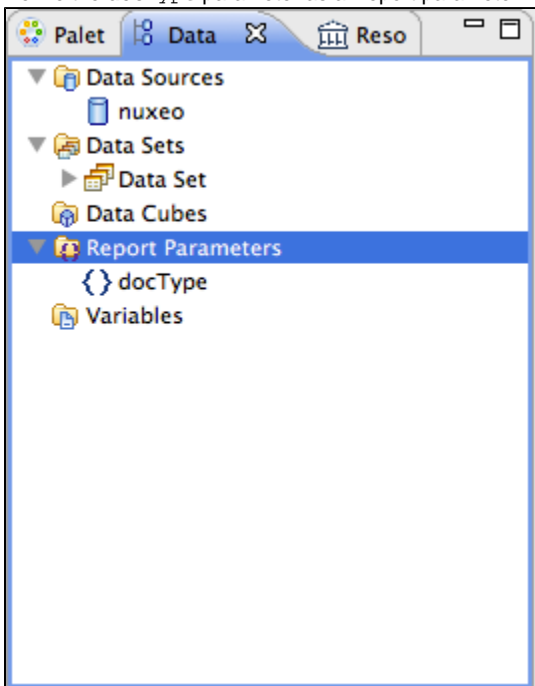
- `nuxeo`: in the Platform, the JDBC URL of the data source will be replaced by the one from the context document where you've created your BIRT Report document instance.
- `nuxeo-repositoryName`: in the Nuxeo Platform, the JDBC URL of the data source will be replaced by the JDBC URL of the data source related to the 'repositoryName'. This name convention is the one to be used in a multi-repository configuration.



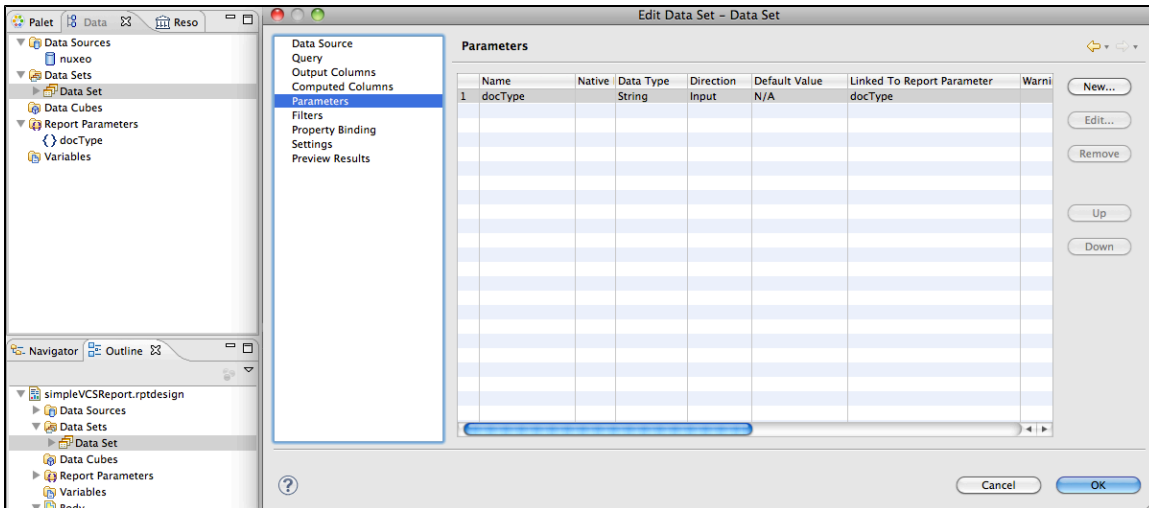
Creating a report parameter

To create a report parameter:

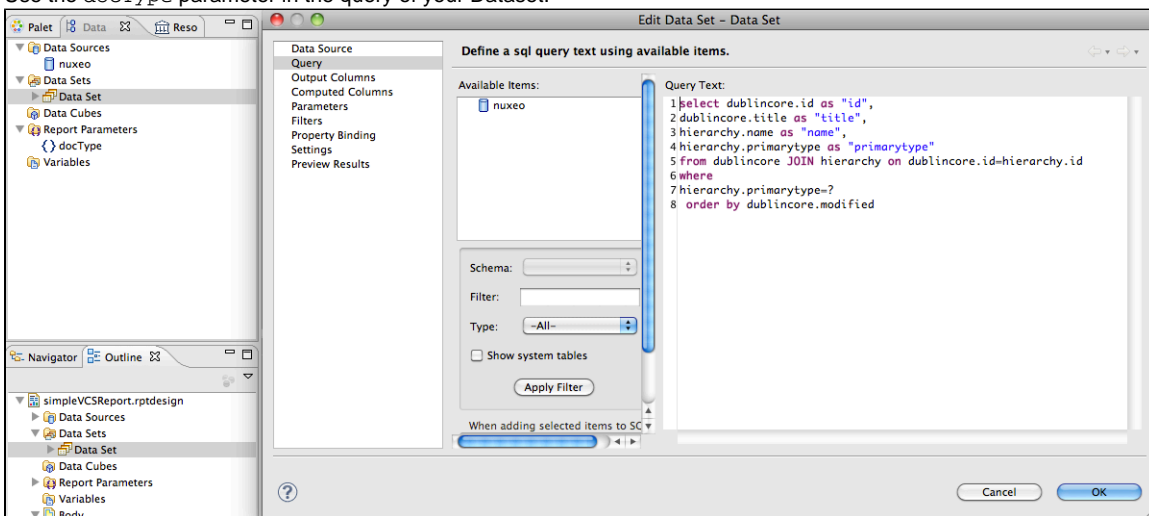
1. Define the `docType` parameter as a Report parameter:



2. Define the `docType` parameter as a parameter of your Dataset, link it to the report parameter:



3. Use the `docType` parameter in the query of your Dataset:



Sample BIRT Reports

You will find attached a set of sample reports to get you started: [Sample Reports.zip](#).

Working with reports models and reports

Report models

Reports models can be created and edited by the Nuxeo Platform's administrators, from the Admin Center.

The actions available on a report model are:

- edition,
- access rights management.

Creating a report model

Report models are managed (ie created, edited, deleted) from the Admin Center. As a consequence, only the administrators of the Nuxeo application can create new report models. After you installed the Nuxeo - BIRT Integration package, a new section is available in the Admin Center, called **Reporting**.

To create a report model:

1. Click on the **Create Model** button.
2. Fill in the form (see below for more information on the different fields available).

3. Click **Save**.

The report is saved and its **Summary** tab is displayed.

The report model is accessible only by administrators for now. You need to make it available to non-administrator users so that they can create reports based on it.

Field	Description
Title	Type a title for the report model. Note that if the BIRT file has a title in metadata, this title automatically overwrite your title.
Description	Optionally you can type a text explaining what the model is about.
Content	Select the BIRT report file (.rptdesign) to use for the model.

Editing a report model

When you edit a report model, you can change all the information you filled in on the creation form, but you can also set a parameter. If you set a parameter on the model, it will be set up by default on the report based on the model and users won't be available to change it. See the [parameters section](#) below.

Making a report model available

By default, report models can be accessed by administrators only. So, they need to give access rights on the report models to non-administrator users. The access rights available on report models are [the same as in workspaces](#).

The access rights on report models are managed the same way as on any other space. You can report to the [Access rights management page](#) for precise steps.



On a default Nuxeo Platform configuration, members inherit **Read** right automatically on report models. So you don't need to specify access rights on the model: users with **Write** right will be able to create reports on the model.

Reports

Reports are available in workspaces and folders. They can be created by users with **Write** right, who choose which model to use and have the possibility to define some parameters as frozen. Users with **Read** right can generate the report and see the updated computed results.

Creating a new report

A BIRT report is created as any other document in the Nuxeo Platform.

1. In the **Content** tab of the workspace, click on the **New** button.
2. On the window **Available document types**, click on **BIRT Report**.

3. Fill in the report's creation form.
 4. Click on the **Create** button.
- The **Preview** tab of the report is displayed.
- You can now either:

- [generate the report](#) from the **Preview** tab,
- [edit it to set up some parameters](#) for users who will generate the reports,
- manage the access to the report.

Report properties

Field	Description
Title	Give the report a title.
Description	Optional text indicating what the report is about.
Report Model	Model used by the report.
Report key	The report key is used to generate the report. By default, it is automatically generated by the system when you create the report, but you can edit it afterward.

Editing a report

The steps to edit a report are the [same as for a default document of the Document Management module](#). When you edit a report, you can modify its properties and you can set up some parameters. The parameters you set in the **Edit** tab are not displayed on the **Preview** tab anymore. Their value is set for all users for the report generation.

Managing access to the report


Unlike for notes and files (which are the most common default Nuxeo documents), users can manage the access to the BIRT reports. The report access rights are inherited from the workspace or folder it's created in. You can [grant or deny access rights](#) on the report just like on a workspace or a section.

Generating a report

Generating a report means filling in the available parameters on the report's **Preview** tab with values meeting your criteria and getting the results. By default, the report is generated in HTML in the **Preview** tab of the report. However, you can also generate the report in PDF format from this URL: http://localhost:8080/nuxeo/site/reports/REPORT_KEY/pdf. The REPORT_KEY can be found in the **Summary** tab of the report.



Instead of the Report Key metadata, you can use the report ID. To know the ID of the report:

1. Click on the icon . The page is reloaded using a new URL.
2. In the URL, copy the ID of the document, which is between default/ and /view_documents?. In this example URL, the ID is in bold: "[http://localhost:8080/nuxeo/nxdoc/default/**e1f6d76f-405b-43d1-bb36-f7d8cd4068ba**/view_documents?tabId=&conversationId=0NXMAIN](http://localhost:8080/nuxeo/nxdoc/default/e1f6d76f-405b-43d1-bb36-f7d8cd4068ba/view_documents?tabId=&conversationId=0NXMAIN)".

If no parameter is left to be filled in by the user, the report is generated when you click on it to consult it. For more information about the parameters, see the [parameter section](#).

Parameters

Reports are generally based on parameters whose values can be set by users so as to computer the report. Parameters values can be defined at three places:

- on the report model Edit tab;
- on the report Edit tab: Only the parameters which are not set into the report model can be set here;
- on the report **Preview** tab: Only the parameters that are not set on the model or the report itself.

Reports are bound to the document context, which means that there is a set of parameters that will be automatically set from the document context if they are defined in the BIRT report. Those parameters will be filled by the Nuxeo instance when generating a report, and so you can use them when working on your BIRT report:

- `${userName}`: the username of the current user asking for the BIRT Report;
- `${docType}`: the document type of the BIRT Report (BirtReport);
- `${currentPath}`: the path of the BIRT Report document in the Nuxeo Platform;
- `${currentRepository}`: the repository name where the report is stored;

- `${currentSuperSpacePath}`: the path of the first parent of the report that is a super space (ie that has the superspace facet). By default, workspaces and domains are super spaces.
- `${currentSuperSpaceId}`: the ID of the first parent of the report that is a super space (ie that has the superspace facet). By default, workspaces and domains are super spaces.
- `${currentWorkspacePath}`: the path of the first parent workspace of the BIRT report;
- `${currentWorkspaceId}`: the ID of the workspace the report is in;
- `${currentDomainPath}`: the path of the first parent Domain of the report;
- `${currentDomainId}`: the ID of the domain the report is in.

Nuxeo Diff

It is possible to compare two documents or two versions of a document to see the differences between documents or versions.

When you compare two documents or versions of a document, the elements below are compared:

- the metadata (title, coverage, modification date, etc),
- the content (note or main attachment depending on the document involved),
- the attached files.

You can compare documents in any space of the Nuxeo Platform: workspaces, sections...

On this page
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Comparing a document's versions • Comparing documents <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Related content

Comparing a document's versions

To compare two versions of a document:

1. On the document's **History** tab, click on the **Archived versions** sub-tab.
2. Select the two versions you want to compare by checking the corresponding boxes.
3. Click on the **Compare** button.

The fields for which there has been changes between the two versions are displayed in a table, with the first version's values on the left and the second version's values on the right.

Comparison:

Customer quotes (Version 0.4)
Customer quotes (Version 0.7)
Back to versions

Only the metadata and content that are different are displayed.

Metadata

Last modified at	7/31/2012 4:12 AM	7/31/2012 5:25 AM
------------------	-------------------	-------------------


Note

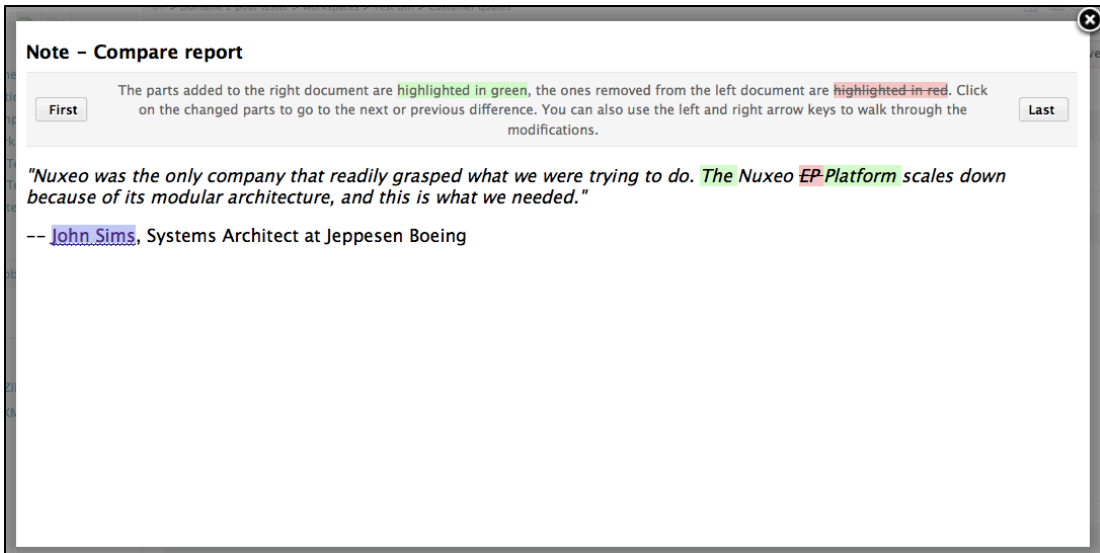
Note	<p>"Nuxeo was the only company that readily grasped what we were trying to do. Nuxeo EP scales down because of its modular architecture, and this is what we needed."</p> <p>-- John Sims, Systems Architect at Jeppesen Boeing</p>	<p>"Nuxeo was the only company that readily grasped what we were trying to do. The Nuxeo Platform scales down because of its modular architecture, and this is what we needed."</p> <p>-- John Sims, Systems Architect at Jeppesen Boeing</p>
------	---	---

Content

Attachments	Fichier	Fichier	Fichier
1	1	Customer Quotes - Nuxeo [EN].pdf	1

Refresh

4. If you want to visualize the content changes, click on the icon  on the right. A window pops up showing what's been added in green and what's been removed in red.



Comparing documents

It is also possible to compare two distinct documents.

To compare two documents in the same workspace:

1. Select the documents to be compared using the checkboxes.

<input type="checkbox"/>	Title	Modified	Last contributor	Version	State
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Customer quotes	7/31/2012	Solen Gutter	0.7	Project
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Customer quotes FR	7/31/2012	Solen Gutter	0.0	Project
<input type="button" value="Copy"/> <input type="button" value="Paste"/> <input type="button" value="Add to wishlist"/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/> <input type="button" value="Duplicate"/> <input type="button" value="Compare"/>					

2. Click on the **Compare** button below the list of documents.

The fields that have different contents are displayed in a table, with the first document's values on the left and the second document's values on the right.

Comparison:	Customer quotes	Customer quotes FR
Only the metadata and content that are different are displayed.		
Metadata		
Description	What Are Nuxeo Customers, Partners, and Community Members Saying?	French translation of the customer quotes
Nature	Note	
Rights	Copyright Nuxeo	
Created at	7/31/2012 3:27 AM	7/31/2012 5:41 AM
Last modified at	7/31/2012 5:25 AM	7/31/2012 5:41 AM
Language	English	
Note		
Note	<p>"Nuxeo was the only company that readily grasped what we were trying to do. The Nuxeo Platform scales down because of its modular architecture, and this is what we needed."</p> <p>-- John Sims, Systems Architect at Jeppesen Boeing</p> <p>"From all the software packages we</p>	<p>"Nuxeo est la seule société qui a facilement saisi ce que nous essayions de faire et qui a compris le problème auquel nous étions confrontés. Grâce à son architecture modulaire, on peut alléger Nuxeo EP et c'est ce que nous recherchions."</p> <p>-- John Sims, Architecte système chez Jeppesen</p>

3. If you want to visualize the content changes, click on the **Detail** link on the right.
A window pops up showing what's been added in green and what's been removed in red.

To compare two documents in different workspaces:

1. Add the documents to compare to your worklist.
2. Click on the **Compare** link in the worklist.
The fields that have different contents are displayed in a table, with the first document's values on the left and the second document's values on the right.
3. If you want to visualize the content changes, click on the **Detail** link on the right.
A window pops up showing what's been added in green and what's been removed in red.

Related content



• Nuxeo Drive

Document's history



Nuxeo Diff

This page is about Nuxeo Drive 2. For versions 1.x see the page [Nuxeo Drive 1.x](#).

Nuxeo Drive is a Nuxeo addon that enables the synchronization of folders or workspaces from the Nuxeo Platform with local folder on your computer.

Here is the big picture of how Nuxeo Drive works: on the Nuxeo Platform web interface, you mark some workspaces or folders to synchronize. After you installed the Nuxeo Drive client on your computer and bound it to a Nuxeo server, documents are saved on your computer so you can access them and work on them offline. And the next time you have an Internet connection, changes in your local folder are uploaded to the Nuxeo Platform. Changes on the server are also automatically downloaded to your computer. Nuxeo Drive also enables to edit synchronized documents locally from your computer.



Please note that the main purpose of Nuxeo Drive is to allow synchronization between a file system and some mount points of a Nuxeo repository. Nuxeo Drive is neither a bulk import tool, nor a repository backup / synchronization tool.

To enable Nuxeo Drive, you need to install Nuxeo Drive client on your computer so your computer can communicate with the Nuxeo Platform.

The Nuxeo Drive package adds the following elements to your Nuxeo Platform application:

- a Nuxeo Drive tab in the user Home, from which you can see what Nuxeo spaces are synchronized with Drive

The screenshot shows the Nuxeo Drive client interface. It includes a sidebar with navigation links like Dashboard, Profile, Workflow, Preferences, Alerts, Authorized Applications, Users & Groups, Searches, Collections, and Nuxeo Drive. The main content area has three sections: 'Download Nuxeo Drive client' with instructions and download links for Mac OS X, Windows, and Debian / Ubuntu; 'Synchronization roots' with a table listing roots like Documentation and Marketing; and 'Authentication tokens' with a table listing tokens and their details.

Platform	Package to install
Mac OS X	nuxeo-drive.dmg
Windows	nuxeo-drive.msi
Debian / Ubuntu	Read the documentation about the client for Debian / Ubuntu and other Linux variants

Name	Path	Actions
Documentation	/default-domain/workspaces/Documentation	Disable
Marketing	/default-domain/workspaces/Marketing	Disable

Token	Application name	Device Identifier	Device description	Permission	Creation date	Actions
9d58a1ae-47d0-46c9-9cd0-2a15493f5de9	Nuxeo Drive	f7ae2470006511e5ab2a005056f9294f	Windows Desktop	ReadWrite	5/22/2015 4:57 PM	Revoke

- a Drive icon on folderish document types, to synchronize or unsynchronize spaces.

The screenshot shows a document header for 'Documentation'. It includes a 'Drive' icon (a folder with a double arrow) and a 'More' button. Below the header, there are tabs for 'Content', 'Edit', 'Permissions', 'History', and 'Manage'.

Installing Nuxeo Drive on Your Computer



For the installation of the Nuxeo Drive package on the server, please see the [Installation and Administration Guide](#).

To be able to synchronize folders on your computer, you need to install the Nuxeo Drive client on your computer. We provide OS-specific installer for Mac OS X and Windows, available from the Nuxeo Drive tab of the Home. A Linux installer will come shortly.

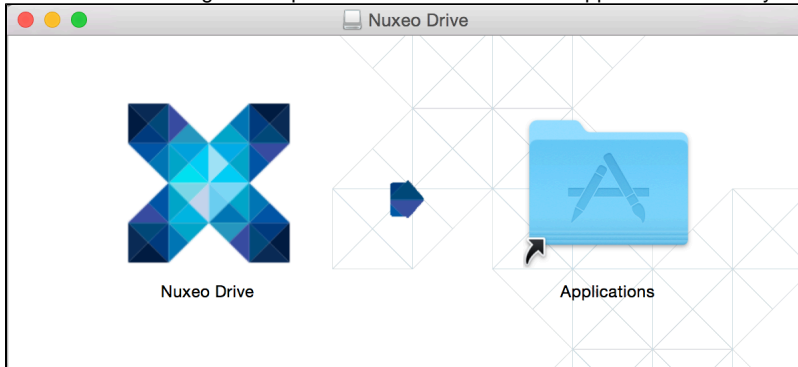
If you try to synchronize a folder and you haven't installed the Nuxeo Drive client yet or haven't provided your credentials to the Nuxeo Drive client, you are automatically directed to the Nuxeo Drive home tab to install it.

Installing Nuxeo Drive on Mac OS X

Nuxeo Drive is known to work on OS X starting from the version 10.8 (Mountain Lion).

To install Nuxeo Drive on your Mac OS X computer:

1. Download the installer (.dmg file) from the **Nuxeo Drive** tab in the **Home** or from the [Nuxeo Drive update site](#).
2. Run the installer: drag and drop the Nuxeo Drive icon in the Applications directory.



Nuxeo Drive is now installed on your computer.

3. You now need to [start Nuxeo Drive](#) on your computer.
A Nuxeo Drive folder will be created by the system at the root of your local home folder (/Users/USER/). This is the place where synchronized documents will be stored on your computer.

Installing Nuxeo Drive on Windows

Nuxeo Drive is known to work on Windows 7 and 8, 32b and 64b.

To install Nuxeo Drive on your Windows computer:

1. Download the Windows installer (.msi file) from the **Nuxeo Drive** tab in the **Home** or from the [Nuxeo Drive update site](#).
2. Run the installer: indicate where Nuxeo Drive should be installed (typically C:\Program Files (x86)) and click **Next** until the installation process is done.
Nuxeo Drive is now installed on your computer.

✔ If you have any problem due to a previous installation of Nuxeo Drive you can try using this [Microsoft tool](#) to uninstall it properly.

3. You now need to [start Nuxeo Drive](#) to use it.
A new Nuxeo Drive folder will be created by the system in your local Documents folder (C:\Users\USER\Documents\). This is the place where synchronized documents will be stored on your computer.

Ubuntu/Debian (and Other Linux Variants)

The .deb package of the client is not yet available. In the mean time you can manually install the development version.

To Install Nuxeo Drive on your Linux computer:

1. Follow the instructions listed in the [dedicated section of the GitHub README file](#).

For now, the systray icon is not visible under Unity desktop. As a consequence, the configuration window only appears at the first launch.

2. If you want to change it, issue the following commands:

```
kill ndrive
rm ~/.nuxeo-drive
ndrive &
```

3. Now configure automatic start and protocol handler:

```
# See $XDG_CONFIG_DIRS for a system wide install (vs user-specific)
cat > ~/.config/autostart/ndrive.desktop <<EOF
[Desktop Entry]
Type=Application
Exec=ndrive
Hidden=false
NoDisplay=false
X-GNOME-Autostart-enabled=true
Name[fr_FR]=Nuxeo Drive
Name=Nuxeo Drive
Comment[fr_FR]=
Comment=
EOF

/ndrive.desktop --create-dirs

# See $XDG_DATA_DIRS for a system wide install (vs user-specific)
cat > ~/.local/share/applications/nxdrive-handler.desktop <<EOF
[Desktop Entry]
Type=Application
Exec=ndrive %u
Name=Nuxeo Drive Protocol Handler
GenericName=Nuxeo Drive Handler
Comment=Handle NXdrive URL
Terminal=false
MimeType=x-scheme-handler/nxdrive
EOF
update-desktop-database ~/.local/share/applications/
```

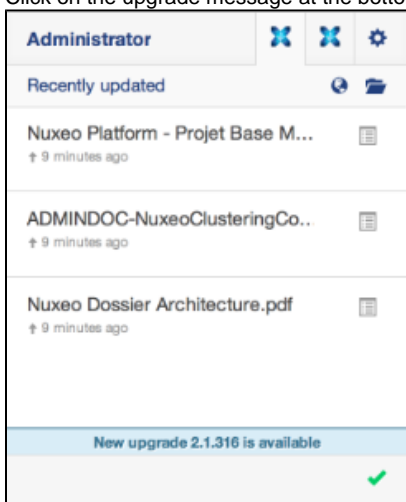
4. You now need to [start Nuxeo Drive](#) on your computer.

A Nuxeo Drive folder will be created by the system at the root of your local home folder. This is the place where synchronized documents will be stored on your computer.

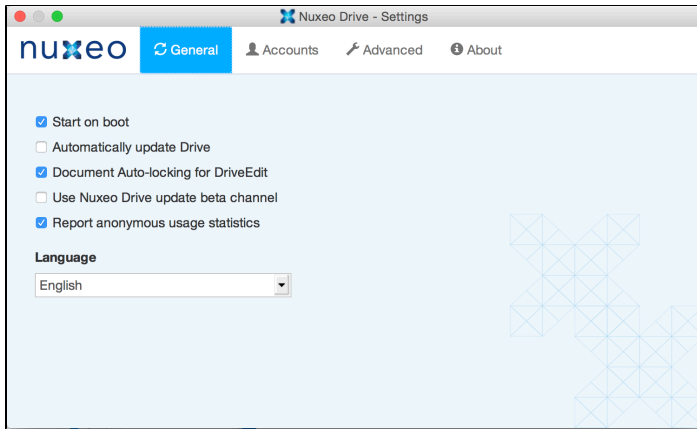
Upgrading Nuxeo Drive

When a new version of Nuxeo Drive is available, a message is displayed at the bottom of the systray menu.

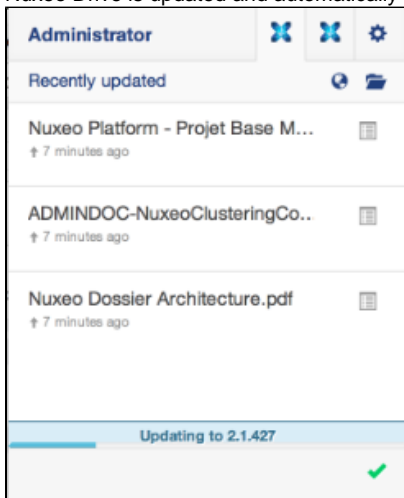
1. Click on the upgrade message at the bottom of the systray menu.




2. If you want Nuxeo Drive to update silently the next time, check the box **Automatically update Drive** in the **General** tab.



- Click on the green icon.
Nuxeo Drive is updated and automatically restarted.



Upgrading from Nuxeo Drive 1.3 to Nuxeo Drive 2

Upgrading from Nuxeo Drive 1.3 to Nuxeo Drive 2 is transparent: Click on the icon  and the Update Nuxeo Drive item in the Nuxeo Drive menu to install the new version. After you confirmed the upgrade, Nuxeo Drive will download and restart and your synchronized folders will be automatically recovered.

Starting Nuxeo Drive

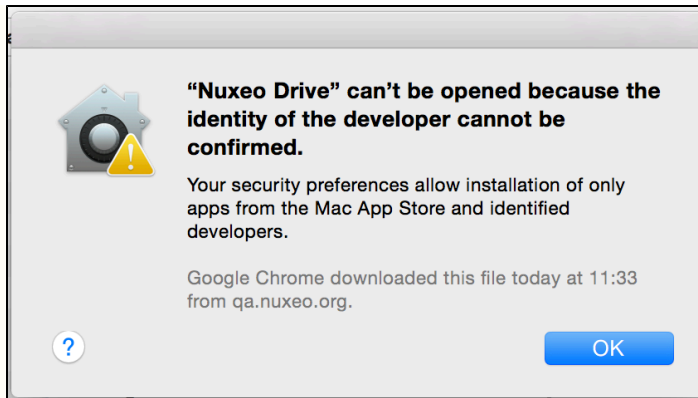
After you installed Nuxeo Drive, you need to start it manually.

Start Nuxeo Drive like any other application:

- On Mac OS X, Nuxeo Drive is in the Applications directory.



When you double click on the icon, a security message appears. To bypass it, you can modify your security settings or click right on Nuxeo Drive application and click on **Open**.



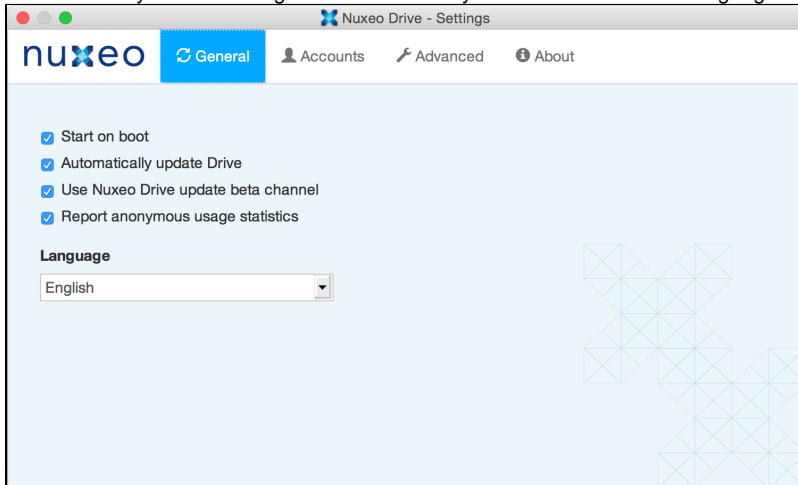
- On Windows, Nuxeo Drive is started from **Start > Programs > Nuxeo Drive**.
- On Linux, press Alt+F2 and enter `ndrive`.

Configuring Nuxeo Drive

The Nuxeo Drive settings window shows four tabs that enable you to customize the behavior of your Nuxeo Drive:

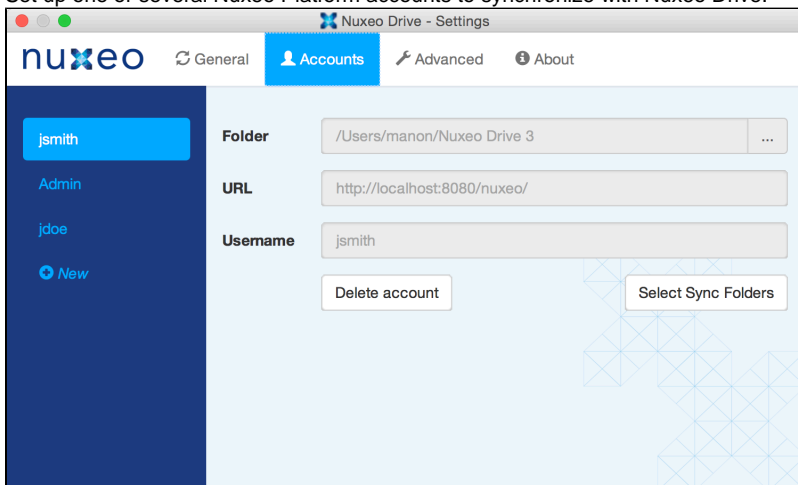
- **General**

This is where you select the general behavior of your Nuxeo Drive: what language to use, the update policy, etc.



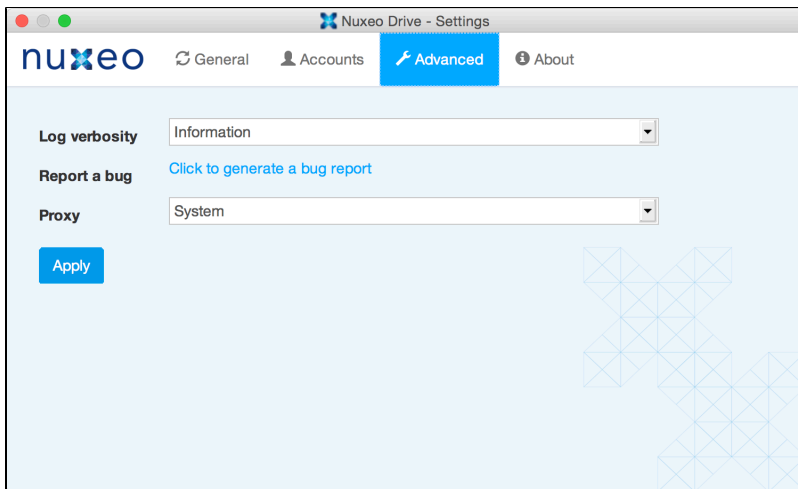
- **Accounts**

Set up one or several Nuxeo Platform accounts to synchronize with Nuxeo Drive.



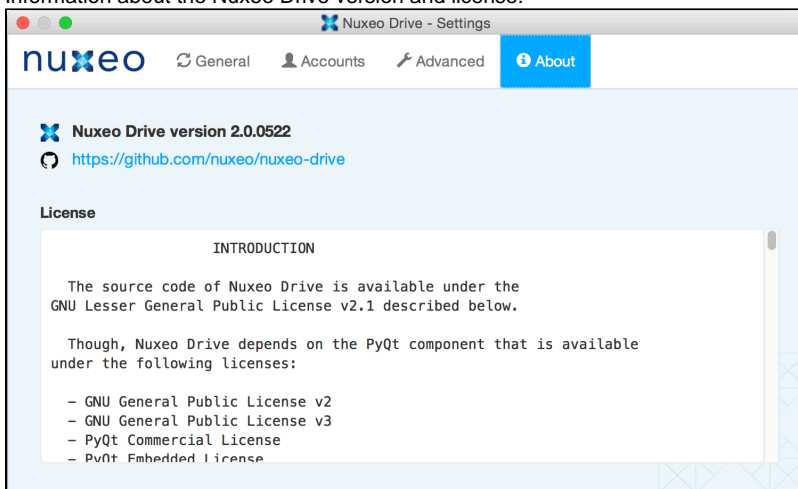
- **Advanced**

Set up your proxy, change the log level and get a zipped bug report.





- **About**

Information about the Nuxeo Drive version and license.





Accessing the Settings Window

Windows

1. Right-click on the the icon  in the systray.
2. Click on the icon  and on the **Settings** menu item.
The Settings window is displayed.

Mac OS X / Linux

1. Click on the the icon  in the systray.
2. Click on the icon  and on the **Settings** menu item.
The Settings window is displayed.

Managing Local Nuxeo Drive Accounts

You can use Nuxeo Drive to synchronize content from several Nuxeo Platform applications. This means that you can set up several accounts on Nuxeo Drive. Accounts are managed from the **Accounts** tab of the [Settings window](#).

Adding a New Account

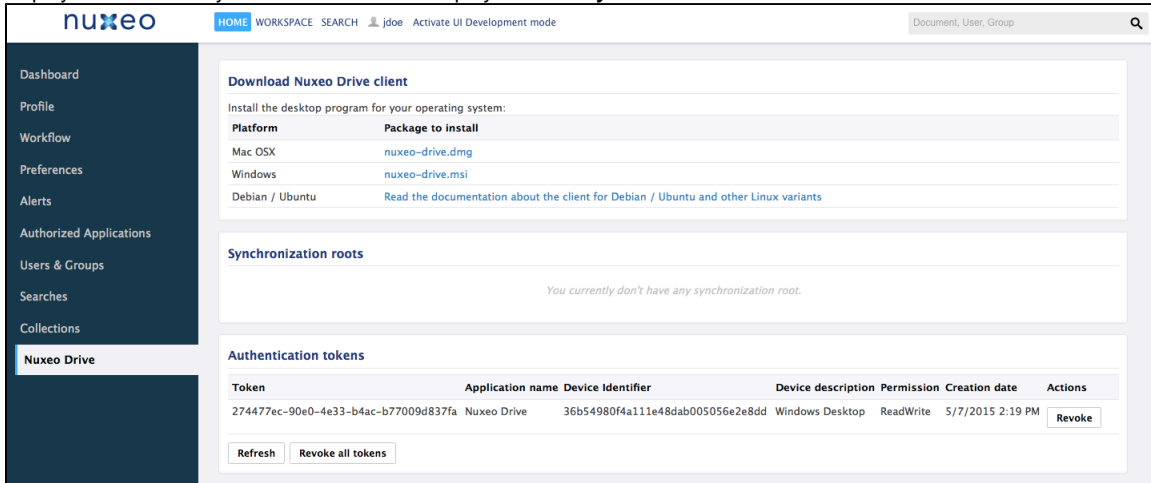
When you add a new account you need to provide the following information:

- **Name:** Give a name to the Nuxeo Drive account you are setting.
This is helpful when you use Nuxeo Drive with several applications.
- **Folder:** Select where you want your Nuxeo Drive folder to be created.
- **URL:** Type the URL of your Nuxeo application, with the `/nuxeo` suffix (`http://www.mynuxeoapp.com/nuxeo` for instance).
- **Username:** Type your username to the Nuxeo Platform application.

- **Password:** Type your password to the Nuxeo Platform application.

The creation of a new account triggers the following actions:

- A Nuxeo Drive folder is created at the location you chose (see section [Accessing the Nuxeo Drive Folder](#)).
- Nuxeo Drive starts synchronizing the Nuxeo workspaces or folders you [indicated as synchronized](#) in the Nuxeo Platform. It will automatically update content when there is a modification on the server.
- In the **Nuxeo Drive** tab in your **Home**, an authentication token corresponding to the computer you are synchronizing from is displayed. The list of synchronized folders is displayed in the **Synchronization roots** section of the tab.



Deleting an Account

You can delete accounts from your Nuxeo Drive at any time by clicking on the **Delete account** button of the corresponding account, in the **Settings** window. The local Nuxeo Drive folder is not deleted.

Changing the Nuxeo Drive Language

By default, Nuxeo Drive is available in English and in French.

To change the language of Nuxeo Drive:

1. Open the Nuxeo Drive Settings window.
2. Click on the **General** tab.
3. In the **Language** drop down list, select the language you want to use.
The Settings window language is immediately changed.

Synchronizing Content

Nuxeo Drive Synchronization Status

Here are the different statuses of Nuxeo Drive:



Icon	Status
	Synchronization is disabled (offline mode or suspended synchronization).
	Nuxeo Drive has successfully synchronized.
	Nuxeo Drive is synchronizing with the Nuxeo Platform.
	Your credentials are incorrect.

Accessing the Nuxeo Drive Folder

When you install Nuxeo Drive on your computer, it creates a "Nuxeo Drive" folder on your computer, from where you will be able to access the synchronized documents. This Nuxeo Drive folder is located:

- in C:\Users\USER\Documents\ on Windows
- in /Users/USER/ on Mac OS X
- in /home/USER/ on Linux

Quick access to this folder is possible at any time using the Nuxeo Drive icon:

1. Right-click on the icon  (in the top menu bar on Mac OS X, in the system tray on Windows).
 2. Click on the icon .
- The Nuxeo Drive opens like any folder. You can now browse the Nuxeo synchronized folders from your desktop.

Marking Workspaces and Folders for Synchronization


Nuxeo Drive enables the synchronization of the document types below and their content:



- Workspace
- Folder
- Ordered folder

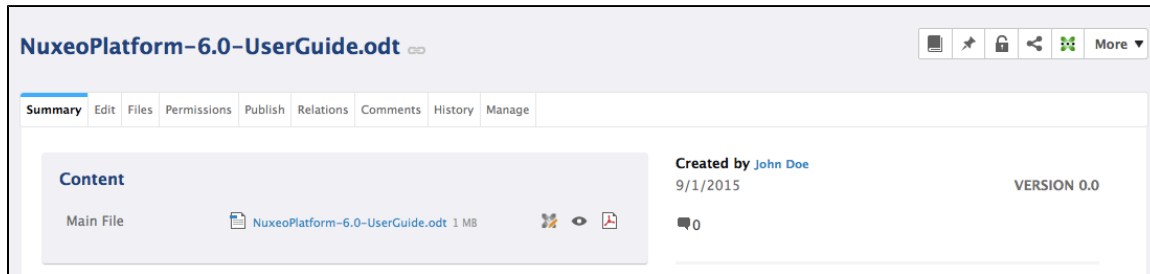
In the rest of this documentation, we'll call them all "folder".

Synchronizing a Folder

Starting from Nuxeo Platform 6.0, you can synchronize spaces on which you have [at least Read permissions](#). For older versions of the Nuxeo Platform, you need at least Edit permissions to be able to synchronize a space.

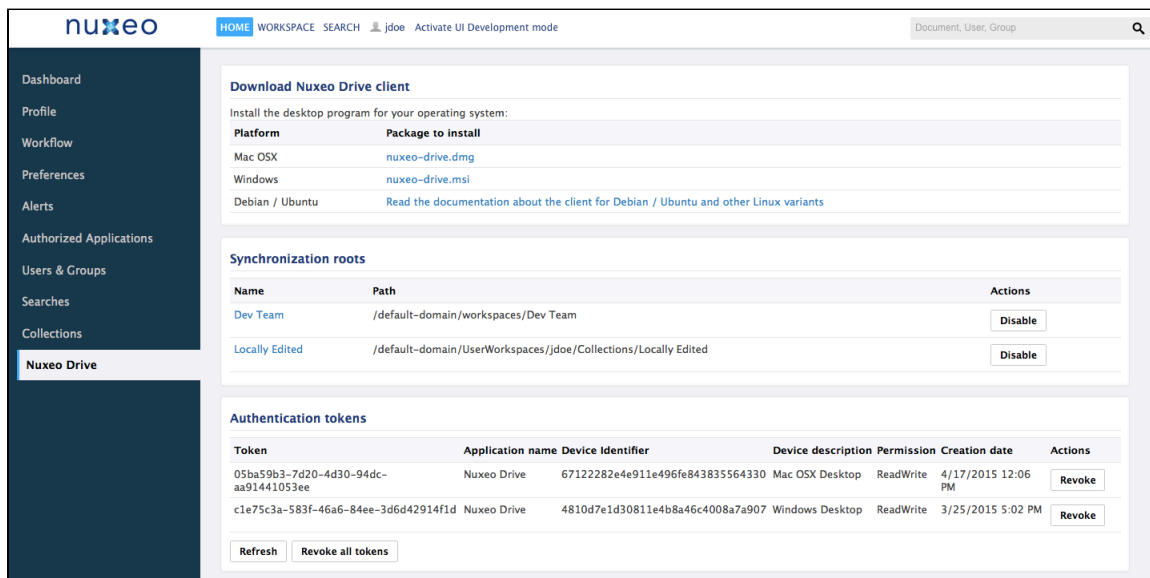
To synchronize a space, in the Nuxeo Platform, click on the icon .

The icon becomes green. Documents inside the synchronized space have an icon  and a Drive local edit icon .



The folder and all its content is now available in your local Nuxeo Drive folder. You can now create, edit, delete documents from your computer. If you only have Read permissions, documents are in read-only mode.



On your Home Nuxeo Drive tab, the space is displayed in the "Synchronization root" section. This is where you can see all the spaces you have synchronized with Nuxeo Drive.





Suspending Synchronization

If a synchronized folder holds big document or a large amount of documents, synchronization can take some time and some computer resources. It is then possible to prevent this by suspending synchronization until a more convenient time.

To suspend synchronization:

1. Click on the Drive icon in the system tray.
2. Click on the icon  and click on the **Suspend** menu item.
If Nuxeo Drive is currently synchronizing, synchronization is completed before suspending Nuxeo Drive.
The Drive icon becomes grey as long as synchronization is suspended: .

To resume synchronization:

1. Click on the Drive icon  in the system tray.
2. Click on the icon  and click on the **Resume** menu item.
The Drive icon becomes blue again and synchronization is available again.

Unsyncronizing a Folder

There are two ways to desynchronize a folder.




- From the server, when you desynchronize a folder all its content is desynchronized from all the devices where you use Drive.
- From the client, when you desynchronize a folder you can do it in detail and choose to locally deactivate synchronization of different folders for the current device.


Deactivating Synchronization Locally (Client)

By default, once you have synchronized a folder all its content (files and folders) are synchronized. But you can deactivate synchronization locally on some folders. This feature enables you to manage the storage space dedicated to the synchronization, which is especially useful if you use a device with a low-storage capacity.

Clicking on the **Select sync folders** button in the [Settings window](#) shows the **Nuxeo Drive Filters** windows from which you can unselect folders to unsynchronize. Unselected folders remain displayed so you can easily reselect and synchronize them back. They are still marked as synchronized on your web UI.

Unsyncronizing Folders (Server)

Unsyncronizing a folder is only possible from the Nuxeo Platform web interface. You can only unsyncronize the whole synchronized space, i.e. from the synchronization root : it is not possible to unsyncronize a child . Clicking on the icon  brings you back on the space from which the synchronization is done.

To unsyncronize a space, in the Nuxeo Platform interface, click on the icon . The icon becomes gray, indicating that the space is no longer synchronized. The folder and its content is no longer available from your Nuxeo Drive folder and from the Home **Nuxeo Drive** tab.

Creating Documents

From the Platform

When you create a new document in a Drive-synchronized folder from the Platform, it is automatically created in your Drive folder at the next synchronization. If you created a file or a picture, what is in the Drive folder is the attachment (mydoc.doc for instance for Nuxeo document whose title could be "My document").

From the Local Nuxeo Drive Folder

Adding a new document in a Drive-synchronized folder from your computer will create the document in the Platform workspace at the next synchronization. The document title is the name of the original file, and no metadata is filled in.

Here are some examples of most commonly used item types and their output in Nuxeo:

Item type	Document created in Nuxeo
Folder	Folder
Microsoft Office file	File
OpenOffice.file	File
.txt file	Note
Picture (.jpg, .png, etc)	Picture

Editing Documents

Versioning

When you edit a document, either from your Nuxeo Drive folder or using the online editing, a **new version** is automatically created on the Platform and the version number is updated:

- If you are not the last contributor of the document
- Or if your last edit is more than an hour ago

Then, if your document's version was 1.0 before modification for instance, it automatically becomes 1.1+ after you edited it from the Nuxeo Drive folder and the 1.1 is archived as it is created. Otherwise, a simple modification is done on the document and logged in the document's History.

See the page [How to Customize Nuxeo Drive Versioning Policy](#) to change this behavior.

Editing a Locked Document

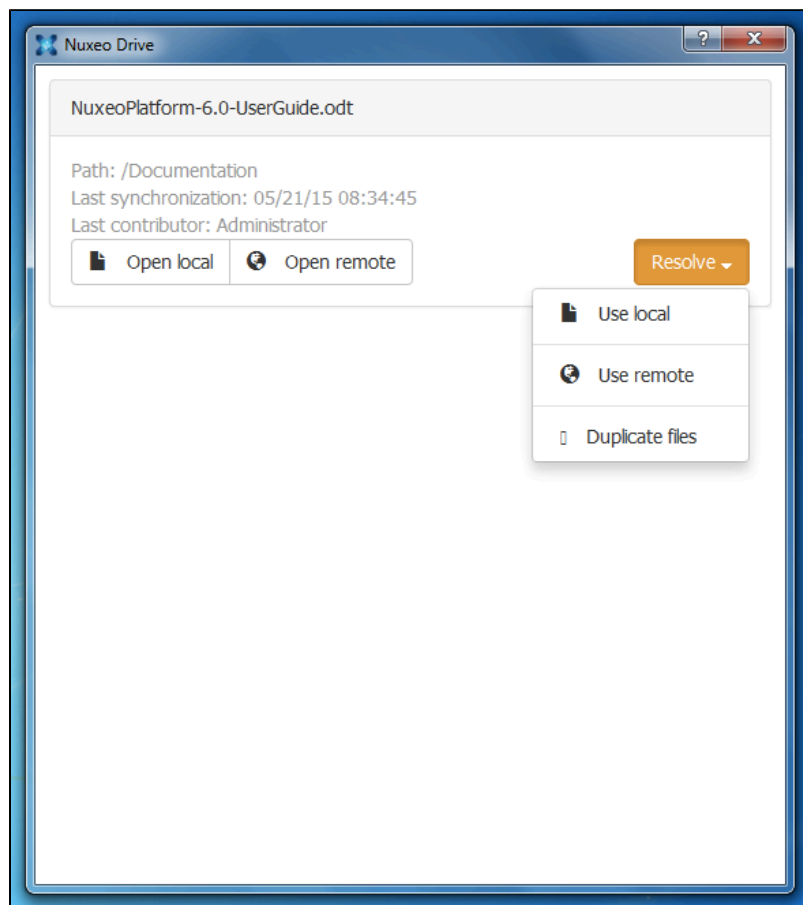
In the Nuxeo Drive folder, no indication is available if a document has been locked from the Nuxeo Platform interface. Nuxeo Drive won't prevent you from working on a document, but it will not update the locked document on the server if you are not the locker.

Managing Conflicts

It can happen that a document is edited by several users locally at more or less the same time. Or that a user edits a document locally in offline mode, and that the same document is modified during that offline period. When Nuxeo Drive tries to synchronize the document it detects that there may be a conflict between the different modifications of the document.

Clicking on the conflict message shows you the details and how to resolve the conflicts.

- **Use local:** The document in your Nuxeo Drive folder overrides the document on the server.
- **Use remote:** The document on the server is downloaded in your Nuxeo Drive folder and overrides your local version.
- **Duplicate files:** A new document is automatically created for the offline edited document. Its title is suffixed with __1: "my document__1.odt" for instance. Two documents are now available in the Nuxeo Platform and in the local Nuxeo Drive folder.




Online Editing with Direct Edit

Direct Edit enables you to edit any of your document's content from their Summary tab even if they are not synchronized. To be able to use

correctly Direct Edit you need the Drive addon on your server and you must turn on Drive on your computer. This saves you the fastidious steps of opening your document, modify it and reimport it on your platform.

To edit a document locally from the web interface:

1. On the document in the Nuxeo Platform, click on the icon  on the **Summary** tab.
The document opens in its native application (OpenOffice.org for an .odt file for instance).




If you plan to work on the document for some time, you can easily lock it from the Metadata edit popup (see the section [Metadata Edit](#)).

Note that depending on your OS and the file format, the document can be automatically locked. This is still a beta feature of Direct Edit, known to currently work on OS X and Windows.

2. Edit the document and save the modifications.
Modifications are saved in the Nuxeo Platform directly.
3. Close the document.

Direct Edit Limitations

- Prior to Nuxeo Platform 6.0, online editing is available only in synchronized folders.
- Under Windows, nothing happens if you click on the icon  without having Drive installed and running on your computer.

Renaming Documents

Renaming a document from the server, i.e. changing the document's title, has no impact on the file's name in your Nuxeo Drive folder, which is the document's attachment.

Renaming a document from the Nuxeo Drive folder renames the document and its attachment on the server if they have the same name. If the document title is different from the attachment's, then only the attachment is renamed.

Editing Metadata

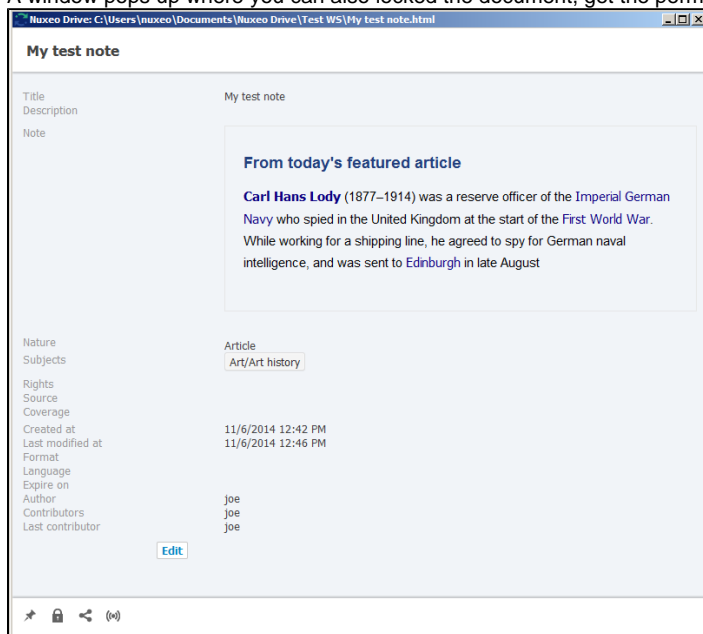


Metadata edit is available starting from Nuxeo Platform 6.0.

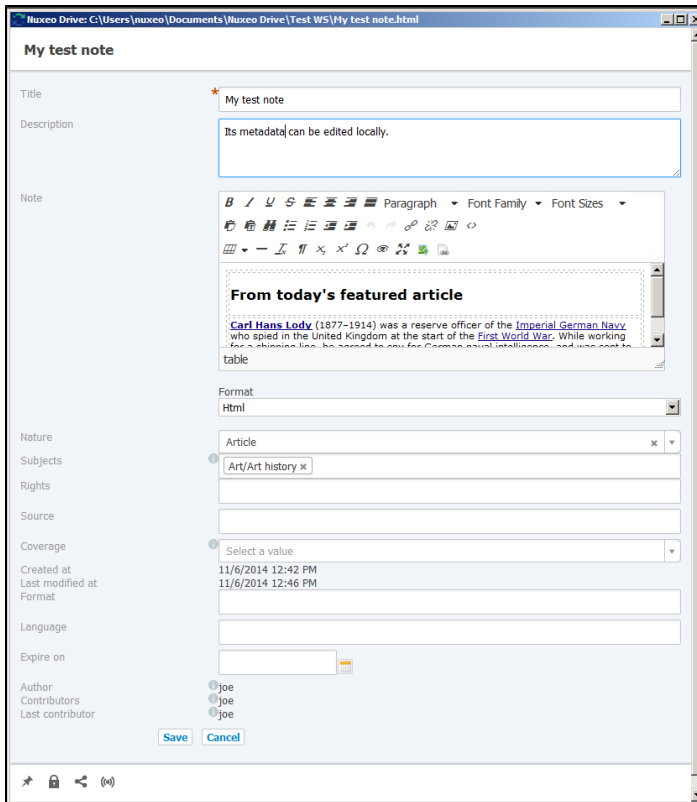
Metadata Edit allows you to edit the metadata of your document from your desktop.

1. Go to your Nuxeo Drive folder on your computer.
2. Right-click on the name of the document that you want to edit.
3. Click on Nuxeo Drive.

A window pops up where you can also locked the document, get the permanent link or add your document to your favorites.



4. Click on **Edit** and modify your document,



5. Click on **Save**.

Moving Documents

You can move documents either from your local Nuxeo Drive folder or [from the Platform](#). When you move documents between two synchronized spaces, the move is done on the other side, whether you move documents from the Platform or from your Drive folder.

When you move a document from a Drive-synchronized folder to an unsynchronized one, the behavior is different if you move the document from the Platform or from your local folder.

- If you move the document from the Platform, the document is not available anymore in your local folder.
- If you move the document from your local folder, the document is deleted on the Platform and moved into the folder's trash. In the document's history, the deletion is tagged with the Nuxeo Drive category.

Deleting Documents

When you [delete documents from the Platform](#), they are deleted from your local Drive folder at the next update.

When you delete a document from your local Drive folder, the document is deleted on the Platform and moved into the folder's trash. In the document's history, the deletion is tagged with the Nuxeo Drive category.

Unauthorizeding a Drive Client to Access the Nuxeo Platform

When you start Nuxeo Drive on your computer for the first time, you need to provide your credentials so the Drive client can communicate with the Nuxeo Platform. This creates an authentication token on the Platform, that is displayed on the **Nuxeo Drive** tab in the **Home**. If you want to unauthorized a Drive client to access the Nuxeo Platform using your credentials, for instance because you changed your computer, you can revoke this authentication token. The Nuxeo Drive client will then require the credentials to be updated to connect to the Nuxeo Platform.

To revoke an authentication token:

1. On the Nuxeo Platform, in the **Home** tab, click on the **Nuxeo Drive** tab.
2. Click on the **Revoke** button of the token to be revoked. Several elements are displayed to help you identify the right token:
 - the device description: whether it is a Mac OS client, Windows client, Linux client;
 - the creation time: date and time at which the token was created, i.e. the date and time at which you provided it with your credentials.
3. In the window that pops up, click on **OK** to confirm.
The Nuxeo Drive client cannot communicate with the Nuxeo Platform and switches to offline. When you click on the Drive icon, it says "Update credentials (required)".

Uninstalling Nuxeo Drive

To uninstall Nuxeo Drive from your computer, you need to remove the following items:

- The `.nuxeo-drive` hidden folder where logs are stored
- The Nuxeo Drive client application
- The Nuxeo Drive local folder, **only if you want to get rid of all the synchronized files and folders.**


Uninstalling Nuxeo Drive on Mac OS X

To uninstall Nuxeo Drive:

1. Quit Nuxeo Drive:
 - a. Click on the icon in the system tray.
 - b. Click on **Quit** in the menu.
2. Open a terminal and execute the following command:

```
rm -rf ~/.nuxeo-drive
```


3. Remove Nuxeo Drive from your applications like you usually remove any application.
4. Delete the Nuxeo Drive item from your Favorites in the Finder.

 At this point you have uninstalled the Nuxeo Drive program and its configuration. If you want to get rid of the synchronized data you also need to delete the Nuxeo Drive folder like you delete any regular folder.


Uninstalling Nuxeo Drive on Windows

To uninstall Nuxeo Drive:


1. Quit Nuxeo Drive:
 - a. Click on the icon in the system tray.
 - b. Click on **Quit** in the menu.

 At this point you can check that there are no `ndrivew.exe` or `ndrive.exe` remaining processes in the **Processes** tab of the **Windows Task Manager** that you can open by typing `Ctrl + Shift + Esc`.
If you find such processes, kill them manually by right-clicking on their name and clicking on **End Process**.

2. Uninstall the Nuxeo Drive application like a regular program using the Control Panel.

 If you have any problem during the uninstallation process you can try using this [Microsoft tool](#) to uninstall Nuxeo Drive properly.

3. Waiting for [NXDRIVE-476](#) to be resolved you also need to manually delete the empty `C:\Program Files (x86)\Nuxeo` directory

 At this point you have uninstalled the Nuxeo Drive program and its configuration. If you want to get rid of the synchronized data you also need to delete the Nuxeo Drive folder like you delete any regular Windows folder.

Uninstalling Nuxeo Drive on Linux

To uninstall Nuxeo Drive:

1. Quit Nuxeo Drive:
 - Click on the icon in the system tray.
 - Click on **Quit** in the menu.
2. Open a terminal and execute the following command:

```
rm -rf ~/.nuxeo-drive
```

3. Uninstall the Nuxeo Drive application using the following command:

```
sudo pip uninstall nuxeo-drive
```



At this point you have uninstalled the Nuxeo Drive program and its configuration. If you want to get rid of the synchronized data you also need to delete the Nuxeo Drive folder like you delete any regular Linux folder.

In this section

- [Installing Nuxeo Drive on Your Computer](#)
 - [Installing Nuxeo Drive on Mac OS X](#)
 - [Installing Nuxeo Drive on Windows](#)
 - [Ubuntu/Debian \(and Other Linux Variants\)](#)
- [Upgrading Nuxeo Drive](#)
- [Starting Nuxeo Drive](#)
- [Configuring Nuxeo Drive](#)
 - [Accessing the Settings Window](#)
 - [Managing Local Nuxeo Drive Accounts](#)
 - [Adding a New Account](#)
 - [Deleting an Account](#)
 - [Changing the Nuxeo Drive Language](#)

- Synchronizing Content
 - Nuxeo Drive Synchronization Status
 - Accessing the Nuxeo Drive Folder
 - Marking Workspaces and Folders for Synchronization
 - Synchronizing a Folder
 - Suspending Synchronization
 - Unsynchronizing a Folder
- Creating Documents
- Editing Documents
 - Versioning
 - Editing a Locked Document
 - Managing Conflicts
 - Online Editing with Direct Edit
 - Renaming Documents
 - Editing Metadata
 - Moving Documents
- Deleting Documents
- Unauthorizing a Drive Client to Access the Nuxeo Platform

- [Uninstalling Nuxeo Drive](#)
 - [Uninstalling Nuxeo Drive on Mac OS X](#)
 - [Uninstalling Nuxeo Drive on Windows](#)
 - [Uninstalling Nuxeo Drive on Linux](#)

Related Documentation

- [Nuxeo Drive admin documentation](#)
- [Nuxeo Drive developer documentation](#)
- [How to manually initialize a Nuxeo Drive instance](#)

Installing / Uninstalling Nuxeo Drive

Installing Nuxeo Drive



For the installation of the Nuxeo Drive package on the server, please see the [Installation and Administration Guide](#).

To be able to synchronize folders on your computer, you need to install the Nuxeo Drive client on your computer. We provide OS-specific installer for Mac OS and Windows, available from the Nuxeo Drive tab of the Home. A Linux installer will come shortly.

If you try to synchronize a folder and you haven't installed the Nuxeo Drive client yet or haven't provided your credentials to the Nuxeo Drive client, you are automatically directed to the Nuxeo Drive home tab to install it.

In this section

- [Installing Nuxeo Drive](#)
 - [Installing Nuxeo Drive on Mac OS](#)
 - [Installing Nuxeo Drive on Windows](#)
 - [Ubuntu/Debian \(and other Linux variants\)](#)
- [Uninstalling Nuxeo Drive](#)
 - [Uninstalling Nuxeo Drive from Mac OS](#)
 - [Uninstalling Nuxeo Drive on Windows](#)

Installing Nuxeo Drive on Mac OS

To install Nuxeo Drive on your Mac OS computer:

1. Download the installer (.dmg file) from the Nuxeo Drive tab in the Home.
2. Run the installer: drag and drop the Nuxeo Drive icon in the Applications directory.
Nuxeo Drive is now installed on your computer.
3. You now need to [start Nuxeo Drive](#) on your computer.
A Nuxeo Drive folder will be created by the system at the root of your local home folder. This is the place where synchronized documents will be stored on your computer.

Installing Nuxeo Drive on Windows

Nuxeo Drive is known to work on Windows XP, Windows 7.

To install Nuxeo Drive on your Windows computer:

1. Download the Windows installer (.msi file) from the Nuxeo Drive tab in the Home.
2. Run the installer: indicate where Nuxeo Drive should be installed (typically C:\Program Files or C:\Program Files (x86)) and click **Next** until the installation process is done.
Nuxeo Drive is now installed on your computer.
3. You now need to [start Nuxeo Drive](#) to use it.
A new Nuxeo Drive Folder by the system at the root of your local home folder (C:\Documents and Settings\USER\Documents\

or C:\Users\USER\Documents\ depending on the Windows version). This is the place where synchronized documents will be stored on your computer.

Ubuntu/Debian (and other Linux variants)

The .deb package of the client is not yet available. In the mean time you can manually install the development version.

To Install Nuxeo Drive on your Linux computer:

1. Install `pip` using your favorite package manager and then use it to grab all the dev dependencies and tools at once:

```
sudo apt-get install python-pip python-dev python-pyside
sudo pip install -U -r
https://raw.githubusercontent.com/nuxeo/nuxeo-drive/master/requirements.txt
sudo pip install -U git+https://github.com/nuxeo/nuxeo-drive.git
```

For now, the systray icon is not visible under Unity desktop. As a consequence, the configuration window only appears at the first launch. If you want to change it, issue the following commands:

```
pkill ndrdrive
rm ~/.nuxeo-drive/nxdrive.db
ndrdrive &
```

2. Configure automatic start:

```
curl https://gist.githubusercontent.com/jcarsique/5421710/raw/5621c388f85bf6dda7de6d0f726545d6551b5dde/ndrdrive.desktop -o ~/.config/autostart/ndrdrive.desktop --create-dirs
```


3. You now need to [start Nuxeo Drive](#) on your computer.

A Nuxeo Drive folder will be created by the system at the root of your local home folder. This is the place where synchronized documents will be stored on your computer.

Uninstalling Nuxeo Drive

Uninstalling Nuxeo Drive from Mac OS


To uninstall Nuxeo Drive on Mac OS X:

1. Quit Drive:
 - a. Right-click on the icon .
 - b. Click on **Quit**.
2. Delete the Nuxeo Drive.app from the Applications repository.
3. Delete the Nuxeo Drive folder from the root of your local home folder.
4. Delete the .nuxeo-drive folder that holds the Drive configuration, located in your home folder:

```
rm -rf $HOME/.nuxeo-drive
```

Uninstalling Nuxeo Drive on Windows

To uninstall Nuxeo Drive on Windows:

1. Quit Drive:
 - a. Right-click on the icon .
 - b. Click on **Quit**.
2. Uninstall Nuxeo Drive from the Control Panel.
3. Delete the .nuxeo-drive folder located in C:\Users\USER.
4. Delete the Nuxeo Drive folder located in C:\Documents and Settings\USER\Documents\ or C:\Users\USER\Documents\ depending on the Windows version.

Nuxeo Drive 1.x

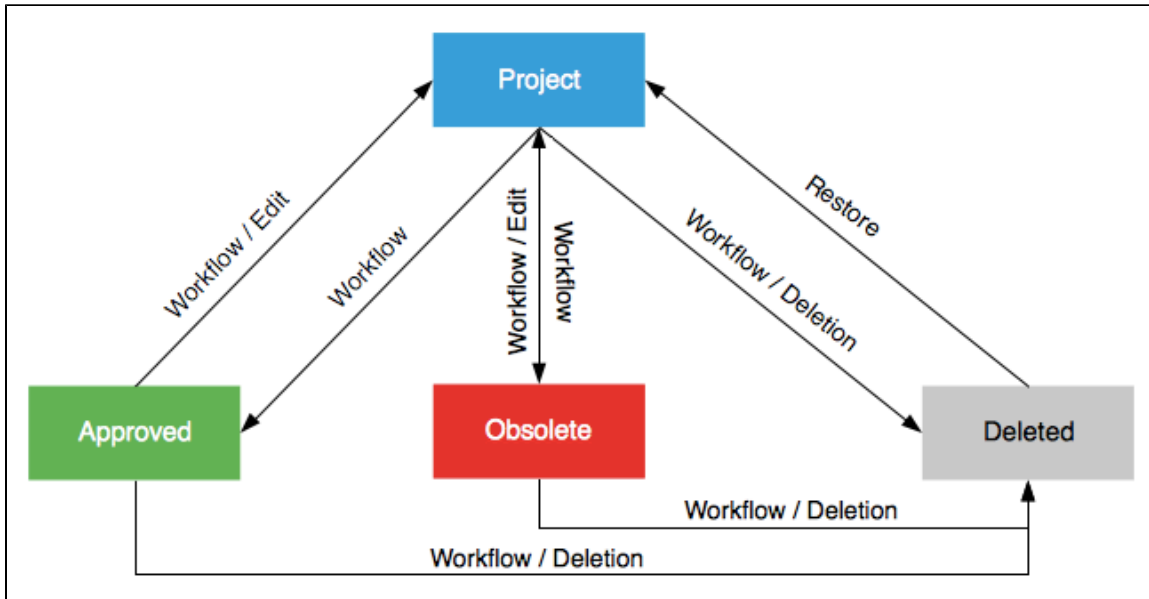
The page Nuxeo Drive 1.x does not exist.

In this section

Nuxeo jBPM

The Nuxeo jBPM addon provides the workflow that were included in the Platform until Nuxeo Platform 5.5, and which have been replaced in Nuxeo Platform 5.6 by the new workflow engine based on Content Routing.

All the documents evolve according to a defined life cycle. This life cycle is composed of the following states: project, approved, obsolete and deleted. To change the document's life cycle state, you have to submit it to a workflow.



A workflow is a process in which a chain of users is defined to review and approve or reject the document.

When a document is submitted to a workflow, the users who participate to the workflow have an indication of what they need to do on the document. This is the directive. The workflow is automatically ended when all participants have reviewed the document. Then, the document moves into the pre-defined life cycle state.

There are two types of workflow:

- parallel workflow,
- approval workflow.

The difference between the two workflows is the participation order. In a parallel workflow, all users can review the document as soon as the workflow is started. An approval workflow, on the other hand, is an ordered workflow. This means that participants can review the document only when the previous participant in the list has approved the document.

Users who are involved in workflows are alerted by email and can have a synthetic view of all the tasks they have to do on documents in their [dashboard](#). The documents they have to review are listed there.

Starting a jBPM workflow

You need to have writing or management rights to start a workflow.

✓ The process to start a workflow is the same for both workflows.

To start a workflow:

1. Click on the **Workflow** tab of the document.
2. Fill in the form **Start a workflow**: select the type of workflow you want to start and the output life cycle state.

✓ Selecting the "Approved" output life cycle state makes the document life cycle change to "Approved" and increments the document's version. You need to select if you want to increment the minor version or major version.

Summary Edit Files Publish Relations Workflow Alerts Comments History

Start a workflow

Please fill out the workflow property form below

Select workflow type *
☐ Parallel workflow
☐ Approval workflow

Destination lifecycle after workflow *
☐ Approved (minor version)
☐ Approved (major version)
☐ Obsolete
☐ Deleted
☐ Unchanged

Start

- Click on the **Start** button.
- Add users on the workflow.



You are not automatically declared as a participant of the workflow. If you want to participate to the workflow, you need to add yourself as a participant.

- Click on the **Start the workflow** button to let participants approve or reject the document.

Workflow

Save the route definition

Approved	Name	Right	Directive	Comment	Start date	End date	Due date
✗	John Doe	Write	Check	Can you check it?			Jan 19, 2012 12:00:00 PM
✗	John Smith	Write	Validation	For final approval			Jan 26, 2012 12:00:00 PM

Edit Start the workflow

Managing the jBPM workflow participants

When you prepare a workflow, you determine which users will review the document.

Given the workflow type and your participation to the workflow, you can add new participants, change their order of participation, or remove them. To make recurrent participants management easier, you can also use reviewers lists.

On this page

- Adding participants to a workflow
- Managing reviewers lists
 - Saving a list
 - Loading a list
 - Deleting a list
- Moving participants in the workflow
- Editing the workflow route
- Removing participants

Adding participants to a workflow


Only the workflow initiator and administrators can add users on a workflow.

Approval workflow participants can also add new users when they are the current reviewer of the document. As soon as they approved it, they cannot manage the workflow participants anymore.

To add a participant:

1. On the **Workflow** tab, in the **Select reviewers** form, type the name of a user or a group.
The users and groups corresponding to the letters typed are displayed.

2. Click on the user you want to add on the workflow.
 3. Fill in the other fields of the form (see below for details).
 4. Click on the **Add** button.
- The new participant is added below the current participant.

 You can also [load a reviewers list](#).

Reviewer selection form parameters

Field	Description
Reviewers	Search and select users or groups.
Right	This field enables you to grant reviewers with access rights on the document for the time of the workflow.
Directive	Select in the list what you expect from the reviewer.
Due date	Select the maximum date at which you expect the user to have completed his task on the workflow. When the due date is reached or passed, the task is displayed in red in the reviewer's dashboard.
Comment	Type a comment to give more details to the reviewer about what you expect from him during the workflow, for instance if you want him to pay attention to a specific part of the document.

Managing reviewers lists

You can save the lists of workflow participants, to reuse them later on the same type of workflow. Indeed, documents often go through the same chains for review or approval.

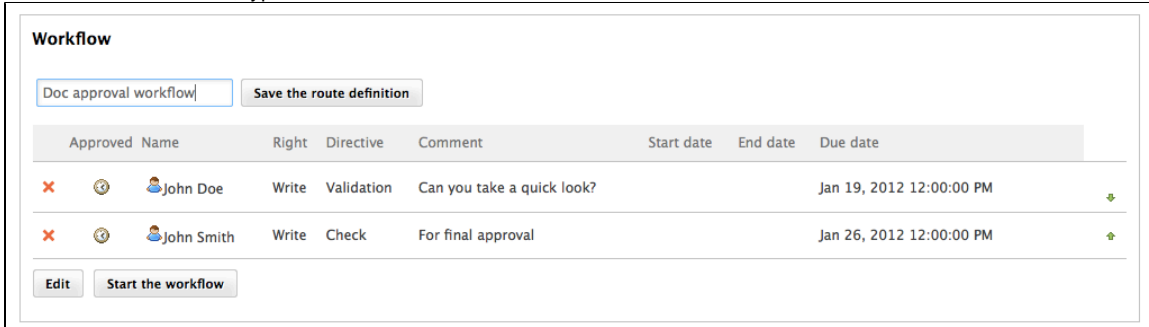
Workflow participants lists are saved by user and by workflow type. This means that users can only see the lists they saved, not the list other users saved. And that a list can only be used on the same workflow type as the workflow it was saved from.

Saving a list

Any user can save a workflow participants list.

To save a list of participants:

1. Go on the **Workflow** tab of the document.
2. In the **Workflow** section, type a name for the list.



The screenshot shows the 'Workflow' tab interface. At the top, there is a text input field containing 'Doc approval workflow' and a 'Save the route definition' button. Below this is a table with columns: Approved, Name, Right, Directive, Comment, Start date, End date, Due date, and an arrow icon. The table contains two rows of data:

Approved	Name	Right	Directive	Comment	Start date	End date	Due date	
	John Doe	Write	Validation	Can you take a quick look?			Jan 19, 2012 12:00:00 PM	
	John Smith	Write	Check	For final approval			Jan 26, 2012 12:00:00 PM	

At the bottom of the table, there are 'Edit' and 'Start the workflow' buttons.

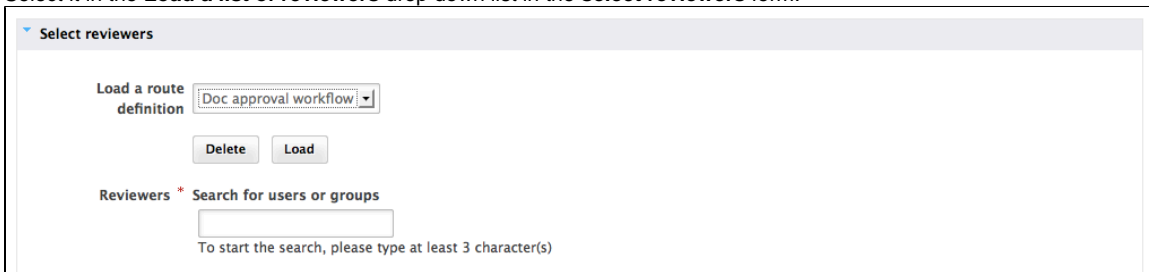
3. Click on the **Save the list** button.
The list is saved and is now available in the **Select reviewers** form.

Loading a list

You can load a list of participants at any time, as long as you have the right to add reviewers on the workflow. You can also combine the use of a list and the manual management of participants (move, add, remove).

To load a list:

1. Select it in the **Load a list of reviewers** drop down list in the **select reviewers** form.



The screenshot shows the 'Select reviewers' form. It has a dropdown menu labeled 'Load a route definition' with 'Doc approval workflow' selected. Below the dropdown are 'Delete' and 'Load' buttons. Further down, there is a section for 'Reviewers' with a search input field and a hint: 'To start the search, please type at least 3 character(s)'.

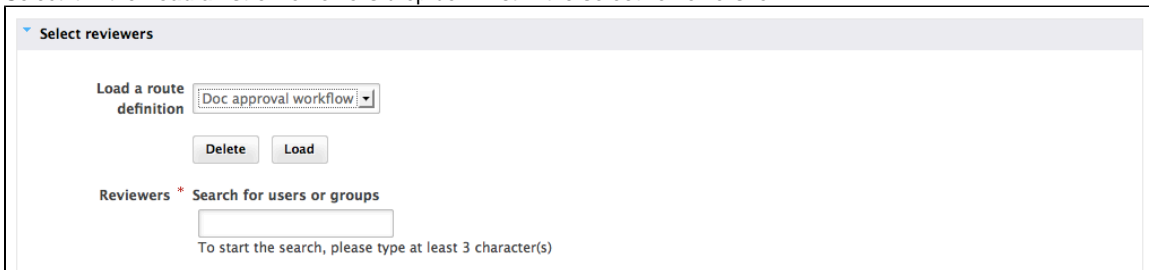
2. Click on the **Load** button.

Deleting a list

You can delete the lists of reviewers you have saved from a workflow.

To delete a participants list:

1. Select it in the **Load a list of reviewers** drop down list in the **select reviewers** form.



This screenshot is identical to the previous one, showing the 'Select reviewers' form with the 'Load a route definition' dropdown set to 'Doc approval workflow' and the 'Delete' button highlighted.

2. Click on the **Delete** button.

Moving participants in the workflow

Users who can add participants to a workflow can also change their order on the workflow. Use the and arrows to move users up and down in the workflow.

? Unknown Attachment

Editing the workflow route

The workflow initiator can edit the workflow route, to edit the due dates and other parameters for instance, especially when the route is based on a participants list.

To edit a participants list:

1. Under the workflow route, click on the **Edit** button.
The route is displayed in edit mode.

Workflow

Approved	Name	Right	Directive	Comment	Start date	End date	Due date
	John Doe	Write	Validation	Can you take a quick look?			1/19/2012 12:00 PM
	John Smith	Write	Check	For final approval			1/26/2012 12:00 PM

2. Change the parameters you want.
3. Click on the **Save** button.
The route is updated with your new parameters.

Removing participants

Users who can add participants to a workflow can also remove them from the workflow.

To remove a user from the workflow's participants:

1. Click the icon to remove from the workflow.
2. Confirm removal on the window that pops up.
Users is immediately removed from the participants of the workflow.

Participating to a jBPM workflow

Once the workflow has been started, users added on the workflow's roadmap can review the document and approve or reject it.

Workflow

Approved	Name	Right	Directive	Comment	Start date	End date	Due date
	John Doe	Write	Validation	Solen Guitter : Can you take a quick look?	Jan 19, 2012 5:17:20 PM		Jan 19, 2012 12:00:00 PM
	John Smith	Write	Validation	For final approval			Jan 26, 2012 12:00:00 PM

Add a comment below and click one of the links in the table above. You will find all your tasks in your personal dashboard as well. The comment is mandatory only when the task is rejected.

Comment *



The workflow initiator can approve or reject the document in behalf of all the workflow's participants.

On this page

- [Approving a document](#)
- [Rejecting a document](#)
- [Ending the workflow](#)

Approving a document

In a parallel workflow, participants can approve the document as soon as the workflow is started.

In an approval workflow, participants can approve the document when it's their turn, after the previous participant on the workflow has approved it.

To approve the document during the workflow:

Click on the **Approve** link displayed on the workflow's roadmap next to your name.

A green tick on the roadmap indicates that you approved the document.

If you are in an approval workflow, the next participant can now review the document and approve or reject it.

Workflow

Approved	Name	Right	Directive	Comment	Start date	End date	Due date
	John Doe	Write	Validation	Solen Guitter : Can you take a quick look?	Jan 19, 2012 5:17:20 PM	Jan 20, 2012 12:00:00 PM	Jan 19, 2012 12:00:00 PM
	John Smith	Write	Validation	Solen Guitter : For final approval	Jan 20, 2012 12:00:01 PM		Jan 26, 2012 12:00:00 PM

Add a comment below and click one of the links in the table above. You will find all your tasks in your personal dashboard as well. The comment is mandatory only when the task is rejected.

Comment *

Rejecting a document

In a parallel workflow, participants can review the document and reject it as soon as the workflow is started.

In an approval workflow, participants can reject the document when it's their turn, after the previous participant on the workflow has approved it.

To reject the document during the workflow:

1. Type a comment to indicate why you reject the document (mandatory).
2. Click on the **Reject** link displayed on the workflow's roadmap next to your name.
A red tick on the roadmap indicates that you rejected the document.

If you are in an approval workflow, the previous user on the roadmap is automatically inserted after you on the roadmap to check the document. His directive is "Verification after reject".

Workflow

Approved	Name	Right	Directive	Comment	Start date	End date	Due date
	John Doe	Write	Validation	Solen Gutter : Can you take a quick look?	Jan 19, 2012 5:17:20 PM	Jan 20, 2012 12:00:00 PM	Jan 19, 2012 12:00:00 PM
	John Smith	Write	Validation	Solen Gutter : For final approval	Jan 20, 2012 12:00:01 PM	Jan 20, 2012 12:00:54 PM	Jan 26, 2012 12:00:00 PM
	John Doe		Verification after reject	John Smith : Commercial section is missing.	Jan 20, 2012 12:00:54 PM		

Add a comment below and click one of the links in the table above. You will find all your tasks in your personal dashboard as well. The comment is mandatory only when the task is rejected.

Comment *

Ending the workflow

The workflow will automatically ends when the last reviewer approves or rejects the document.

In a parallel workflow:

- If all participants have approved the document, its lifecycle state changes into the one chosen when before the workflow was started.
- If a user has rejected the document, the workflow ends but its lifecycle state doesn't change.

In an approval workflow, all users must approve the document. The document will then automatically get into the target lifecycle state.

Abandoning a jBPM workflow

Only the workflow initiator and administrators can abandon a workflow.

Abandoning a workflow means canceling it. When you abandon a workflow, the life cycle state of the document does not change. The modifications made on the document during the workflow are kept.

The abandon process is the same for the two types of workflows.

To abandon a workflow:

1. Click on the **Workflow** tab of the document.
2. In the **Abandon workflow** section of the page, type a comment in the **Comment** field.

Abandon workflow

Comment *

Abandon workflow

Comment is mandatory to abandon a workflow.

3. Click on the **Abandon workflow** button.
The workflow is canceled. The life cycle state of the document does not change and the modifications done during the workflow are saved.

Nuxeo Platform User Registration

Smart Search

The Smart Search package is a query engine that adds a new search form in the application from which you can build your queries and save them in smart folders. It offers search criteria on content, dates, and metadata.

Build a smart search

To build a query using Smart Search:

1. Click on the **Smart Search** link displayed next to the default **Advanced Search** link.

The Smart Search form is displayed.

The screenshot shows the Smart Search interface. The top section is titled "Search Criteria" and contains a blue bar with the text "Select search criteria and add them to the final request". Below this, there is a "Request" field with a dropdown menu showing "Select a value". To the right of the dropdown is a checkbox labeled "Open a new parenthesis" and an "Add" button. Below the "Add" button is a large text area for building the query. To the right of the text area are buttons for "Undo", "Redo", and "Clear".

The bottom section is titled "Search results" and contains three columns: "Search result columns", "Available columns", and "Selected columns". The "Available columns" column lists various search criteria: Contributors, Coverage, Created at, Description, Expire on, Format, Language, Nature, Rights, and Source. The "Selected columns" column lists: Icon/Type, Title with link, Lock information, Modified, Last Contributor, Version, State, and Live edit link. Below the columns is an "Order by" dropdown with an "Add" button. At the bottom of the section are buttons for "Search", "Save search", and "Reset column selection".

2. Select a first search criterion in the drop down list and fill in the corresponding field.

The screenshot shows the Smart Search interface with the "Search Criteria" section expanded. The "Request" field now shows "Contributors" selected in the dropdown menu, followed by "IN" and a search box containing "jdoo". Below the search box is a dropdown menu showing "John Doe". The "Add" button is visible below the search box.

3. Click on the **Add** button.
The criterion is displayed in the text area below.

Search Criteria

Select search criteria and add them to the final request

Request *

AND

Select a value

Open a new parenthesis

Add

dc.contributors IN ('jdoe')

Undo

Redo

Clear

- Possibly, add other criteria.

✓ You can organize your search criteria in parenthesis.
You can also use the **Undo** and **Redo** buttons to cancel actions when you build your query.

- If needed, you can [customize the columns of the search results table](#) displayed.
- When your query is ready, click on the **Search** button.

The search results are displayed. You can click on the documents to consult them. You can also edit your search to refine the query or save your search.

Edit search Save search

Smart search results for query "dc:contributors IN ('jdoe') AND ecm:path STARTSWITH '/default-domain/workspaces/Documentation/User guides'"

Items/page 50

<input type="checkbox"/>	Title	Modified	Last contributor	Version	State
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo DM 5.3.2 User Guide	10/19/2012	Solen Gutter	0.1+	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo DM 5.4.0 User Guide	9/19/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo DM 5.4.1 User Guide	9/19/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo DM 5.4.2 User Guide	9/19/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo Platform 5.5 User Guide	9/19/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo Platform 5.6 User Guide	10/1/2012	John Doe	0.1	Project

Copy Paste Add to worklist Delete

On this page

- Build a smart search
- Save a smart search
 - Save a smart search
 - Create a smart folder
 - Related sections
 - Related pages in other documentations

Save a smart search

Smart Search enables users to save their search in smart folders. A smart folder is a folder that displays the result of the associated query. Every time a user click on the folder, the query is executed and the content displayed is updated.

Smart folders can be created in workspaces and folders.

There are two ways to create a smart folder:

- you can first create your query and [save it](#) in your personal workspace,
- or you can [create a smart folder](#) directly from a workspace.

✓ Access rights cannot be managed on smart folders. If you want to share a smart search, you need to save it in a workspace or a folder that is shared with other users.

Save a smart search

You can save a smart search from the search form directly or from the search results. When you save a smart search, it is automatically saved in your personal workspace.

To save a search in a smart folder:

1. Build your query.
2. From the search result page or from the search form, click on the **Save search** button. The Smart folder creation form is displayed. The Request and Search results are already filled in with your search configuration.

Create a new document Smart folder

Title *

Description

Request *

AND
Select a value

☐ Open a new parenthesis

Add

dc:contributors IN ('jdoe')
AND ecm:path
STARTSWITH '/default-
domain/workspaces/Live
Edit tests/User guides'

Undo
Redo
Clear

3. Give the smart folder a title, optionally a description.
4. Click on the **Create** button to save the smart folder and display its content.



You can click on the **Create and go back to smart search** button to save the smart folder and go back to the smart search form to start creating other requests.

The smart folder is saved in your personal workspace.

John Doe's documentation

Content Edit Relations History Manage

Request dc:contributors IN ('jdoe') AND ecm:path STARTSWITH '/default-domain/workspaces/Live Edit tests/User guides'

Items/page 20

<input type="checkbox"/>	Title ▲	Modified ▲	Last contributor ▲	Version	State ▲
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo DM 5.3.2 User Guide	10/19/2012	Solen Gutter	0.1+	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo DM 5.4.0 User Guide	9/19/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo DM 5.4.1 User Guide	9/19/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo DM 5.4.2 User Guide	9/19/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo Platform 5.5 User Guide	9/19/2012	John Doe	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Nuxeo Platform 5.6 User Guide	10/1/2012	John Doe	0.1	Project

Copy Paste Add to worklist Delete

Create a smart folder

You can create a smart search in a workspace or in a folder.





To create a smart folder:

You can create a smart folder and then build the query that will be associated to it:

1. In a workspace, click on **New**.
2. In the modal window, click on **Smart folder**.
3. On the creation form, type a title, a description (optional) and build your query.
4. Click on the **Create** button to save the smart folder and display its content.

The smart folder is saved.

Related sections

-  [Browsing and searching assets](#)
-  [Smart Search](#)
-  [Smart search operators](#)
-  [Searching the Nuxeo Platform](#)

Related pages in other documentations

-  [Smart search](#) (Nuxeo Platform Developer Documentation - 5.6)

Smart search operators

Smart search enables to build queries using the fields and operators below.

Metadata	Search field	Operator
Content	Text field	LIKE UNLIKE
Contributors	User search	IN NOT IN
Coverage	Vocabulary	IN EQUALS LIKE CONTAINS NOT IN IS DIFFERENT FROM NOT LIKE DOES NOT CONTAIN
Created at Expire on Last modified at	Calendar	BETWEEN NOT BETWEEN GREATER LESS
Description Format Language Rights Source Title	Text field	EQUALS LIKE CONTAINS IS DIFFERENT FROM NOT LIKE DOES NOT CONTAIN
Nature Subjects	Vocabulary	IN NOT IN
Path	Text field + Browse option	STARTS WITH DOES NOT START WITH

Date fields

- **BETWEEN:** Doesn't include the selected dates.
Example: a search on documents last modified **BETWEEN** the 10/27/11 and 01/30/12 (Query: `dc:modified BETWEEN DATE '2011-10-27' AND DATE '2012-01-31'`) will return the documents modified between the 10/28/11 00:00 and 01/29/12 23:59.
- **NOT BETWEEN:** Doesn't include the selected dates.
Example: a search on documents last modified **NOT BETWEEN** the 10/27/11 and 01/30/12 (Query: `dc:modified NOT BETWEEN`

DATE '2011-10-27' AND DATE '2012-01-31') will return the documents modified until the 10/26/11 23:59 and from the 01/31/12 00:00.

- **GREATER:** Searches for documents whose selected date type (creation, modification...) is more recent than the selected one. Selected date is not included.
Example: A search on documents with a "Created at" date GREATER than 10/27/11 will return all the documents created from the 10/28/11 00:00.
- **LESS:** Searches for documents whose selected date type (creation, modification...) is older than the selected one. Selected date is not included.
Example: A search on documents with a "Created at" date LESS than 10/27/11 will return all the documents created until the 10/26/11 23:59.

Vocabulary and text fields

- **IN:** Searches for documents that hold the selected value(s).
Example: A search for documents whose "Nature" is IN "invoice" will return all the documents that "Invoice" selected as their nature.
- **NOT IN:** Searches for documents that hold a value different from the one(s) selected.
Example: A search for documents whose "Nature" is NOT IN "invoice" will return all the documents that have any other nature value than "invoice". Documents for which the nature hasn't been filled in are ignored.
- **LIKE:** On the "Content" field, performs a fulltext search. Full text search uses stemming. The stemming search option will return the documents containing words that have the same stem as the word you typed. On other fields, it performs an EQUALS search, but can be associated with the % wild card. LIKE search is case-insensitive on Content field, and case-sensitive on other fields.
Examples: A search on the content on the word "Reading" will return documents containing in their content "Read", "reads" etc. A search on a "title" LIKE "Function%" will return documents whose title starts with Function, Functional, Functions.
- **NOT LIKE:** On the "Content" field, performs a fulltext search. Full text search uses stemming. In this case, the stemming search option will return the assets that don't contain words that have the same stem as the word you typed. On other fields, it performs an IS DIFFERENT FROM search, but can be associated with the % wild card. NOT LIKE search is case-insensitive on Content field, and case-sensitive on other fields.
Examples: A search on the content on the word "Reading" will return documents that don't contain in their content "Read", "reads" etc. A search on a "title" NOT LIKE "Function%" will return documents whose title don't start with Function, Functional, Functions. In general, the NOT LIKE operator is used in association with another search (LIKE for instance), to restrain the search results.
- **CONTAINS:** Searches for the typed or selected string of characters, preceded or followed by any character. In other words, it can be used to look for properties where stemming cannot be applied, such as IDs.
Example: A search for a "source" that CONTAINS "http" or "www" can be used to look for documents that have a web resource as their source.
- **DOES NOT CONTAIN:** Searches for any string of character but the one typed, preceded or followed by any character. In other words, it can be used to look for properties where stemming cannot be applied, such as IDs.
Example: A search for a "source" that DOES NOT CONTAIN "http" or "www" can be used to look for documents that don't have a web resource as their source.
- **EQUALS:** Searches for the exact same string of characters as what is typed or selected. EQUALS search is case-sensitive and empty values are ignored.
Example: A search for a title EQUALS to "My document" will return the documents whose title is "My document" but not documents whose title is "my document" or documents holding "document" in their title.
- **IS DIFFERENT FROM:** Searches for strings of characters different from the one selected or typed. IS DIFFERENT FROM search is case-sensitive and empty values are ignored.
Example: A search for documents whose coverage IS DIFFERENT FROM "Europe > France" will return all the documents that have a coverage filled in, except those who have the value "Europe > France".
- **STARTS WITH:** Searches for all the children of the selected folder.
Example: A search for the documents in the workspace "Invoices" will return all the documents that are in this workspace, including possible sub-workspaces.
- **DOES NOT START WITH:** Searches for all the documents in the application except those in the selected folder.
Example: A search for documents that are not in the Invoice workspace will return the documents in all the other workspaces (including sub-workspaces and their content), in templates, in sections and in other domains if there are any.

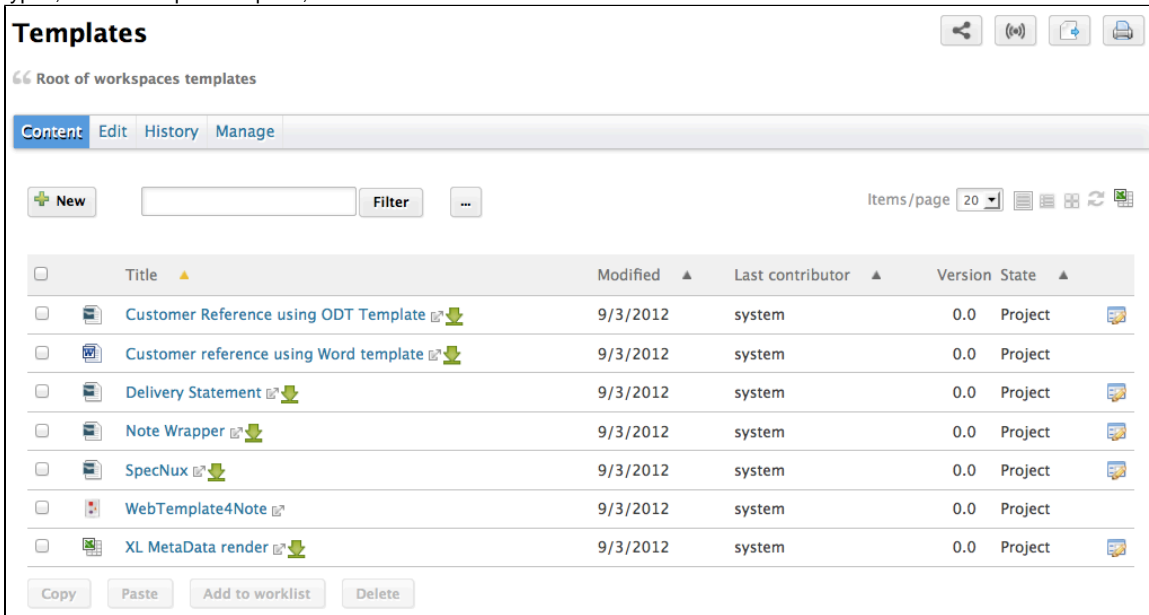
Template Rendering Addon

The template rendering addon is an addon available from the Nuxeo Marketplace that enables users to create documents from a template, with content being automatically extracted from Nuxeo, and to have an automated rendering generated from a set of user-defined preferences. This addon includes:

- four new document types:
 - two template document types, called "Template" and "Web template",
 - two file-based document types, called "Customer reference" and "Statement"

reference" and configured using [Nuxeo Online Services](#),

- templates with template attachments, leveraging the Template and Web Template document types, in the "Templates" space,



Templates

Root of workspaces templates

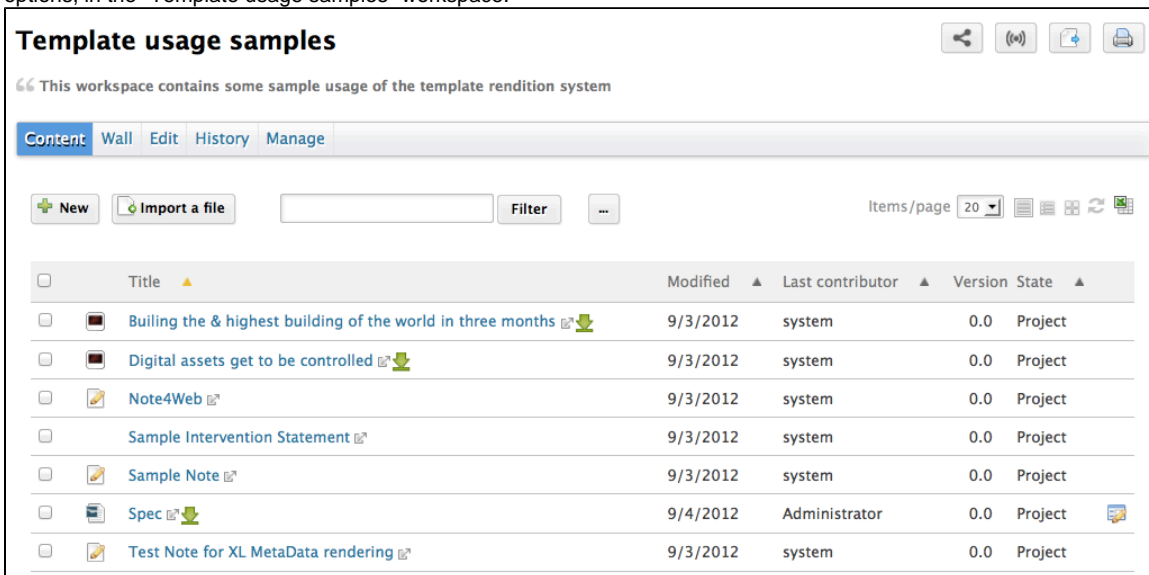
Content Edit History Manage

+ New Filter ... Items/page 20

	Title	Modified	Last contributor	Version	State
<input type="checkbox"/>	Customer Reference using ODT Template	9/3/2012	system	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Customer reference using Word template	9/3/2012	system	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Delivery Statement	9/3/2012	system	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Note Wrapper	9/3/2012	system	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	SpecNux	9/3/2012	system	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	WebTemplate4Note	9/3/2012	system	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	XL MetaData render	9/3/2012	system	0.0	Project

Copy Paste Add to wishlist Delete

- documents based on these templates, showing the result of the different template rendering options, in the "Template usage samples" workspace.



Template usage samples

This workspace contains some sample usage of the template rendition system

Content Wall Edit History Manage

+ New Import a file Filter ... Items/page 20

	Title	Modified	Last contributor	Version	State
<input type="checkbox"/>	Building the & highest building of the world in three months	9/3/2012	system	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Digital assets get to be controlled	9/3/2012	system	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Note4Web	9/3/2012	system	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Sample Intervention Statement	9/3/2012	system	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Sample Note	9/3/2012	system	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Spec	9/4/2012	Administrator	0.0	Project
<input type="checkbox"/>	Test Note for XL MetaData rendering	9/3/2012	system	0.0	Project

On this page:

- Creating a template file
- Creating the template document
- Using template documents
 - Creating a document based on a template
 - Associating a template to a document
- Rendering a document using its template
- Publishing a document's rendition
 - Related topics

The principle of the template rendering feature is the following:

1. A template file (Word file, OpenOffice.org file, ...) is created outside Nuxeo. This file holds some fields that will automatically be filled in with content defined in Nuxeo.
2. A Nuxeo user creates a Nuxeo template, to which he attaches the template file (or fills in the Note content in case of a web template). He fills in the template properties, that will define under which conditions the template is available: for which document types, under which circumstances...
3. When users in Nuxeo create a new document for which a template is available, they can use it. If some template elements are left to be edited or filled in by the document's contributors, they can set them.

There are two types of Nuxeo templates: the "Template" will have an attached file in which some values are defined to be Nuxeo values. The "Web template" doesn't have an attachment. Its content is defined in a Note field.

Creating a template file

The template file is the file that will be used to generate the rendering of the Nuxeo document and will be completed automatically with the defined Nuxeo properties. This template file can be:

- an office document (.doc, .docx, .odt, .xls, .xlsx, .ods formats are supported for now),
- an HTML file,
- a XML file.

To create a template file:

1. Create a regular office, HTML or XML file with your favorite tool.
2. In the document, put variables where you want to use information from Nuxeo (see below). You may want to use [XDocReport](#) for this part.
3. When the template is ready, [create the template document in Nuxeo](#) and attach the template to it.

Here are a few examples of the most common variables:

- `${doc.title}`: gets the title of the Nuxeo document
- `${doc['dc:description']}`: gets the content of the Description field of the Nuxeo document
- `${doc['dc:modified']}`: gets the last modification date of the Nuxeo document. You can define how the date should be formatted by adding `?date` to display only the date, or `?time` to display only the time. By default, the modification date displays both the date and the time.
- `${doc.versionLabel}`: displays the version number
- `${auditEntries.eventId}`: displays the events listed in the document's history. `${auditEntries.eventDate}` displays the date at which the events took place, `${auditEntries.principalName}` the name of the user who did the action, `${auditEntries.comment}` the comment typed by the user.



More resources to help users create the template file

- More information about the variables available (including functions) in the [Quick user guide](#) on the Nuxeo GitHub repository.
- [XDocReport overview](#) and [user guide](#): XDocReport is a tool that enables to insert fields in MS Office and OpenOffice.org.
- [Template rendering readme file](#) on the Nuxeo GitHub repository
- [Template rendering Quick User Guide](#) on the Nuxeo GitHub repository

Creating the template document

When the template file is done, you need to create a template document and attach the template file to it. Templates can be created in the Templates space, in workspaces and in folders.

To create a template document:

1. In the **Content** tab of the workspace or template space, click on the **New Document** button.
2. On the window **Available document types**, click on the desired document.
3. Fill in the template document's creation form (see below for template's properties).
4. Click on the **Create** button.
The **Summary** tab of the template document is displayed.
You can now [create documents based on this template](#).

Template properties

Field	Description
Title	Type the template title
Description	What the template is about
Content	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • For a Template : the attached template file (odt, doc, etc file). • For a web template: The Note that will hold the content of the template. Typically this would be HTML text.
Simple mode	
Template usage	Select what the template will be used for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Office template: • Office template with PDF rendering: • Create a rendition:

Advanced mode	
Nature	Select which nature will the document based on the template automatically get.
Document types for which the template is available	Select the document types for which this template will be suggested.
Allow parameters override	Check if the user should be able to change the parameters defined here.
Template processor	Select how are the template file fields processed to use Nuxeo data. Automatic should work for most file formats.
Rendition	Select the views that will be available for the template.
Document types automatically associated to template	Select the document types for which the template file will automatically be attached.
Template is editable on the document (office template)	If checked, the user will be able to ?
Rendering output format	Select what is the format of the selected rendition going to be.

Using template documents

A document can use one or several templates. If it is associated with several templates, the first template associated is considered as the main template and is used as content. The other associated templates are used to generate additional renditions of the document.

When a document is using a template, an additional tab is available on the document, called **Associated templates**.

There are several ways to associate a template to a document.

Creating a document based on a template

To create a new document based on a template, users need to [use the New document button](#). If a template is available for the selected document type, an additional option is then available for the **Content** field, allowing users to select which template to use.

When the document is created, the template is used as content. An additional **Associated templates** tab is available.


Users can then:

- [associate other templates to the document](#),
- [render the document using the template\(s\)](#),
- [publish the document using the template's available renditions](#).

Associating a template to a document

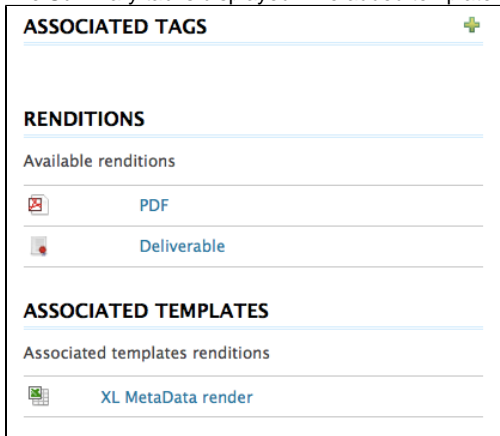
It is possible to associate a document with a template after the document's creation.

To associate a document to a template:

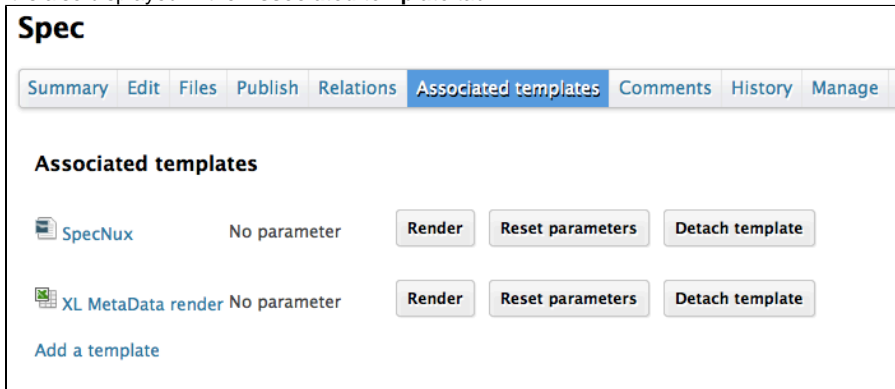
- If the document has no template associated yet:
 1. Click on the icon .
 2. Select the template to use and click on **Bind template**.

- If the document already has at least one associated template:
 1. Click on the **Associated templates** tab.
 2. Click on the link **Add a template**.
 3. Select the new template to associate with the document and click on the button **Bind template**.

The **Summary** tab is displayed. The added template is displayed in the **Associated templates** section of the **Summary** tab.



It is also displayed in the **Associated template** tab.



Rendering a document using its template

When a document has one or several templates associated, it is possible to view or download the document using the rendition(s) defined by the templates. The available renditions depend on the template you chose to use.

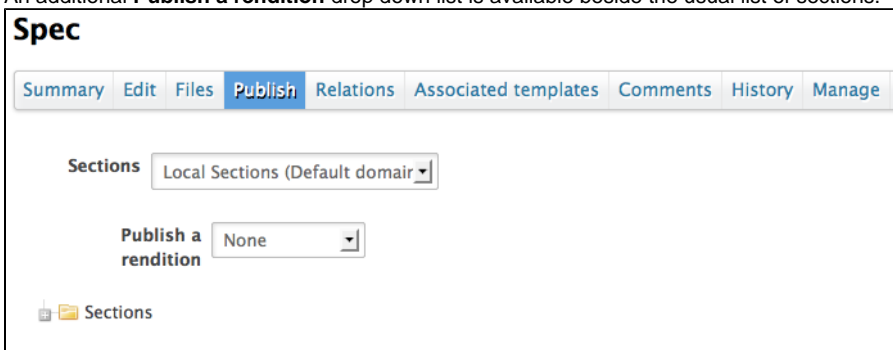
To view the document using a rendition, click on the corresponding rendition in the **Renditions** of the **Summary** tab.

Publishing a document's rendition

The Template rendering addon enables to publish a rendition of the document instead of the document itself, as it is the case on a default Platform configuration. Typically, it enables to publish the PDF rendition of an office document.

To publish a rendition of a document:

1. Click on the **Publish** tab of the document.
An additional **Publish a rendition** drop down list is available beside the usual list of sections.



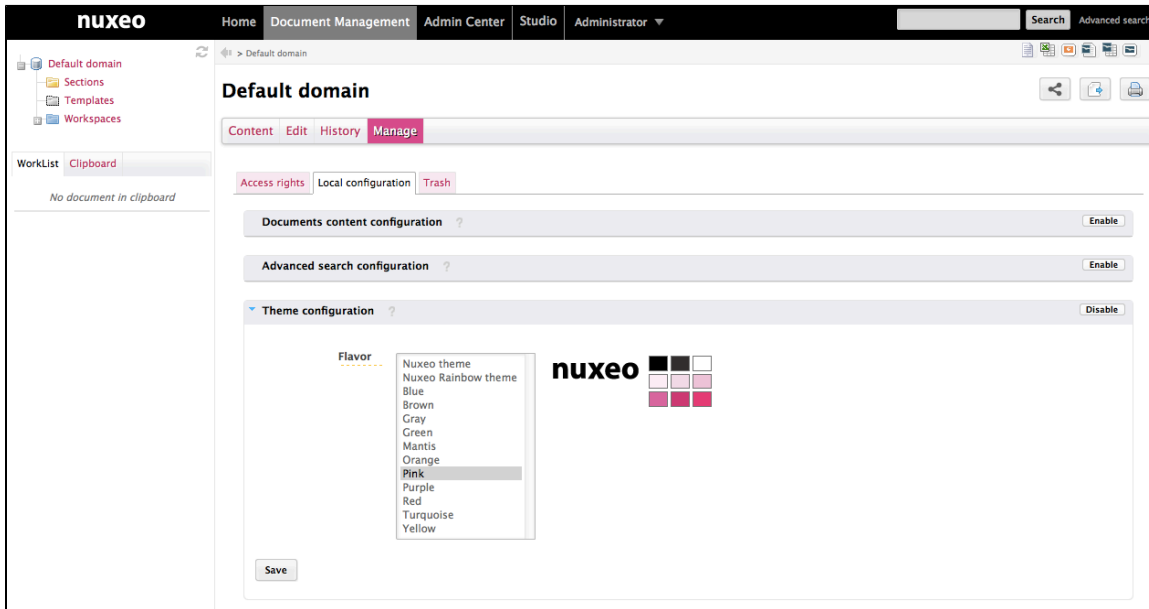
2. In the **Publish a rendition** drop down list, select the rendition you want to publish.
3. Unfold the sections tree and click on the **Publish here** link corresponding to the section you want to publish the document in.
The document's rendition is submitted to publishing and must approved using the [usual publishing process](#).

Related topics

- Setting publication targets
- Publishing documents
- Creating content

Unicolor Flavors Set


The Unicolor Flavors Set package enables additional themes to customize the look of your workspaces, sections or any space on your Nuxeo application. To use the Unicolor Flavor Set, you should report to the [workspace theme configuration](#).



Document access tracking

The Document access tracking package is used to register in the document's history the fact that users have accessed the document, and so have probably read it. It adds actions done by the server. You do not have any action to do so the access to documents is logged. Just like there is a new line in the event log every time the document is modified, there will be a line added when users click on the document to consult it.

In this **History** tab, when a user clicks on the document, a new event is registered, called "DocumentAccessed". It is indicated the user who opened the document and the date and time at which he/she accessed it.

 This package requires a server reboot to be fully functional.

Metadata mapping

- Summary
- Edit
- Files
- Publish
- Relations
- Workflow
- Alerts
- Comments
- History
- Preview

Event log

Performed action	Date	Time	Username	Category	Comment	State
documentAccessed	11/16/10	10:17	John Doe	Document		Project
Modification	11/16/10	10:17	John Doe	Document		Project
Relation created	11/16/10	10:16	John Doe	Document		Project
documentAccessed	11/16/10	10:02	John Doe	Document		Project
documentAccessed	11/16/10	10:01	John Doe	Document		Project
documentAccessed	11/16/10	10:01	Administrator	Document		Project
Creation	11/15/10	10:30	John Doe	Document		Project

Archived versions

Version	Action
0.1	Restore View archived version Delete

Digital Signature

The digital signature add-on introduces PDF signing capabilities to Nuxeo DM (5.4.2)/Nuxeo Content Application Platform (5.5 & up). This add-on also provides generation of user certificates, which are required for document signing.

The Nuxeo DM Digital Signature add-on allows you to:

- download the PDF for previewing,
- download the root certificate to install inside your PDF viewer for verifying any future certificates,
- navigate to certificate generation,
- sign the PDF,
- view existing certificates without opening the signed PDF

Digital signature concepts

Principles

- documents are signed to protect them from modification, especially at critical stages in their life-cycle
- document- and user-certification in Nuxeo DM follow principles of asymmetric cryptography, PKI & the X.509 standards
- to sign a document, a user needs a personal certificate
- each user can create her own certificate
- certificates are issued by Certificate Authorities (CAs)

What is a digital signature?

... or why sign your documents digitally?

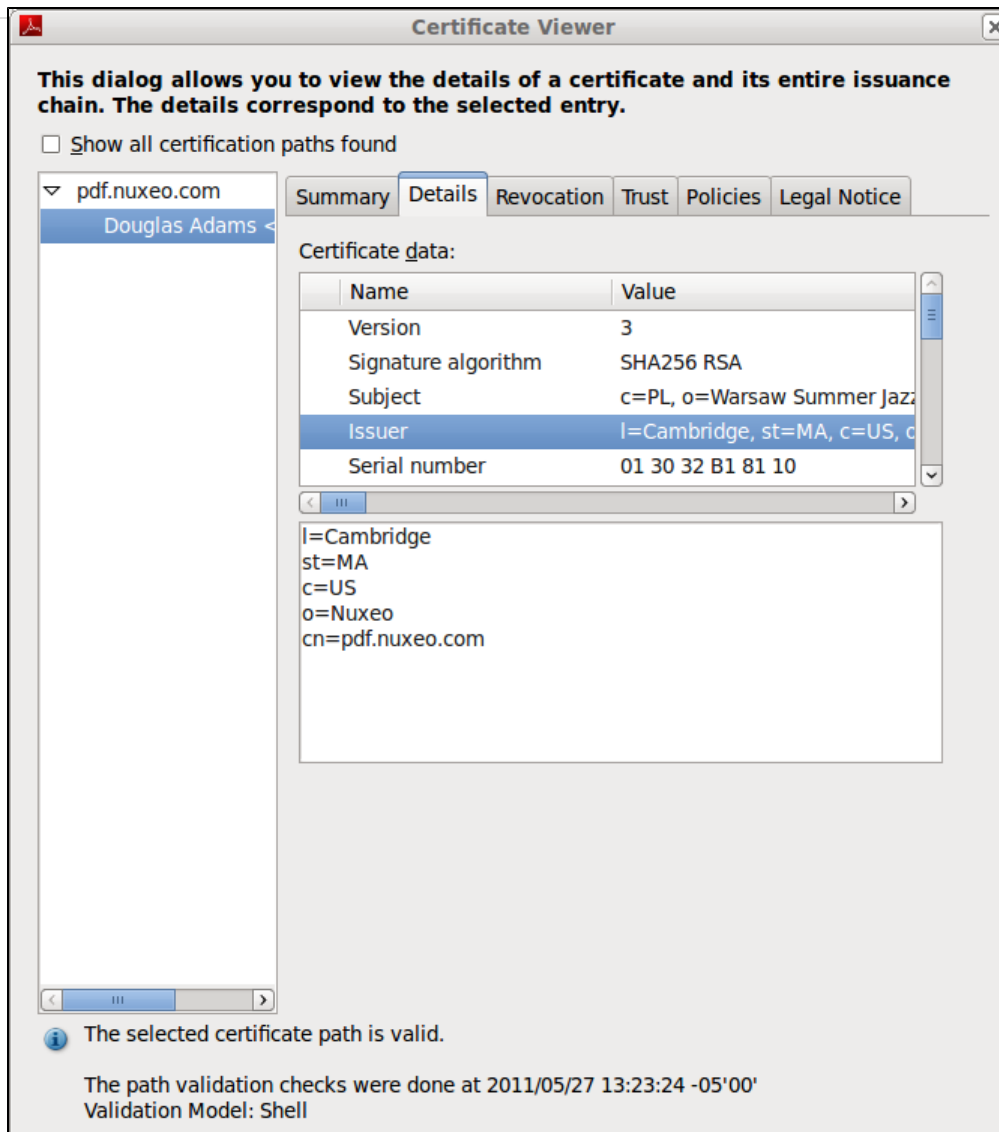
Digital signatures uniquely identify the document signer. They provide a similar functionality to handwritten signatures on paper, and are a convenient alternative to signing and scanning documents when a digital version of a document is required. Digital signatures are meant to assure authenticity and integrity of documents, that is to verify that the document originator - or signer - is who they claim to be, and to ascertain that a document has not been tampered with between the moment of signing and the subsequent viewing.

What is a digital certificate?

Before you sign a document you need a digital certificate. Certificates are attached to documents to verify the identity of the signer, that is to check that the person signing the message is who they claim to be. Certificates are issued by Certificate Authorities (CA, also known as Issuer). To verify that a certificate has not been tampered with, it has to be validated against the CA's public key. If this verification is passed it means that the CA certifies the authenticity of the signer. Digital certificates are formatted using PKI standards, the most common of them is X.509, which is also used in this add-on.

In this section

- Digital signature concepts
 - Principles
 - What is a digital signature?
 - What is a digital certificate?
 - The Local CA and the Root CA
 - Root Certificate Authority
 - Local CA
 - CA-signing vs self-signing
- Installation
 - How to make sure that the Digital Signature plugin was installed correctly? How can one test the installation?
- Configuration
 - The root certificate
 - Setting up the local root certificate
 - Company information for new certificates
- How to use the digital signature
 - Top-level view
 - Generate your certificate
 - Sign a document
 - Verify the signature of the PDF file
- References



The Local CA and the Root CA

Root Certificate Authority

The highest level certificates are created by root CAs which are supposed to be trusted publicly. No higher authority can certify the root certificates – those are the top-level certificates.

You can see examples of those in your browser, under the certificate authorities/ CA section.

Here are some of the more popular ones:

Equifax Secure CA; VeriSign Class 3 Public Primary Certification Authority; Visa eCommerce Root; Deutsche Telekom Root CA 2

Local CA

Your Local CA will be used to sign user certificates. The local CA certificate can either be signed by a higher-level certificate authority, or be self-signed. The local CA certificate will be created inside the system hosting your Nuxeo CAP/DM instance.

Note: the default Local CA that comes with our plugin is just an example certificate to be used for initial setup testing, and it should not be used for signing production documents.

Certification chains

Now let's consider the following relationships:

1. The document signature includes => the signer's certificate (user certificate)
2. user certificate was signed with => your local CA certificate

3. your local CA certificate was signed by => a higher level CA certificate
4. the higher level CA certificate was signed by => a still higher CA certificate (... and so on... ..and then, finally)
5. a very high level CA certificate was signed by => the root CA certificate.

The root CA certificate closes the chain that leads down to the user's certificate.

Now, instead of verifying all the intermediary certificates, it is enough for your PDF viewer to have the root Certificate Authority – via the sequence of intermediary CAs – verify it for you.

The root certificates are usually already present in popular PDF viewers and browsers, and if not, they can be updated automatically provided your software has been set up properly.

CA-signing vs self-signing

... as applied to you local CA certificate:

If your local CA certificate was signed by a certificate authority, the users usually don't have to install your company's certificate in their browsers to verify the signed documents.

On the other hand, if your local CA was self-signed, the CA-certificate has to be manually installed in the PDF viewer prior to verifying signatures. This has to be done only once per PDF viewing program and an example of certificate installation in a PDF viewer has been presented in our documentation.

Installation

1. Install the package from the Admin Center
2. Configure the certificates so that they match your company's profile.
3. Restart Nuxeo DM.

How to make sure that the Digital Signature plugin was installed correctly? How can one test the installation?

When you perform the standard installation this plugin works as expected. However, if you wanted to verify that all is where it should be (e.g. if you are not sure if you already restarted your Nuxeo application, or you made some other system changes that you think might have impacted this plugin's operation, here are some ways to verify the installation:

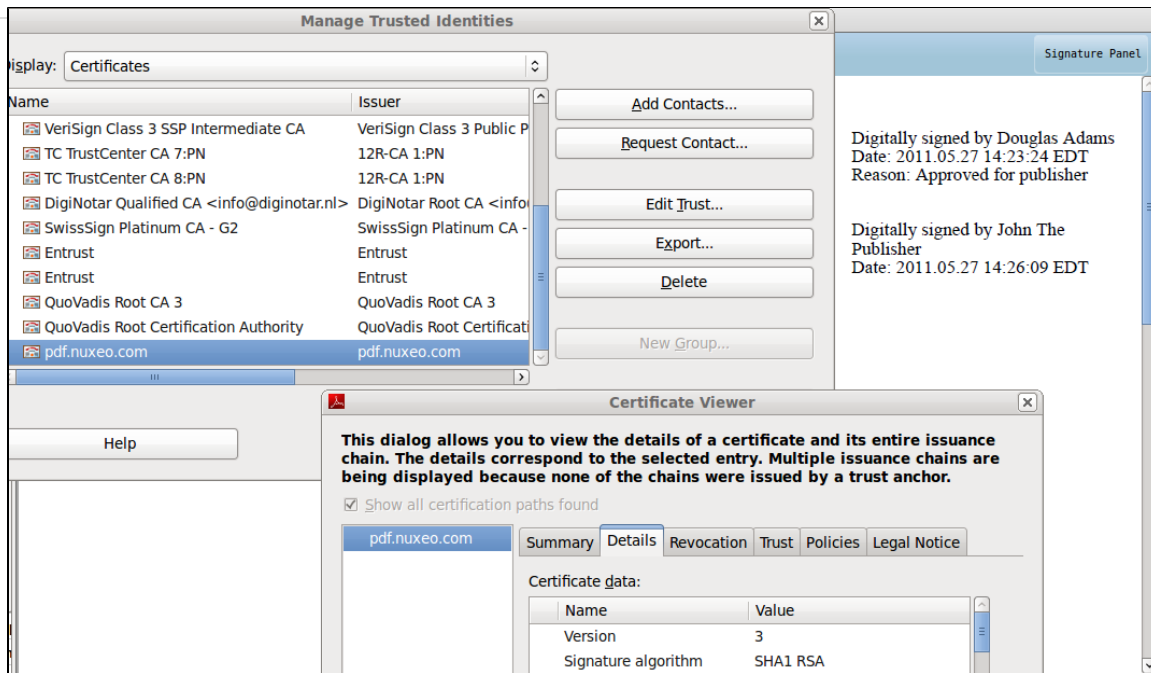
1. check in your local package list that the "Digital Signature" plugin shows as installed (Admin Center > Update Center > Local Packages).
2. click on the "Home" tab and make sure that you see the "Certificates" tab on the left, among other tabs like "My Dashboard", "Profile", etc
3. upload a new file of type PDF. This will create a new document. When you look at the tabs of your new document you should see a new tab called "Signature"
4. try to sign your new document (the ultimate test)
 - a. you should be directed to the "Certificates" tab first to create your certificate,
 - b. after creating a certificate you should see a sign-form in your document (signature tab)
 - c. sign the document, preview it and you should see a signature field in your PDF.

Configuration

The Digital Signature package provides a sample root certificate populated with sample company's values. However you will need to configure the package so that documents are signed with your company's certificate and information instead of the sample one.

The root certificate

i To disambiguate, the term "root certificate" in this article - and in the configuration of this plugin - relates to the Local Certificate Authority (CA) of your company which is the root of all user certificates. This is not to be confused with the global root Certificate Authority, that is one of the top-most entities of the global "chain of trust". This plugin's root certificate helps establish a simple method of user certificate verification, as it can be installed in a PDF reader. The best approach, however, is to have your local Certificate Authority's certificate signed by a higher level CA whose ancestor has been signed by one of the actual root Certificate Authorities. This incurs some setup overhead in the initial stages of the project. This method guarantees, though, a more secure approach to document verification, and frees the end users from having to install certificates in their PDF readers. PDF readers capable of handling security are updated automatically with the global root Certificate Authority information.



As the keystore configured in the installable package is a sample keystore containing a test configuration, it is required that it be replaced with the client keystore containing the keypair and the certificate to be used for signing user certificates. As of now the certificate+keypair need to be stored in a .jks formatted keystore and configured via the extension mechanism.

Setting up the local root certificate

The user certificate generation step requires a Certificate Authority certificate (CA) to be set up inside the Nuxeo CAP system as all user certificates have to be signed by a CA with a recognizable identity – a company rather than a single user. The term local CA can be understood here as "company Certificate Authority" or "system-wide Certificate Authority". Note that there is only one CA certificate per system but each user can have his own certificate.

To set up your local CA certificate:

For this exercise you will need the following software:

keytool : the keytool comes with your JDK (Java Development Kit) installation.

openssl : Open SSL

Configuration overview

Here is the overview of the steps that need to be followed:

1. create company keys & certificate
2. create a certificate signing request (CSR)
3. sign the CSR (or have it signed by a trusted CA)
4. save your keys and the certificate in the jks keystore

Detailed steps

- create a keypair (with alias pdfcakey in this example)

```
keytool -genkey -keyalg RSA -alias pdfcakey -keypass password -validity
365 -keysize 1024 -dn "cn=PDF-CA, ou=Headquarters, o=Example
Organization, c=US" -keystore pdfca-keystore.jks
```

This creates a keypair (private and public key), and self-signs it automatically. If you don't wish to use a 3rd party Certificate Authority to sign your key, you can stop here.

- create a certificate signing request (CSR)

```
keytool -keystore pdfca-keystore.jks -storepass aaaaaa -alias
alternatekey -keypass password -certreq -file pdfca.csr
```

- submit the CSR to a well-known 3rd party Certificate Authority of your choice to sign it
- when you receive the signed certificate pdfca.crt, import it into your keystore using a new new alias (pdfcacert in this example)

```
keytool -import -trustcacerts -alias pdfcacert -file pdfca.crt -keystore
pdfca-keystore.jks
```

You can find examples of 3rd party CAs [here](#) and [here](#).

An alternative method would be to set up a local signing CA and use it for signing certificates (keeping in mind that this approach, though it could work for small-scale deployments, is not recommended for production purposes):

CREATE A CERTIFICATE AUTHORITY (CA)

- create a CA key

```
openssl genrsa -out ca.key 2048
```

- create a self signed CA certificate

```
openssl req -new -x509 -days 356 -key ca.key -out ca-self-signed.crt
```

CREATE A SUBORDINATE CERTIFICATE AUTHORITY (SUBCA)

- create the key for the subordinate CA

```
openssl genrsa -out subca.key 2048
```

- create a certificate signing request (CSR) for the subordinate CA

```
openssl req -new -key subca.key -out subca.csr
```

- sign the CSR of the subordinate CA

```
openssl x509 -req -days 730 -in subca.csr -CA ca-self-signed.crt -CAkey
ca.key -set_serial 01 -out subca.crt
```

- import a certificate created from your CSR into a JKS keystore

```
keytool -import -alias certalias -file subca.crt -keystore keystore.jks
```


- convert the x509-certificate and the key to pkcs12 format to make it importable into the java keystore

```
openssl pkcs12 -export -in subca.crt -inkey subca.key -name keyalias
-CAfile ca.crt -caname root -out subca.p12
```

(use "export" as password when prompted)

- convert the pkcs12 file to jks format

```
keytool -importkeystore -deststorepass storepass -destkeypass keypass
-destkeystore keystore.jks -srckeystore subca.p12 -srcstoretype PKCS12
-srcstorepass export -alias keyalias
```

Now you will need to replace the sample certificate with your own that you just created. You can use the configuration information below which explains how to override the sample certificate with your company certificate.

To replace the sample root certificate:

1. Create a "****-config.xml" (e.g. "rootcert-digitalsignature-config.xml") file with the content below:

```
<component name="my.signature.rootservice.config">
  <require>org.nuxeo.signature.config.default</require>
  <extension
target="org.nuxeo.ecm.platform.signature.api.pki.RootService"
point="rootconfig">
    <configuration>

<rootKeystoreFilePath>test-config/keystore.jks</rootKeystoreFilePath>
    <rootKeystorePassword>abc</rootKeystorePassword>
    <rootCertificateAlias>pdfcacert</rootCertificateAlias>
    <rootKeyAlias>pdfcakey</rootKeyAlias>
    <rootKeyPassword>abc</rootKeyPassword>
    </configuration>
  </extension>
</component>
```

2. Put the extension in the config directory of your server:
 - \$NUXEO/nxserver/config for a Tomcat distribution,
 - \$NUXEO/server/default/deploy/nuxeo.ear/config for a JBoss distribution.

Company information for new certificates

Another extension provides general company information used in all certificates, like Country, Locale, Organization Name and Organizational Unit.

To add your company's information for users certificates:

1. Create another XML file called "****-config.xml" (e.g. "companyinfo-digitalsignature-config.xml") with the content below:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<component name="my.signature.userservice.config">
  <require>org.nuxeo.signature.config.default</require>
  <extension
target="org.nuxeo.ecm.platform.signature.api.user.CUserService"
point="cuserdescriptor">
    <userDescriptor>
      <countryCode>MX</countryCode>
      <organization>Sigma Alimentos</organization>
      <organizationalUnit>Marketing</organizationalUnit>
    </userDescriptor>
  </extension>
</component>
```

2. Put the extension in the config directory of your server:
 - \$NUXEO/nxserver/config for a Tomcat distribution,
 - \$NUXEO/server/default/deploy/nuxeo.ear/config for a JBoss distribution.

How to use the digital signature

After you installed the add-on from the Admin Center, you get some new tabs in your Nuxeo DM interface:

- users have a new "Certificates" tab in their Home, from which they can [generate their certificate](#) to be able to sign documents,
- files documents have a new "Signature" tab, from which they can either see the signatures or [sign the document](#) if they have the right to.

Top-level view

From a high-level functional point of view, here is what users need to be able to do using the digital signature add-on:

1. User A creates a certificate.
2. User A signs a document.
3. User B installs the root certificate in a PDF viewer.
4. User B opens a document, previews the document with a visible signature and can check its authenticity against the root certificate.

Generate your certificate

To be able to [sign documents](#), users need to have a certificate. Every user of the application can have a certificate. However, this not automatic: users have to generate it. When users generate their certificate, they are asked to choose a password, that will be required to sign the document.



Make sure you remember your password (or store it secured) as currently there is no mechanism for resetting lost passwords.

The certificate generation relies on two sets of information:

- user's information: user's first name, last name and email address. The email address is used to check the user's unicity.
- global company information entries configured by the system administrator.

To generate your certificate:

1. In Nuxeo DM, click on the **Home** main tab.
2. Click on the "Certificates" tab, where you can generate your certificate.

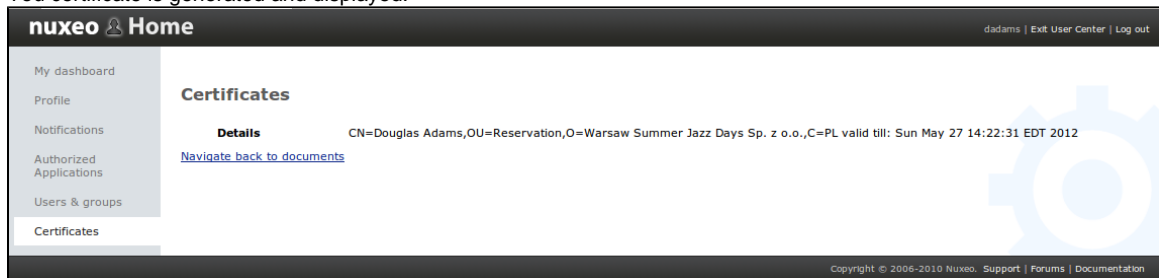


If you have no certificate yet, a link to the "Certificates" tab is displayed directly from the documents "Signature" tab.

A form to generate your certificate is displayed. If you already generate your certificate, it is displayed instead of the generation form.

3. Type and confirm the password that you will be asked when you sign documents.
4. Click on the **Generate certificate** button.

Your certificate is generated and displayed.



Sign a document

Only users with "Write" permission can sign documents, and signature is actually possible when the main attachment of the file is a PDF file.

To sign a document:

1. Click on the **Signature** tab of the document.
The signing form is displayed, below the Main file and Root Certificate sections.



You must have a certificate to sign documents.
If you haven't [generated your certificate](#) yet, you are displayed a link to the certificate management instead of the signing form.

sample.pdf

Summary Edit Files Publish Relations Workflow **Signature** Alerts Comments History Preview

Main file

File **sample.pdf**

Root Certificate

[Download the public root certificate for your PDF viewer](#)

Signing form

You did not sign this document

Signing Reason

Certificate Password

2. Type a comment in the "Signing reason" text area.
3. Type your password in the "Certificate password" field.
4. Click on the **Sign now** button.
Your signature is displayed on the Signature tab instead of the signing form. It is composed of your certificate, your organization's certificate, and the expiration date of your certificate.

sample.pdf

Summary Edit Files Publish Relations Workflow **Signature** Alerts Comments History Preview

Main file

File **sample.pdf**

Root Certificate

[Download the public root certificate for your PDF viewer](#)

sample.pdf has been signed

Document Signatures

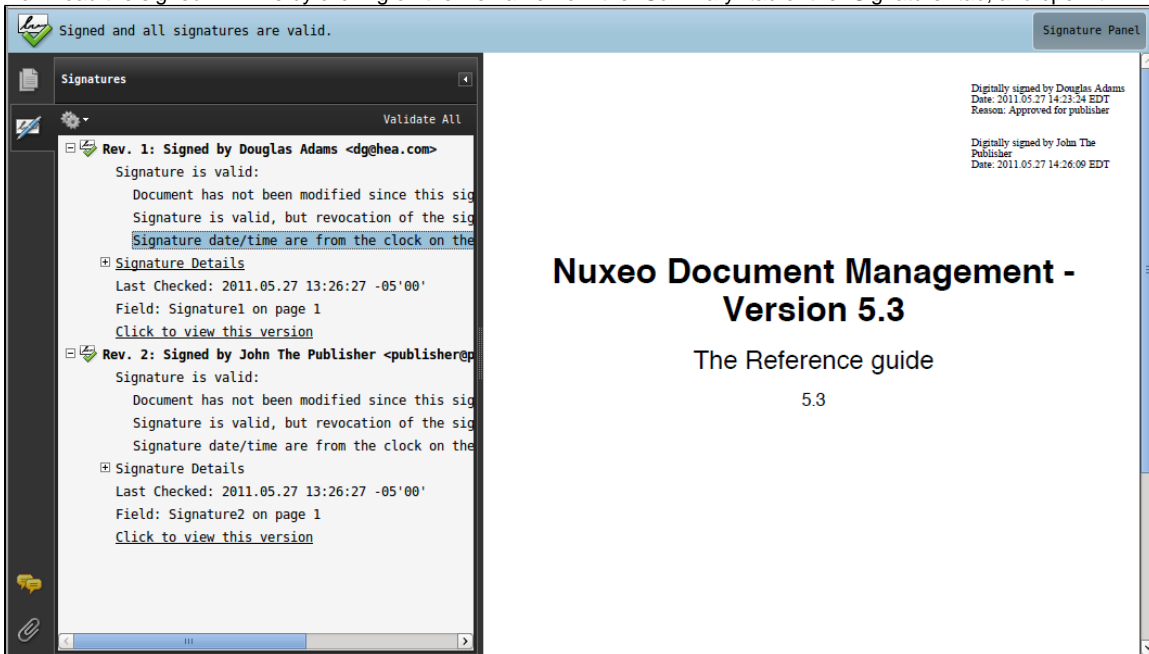
This certificate belongs to CN=John The Publisher, OU=Reservation, O=Warsaw Summer Jazz Days Sp. z o.o., C=PL. It was issued by CN=pdf.nuxeo.com, O=Nuxeo, C=US, ST=MA, L=Cambridge. It will expire on Sun May 27 14:25:36 EDT 2012
This certificate belongs to CN=Douglas Adams, OU=Reservation, O=Warsaw Summer Jazz Days Sp. z o.o., C=PL. It was issued by CN=pdf.nuxeo.com, O=Nuxeo, C=US, ST=MA, L=Cambridge. It will expire on Sun May 27 14:22:31 EDT 2012

The main file of your document is automatically updated to be the signed version of the PDF. The previous version of the main file is now available as an attachment to the document, editable from the "Files" tab.
The signing of the document is logged in the "History" tab.

Verify the signature of the PDF file

To verify the signature of the PDF, you need to:

1. Install the public root certificate available from the "Root Certificate" section of the "Signature" tab:
 - a. Click on the **Download the public root certificate for your PDF viewer** link to download the certificate.
 - b. Follow your operating system usual certificate installation steps.
2. Download the signed PDF file by clicking on the file name from the "Summary" tab or the "Signature" tab, and open it.



References

- <http://download.oracle.com/javase/1.5.0/docs/guide/security/cert3.html>
- http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Digital_signature
- <http://www.nuxeo.com/blog/digital-signatures-within-nuxeo-document-management/>

Bulk document importer

Available for any Nuxeo platform-based application, this package enables mass document import in a Nuxeo repository. A single HTTP query launches a full, multi-threaded import from the server file system.

Usage

The file importer comes as a Java library (with the Nuxeo Runtime Service) and a sample JAX-RS interface to launch, monitor and abort import jobs.

Quick start

To import the folder '/path/to/import' into the workspace '/default-domain/workspaces/some-workspace' while monitoring the import logs from a REST client, use the following HTTP GET queries:

In this section
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Usage <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Quick start • REST API <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • fileImporter/run • randomImporter/run • Extend

- GET <http://localhost:8080/nuxeo/site/fileImporter/logActivate>
- GET <http://localhost:8080/nuxeo/site/fileImporter/run?targetPath=/default-domain/workspaces/some-workspace&inputPath=/path/to/import&batchSize=10&interactive=false&nbThreads=1>
- GET <http://localhost:8080/nuxeo/site/fileImporter/log>

To execute these HTTP queries you can either use a browser with an active Nuxeo session (JSESSIONID cookie) or use a third party stateless HTTP client with HTTP Basic Authentication. For instance; with the curl command line client:

```
$ curl --basic -u 'Administrator:Administrator'
"http://localhost:8080/nuxeo/site/fileImporter/log"
```

Don't forget put the URL in quotes if it includes special shell characters such as '&'. You can also use the generic HTTP GUI client from the rest-client Java project: <http://code.google.com/p/rest-client/>. Be sure to fill in the 'Auth' tab with your user credentials.

REST API

Resource URL	Description	Output
GET nuxeo/site/randomImporter/run	Random text generator for load testing	text/plain; charset=UTF-8
GET nuxeo/site/fileImporter/run	Default file importer	text/plain; charset=UTF-8
GET nuxeo/site/fileImporter/log	Get current log buffer content	text/plain; charset=UTF-8
GET nuxeo/site/fileImporter/logActivate	Activate logging	text/plain; charset=UTF-8
GET nuxeo/site/fileImporter/logDeactivate	Deactivate logging	text/plain; charset=UTF-8
GET nuxeo/site/fileImporter/status	Get importer thread status	text/plain; charset=UTF-8 "Running" or "Not Running"
GET nuxeo/site/fileImporter/kill	Stop the importer thread if running	text/plain; charset=UTF-8

fileImporter/run

Parameter	Default value	Description
leafType	null	Leaf type used by the documentModelFactory for the import.
folderishType	null	Folderish type used by the documentModelFactory for the import.
inputPath	N/A	Root path to import (local to the server).
targetPath	N/A	Target path in Nuxeo
skipRootContainerCreation	false	
batchSize	5	
nbThreads	5	
interactive	false	

N/A: no default value, the parameter is required.

randomImporter/run

Parameter	Default value	Description
targetPath	N/A	Target path in Nuxeo

skipRootContainerCreation		
batchSize		
nbThreads		
interactive		
nbNodes	N/A	Number of nodes to create
fileSizeKB		
onlyText	true	
blockSyncPostCommitProcessing		
blockAsyncProcessing		
bulkMode	true	

N/A: no default value, the parameter is required.

Extend

You can easily write your own importer, extending the `org.nuxeo.ecm.platform.importer.base.GenericMultiThreadedImporter` class. See [Nuxeo Bulk Document Importer](#) for details.

See the [nuxeo-platform-importer Javadoc](#).

Nuxeo Quota

The Quota package enables users to define a maximum size for the domains and workspaces they manage and provide some statistics about space use in your application.

Quota overview

The Quota package allows to define a maximum size on spaces and to display the number of items (workspaces, folders, documents) in a folderish document on the navigation tree.

Administrators are responsible for managing quotas on a global scale. Non-administrator users can manage the size limits of domains and workspaces on which they have Manage everything permission. All users are displayed the size of the document they are on (workspaces, folder, file, note, etc...) and the maximum size allowed (quota) if one has been defined. On a folderish document, such as a workspace, the used space includes the size of all the documents displayed in the Content tab and their versions and the size of the deleted documents (i.e. in the Trash tab of the workspace). On a document of type File for example, the used space is the sum of the size of the current document version (possibly a modified version) and the size of the archived versions of the document.

In this section

- [Quota overview](#)
 - [Statistics](#)
- [Global management of quotas](#)
 - [Computing initial statistic](#)
 - [Initiating document count](#)
 - [Managing personal workspace quotas](#)
- [Working with quotas](#)
 - [Consulting statistics](#)
 - [Defining the size limit on a workspace](#)
 - [Related documentations](#)



Used space when the document has only one version

When you edit a document and save it as a new version (i.e. increment the document's version), the newly archived version is displayed until the document is modified. When the document is modified, you are displayed an unarchived modified version of the document, whose version number is based on the last archived version suffixed with a + sign. As a consequence, when the document only has one archived version, typically when its first version is created, the used space is the size of the newly archived version. As soon as the document is modified, the used space of the document is the sum of the archived version and the modified unarchived version.

More information on [how versioning works](#)

Users can also see [statistics](#) on how space is used.

When users try to create or edit a document and the maximum size of the workspace is / will be reached, they are displayed a message indicating that they need to free some space.

Statistics

Statistics are available to show users:

- the list of documents and their size,
- the total size of live documents (i.e. documents visible in the Content tab of workspaces, sections, folders, etc),
- the total size of deleted documents that are still in trash,
- the total size of the archived versions for a document.

Statistics help users to understand where space is used. They provide answers to the following questions: does the trash need to be emptied, are there a lot of big archived versions, what are biggest documents?

Global management of quotas

Administrators can perform several actions regarding quotas from the Admin Center:

- compute initial statistics to calculate the amount of space used by each item in the application,
- run a job to count the existing documents in the application (prior to this addon being installed). This will display the number of children of each item of the navigation tree,
- enable or disable the maximum size limitation on personal workspaces.

Computing initial statistic

Once the package is installed, administrators need to compute initial statistics so that the size of all the documents is calculated.

To compute initial statistics:

1. In the Admin Center, click on the **Quota / Statistics** tab.
2. Click on the **Compute initial statistics** tab.

Updater name	Description	
Quota Updater	Update statistics on every document	Run
Document Count	Count the non-folderish documents in each folder.	Run

3. Click on the **Run** button of the **Quota updater** counter.
The size of all elements in the application is calculated and statistics are updated accordingly.



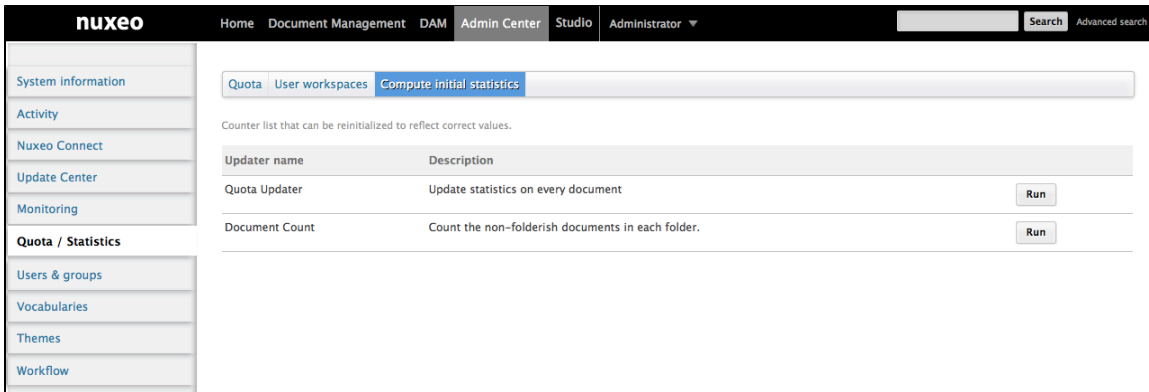
This initial computation won't prevent users from defining a maximum size allowed (quota) on workspaces, but values may be wrong until initial statistics are actually computed.

Initiating document count

When the Quota package is installed on a Nuxeo instance that already has some content, administrators need to initiate the document count. Until they do, the system will ignore existing documents, taking only documents created or edited after the package was installed into account in the navigation tree and displaying inaccurate values.

To initiate the document count:

1. In the Admin Center, click on the **Quota / Statistics** tab.
2. Click on the **Compute initial statistics** tab.



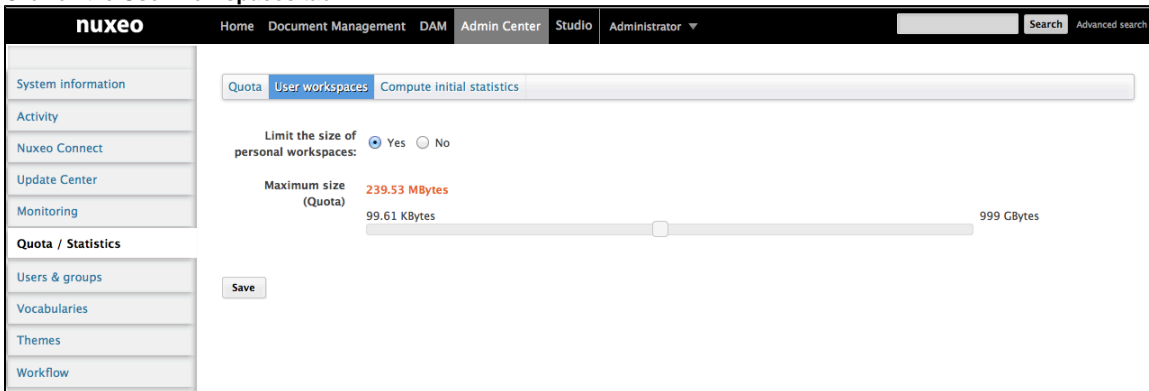
- Click on the **Run** button of the **Document Count** counter.
The values in the navigation tree are updated.

Managing personal workspace quotas

By default, there is no quota set on personal workspaces. Administrators can enable it and define globally the maximum size allowed on every personal workspace.

To enable and define the maximum size of personal workspaces:

- In the Admin Center, click on the **Quota / Statistics** tab.
- Click on the **User workspaces** tab.



- If the size limit hasn't been enabled on personal workspaces yet, click the button radio **Yes** (default value is **No**).
- Move the slider to define the maximum size. This value will apply to every personal workspace.
The value is displayed on top of the slider.
- Click on the **Save** button.
A maximum size is now defined on personal workspaces.

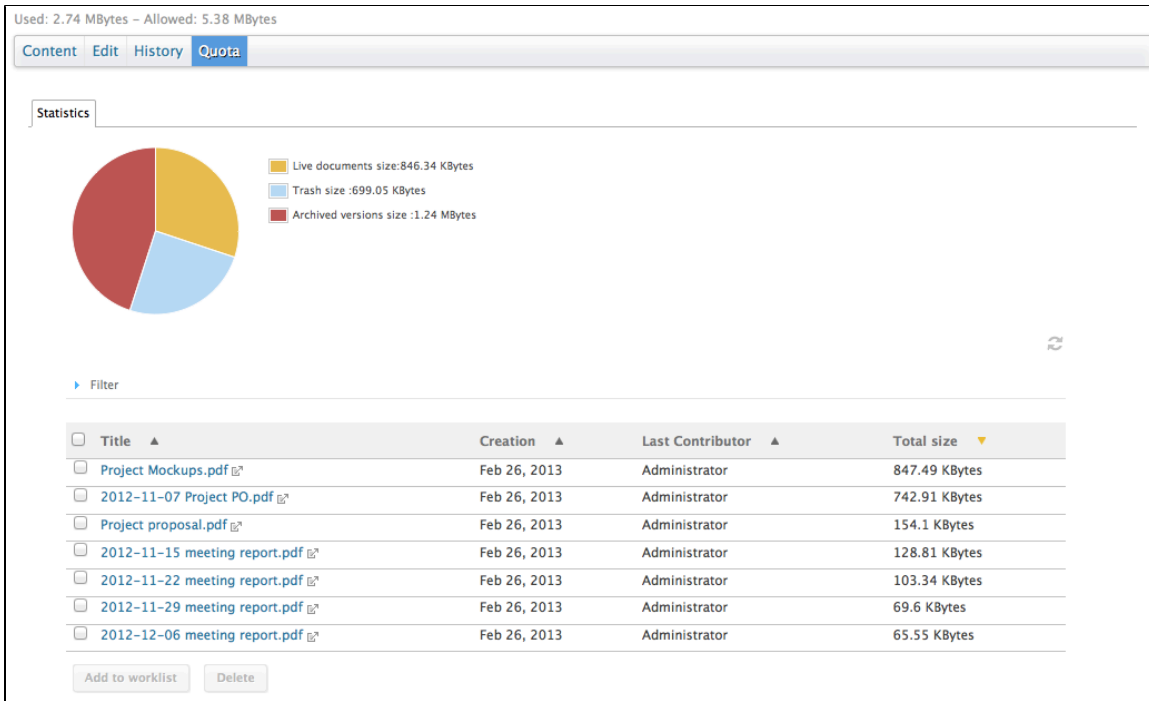
Working with quotas

Consulting statistics

Users can see the [statistics](#) of a workspace or a domain as soon as they can access it.

To see the statistics of a workspace:

- On the workspace, click on the **Quota** tab.
The statistics are displayed in the **Statistics** tab.



The tab displays:

- the repartition of the used space between live document, deleted documents and archived versions.
- the list of the content of the workspace, sorted by size.

Only documents larger than 1 KByte are displayed.

2. If needed, filter the list of documents:

a. Click on the **Filter** link displayed on top of the table.

The filter form is displayed. By default the whole size range is selected.

Filter

Title

Total size 1 KBytes - 999 GBytes

1 KBytes 999 GBytes

Filter Clear

b. Type keywords in the Title field and / or move the slider to define the size range you want to filter on.

c. Click on the **Filter** button.

The list of documents displayed below displays only the documents matching your criteria.

Defining the size limit on a workspace

Only users with Manage everything permission can define the maximum size of a space. By default, the size limit can be defined on domains and workspaces only. It is possible to [enable it on other document types using Nuxeo Studio](#).

To set the maximum allowed size:

- Click on the **Quota** tab of the workspace (or domain).
The **Statistics** sub-tab is displayed.
- Click on the **Activate** sub-tab.

3. Move the slider to set the maximum size in the authorized range:
 - the selected size is displayed on top of the slider;
 - the maximum possible size is the limit size of the parent;



If the parent has no size limit, the maximum size displayed on the slider is the maximum size of the first parent having a quota defined.

- the smallest possible maximum size is 99.61 KByte by default, on all spaces.
4. Click on the **Save** button.



You are displayed a message indicating that you need to set a smaller size?

This means other children of the parent imposing the maximum size to be set already have taken some of the available max size on their quotas. You need to choose a smaller value.

When the chosen quota is saved, the value is set and the maximum allowed size is displayed below the workspace's title.

▼ **Here is how the maximum size possible is calculated...**

When you select a maximum size on a workspace and click on Save, a verification is done to check that the size you selected won't make the parent's quota be exceeded. Here is how it is calculated:

1. The system checks the maximum size set on the parent of your workspace.
 - If no maximum size has been set on the parent, the system goes up the tree until it finds a parent with a defined maximum size (aka "The parent").
2. The system computes the sum of the maximum sizes set on the children of the parent.
 - If a child doesn't have a maximum size set, the system checks its children and makes the sum of their maximum sizes to calculate the parent's.
This is repeated for all workspaces without maximum size, until the system can calculate a maximum size for each child of "The parent".
3. The system checks that the size you want to set on your workspace is not bigger than the difference between the parent's limit size and the sum of its children's.

Related documentations

[Nuxeo Quota](#) (Nuxeo Platform User Documentation - 5.6)

Display email in user suggestions

The [Display email in user suggestions package](#) enables to distinguish homonyms in user selection screens by displaying the user's email after his name.

Other documentation about this package

[Display Email in User Suggestion](#) (Nuxeo Installation and Administration - 5.6)